OCS Study BOEM 2012-074
July 2012

NORTH PACIFIC RIGHT WHALES IN THE SOUTHEASTERN BERING SEA: FINAL REPORT

Phillip J. Clapham, Amy S. Kennedy, Brenda K. Rone, Alex N. Zerbini, Jessica L. Crance, Catherine L. Berchok
National Marine Mammal Laboratory
Alaska Fisheries Science Center
7600 Sand Point Way NE
Seattle, WA 98115

Contract Number M07RG13267 (AKC 063)

NATIONAL OCEANIC AND ATMOSPHERIC ADMINISTRATION
NOAA
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

BOEM
BUREAU OF OCEAN ENERGY MANAGEMENT

OCS Study BOEM 2012-074
July 2012

NORTH PACIFIC RIGHT WHALES IN THE SOUTHEASTERN BERING SEA: FINAL REPORT

Phillip J. Clapham, Amy S. Kennedy, Brenda K. Rone, Alex N. Zerbini, Jessica L. Crance, Catherine L. Berchok
National Marine Mammal Laboratory
Alaska Fisheries Science Center
7600 Sand Point Way NE
Seattle, WA 98115

Study design, oversight, and funding were provided by the U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Alaska Outer Continental Shelf Region, Anchorage, Alaska, as part of the BOEM Environmnetal Studies Program, under Contract Number M07RG13267 (AKC 63).

List of Figures

List of Tables

INTRODUCTION

The North Pacific right whale (NPRW) was heavily hunted between the 17th and the 20th centuries, when it ceased to be the principal target of commercial whaling (Omura, 1986; Scarff, 1986, 2001; IWC, 2001; Clapham *et al*., 2004). Protection was supposedly afforded by international treaties in the 1930s and 1940s, but the illegal harvest of hundreds of individuals by the Soviet Union, primarily in the 1960s (e.g. Doroshenko, 2000; Ivashchenko *et al.*, 2011, Ivashchenko and Clapham, 2012) drastically impacted the recovery of the species.

After some debate and a failed attempt by the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) to list the NPRW as a unique species, genetic work by Rosenbaum *et al* (2000) and Gaines *et al* (2005) demonstrated that the NPRW (*Eubalaena japonica*) is a separate species from the North Atlantic (*Eubalaena glacialis*) and southern (*Eubalaena australis*) right whales. The official species designation by NMFS was implemented in March 2008 (73 FR 12024, 06 March 2008). One month later, in accordance with the Endangered Species Act (ESA) mandates, NMFS designated a NPRW Critical Habitat (73 FR 19000, 08 April 2008) in the southeastern Bering Sea (SEBS; Figure 1), and one just south of Kodiak Island, Alaska. The location of these habitat designations was based on NPRW sighting densities after 1996 (73 FR 19000, 08 April 2008). Any activity that may affect the critical habitat (including, but not limited to, oil and gas exploration or drilling, fishing, mining, pollutant discharge, and military training) must complete an ESA Section 7 consultation through NMFS.

The existence of two discrete stocks of NPRWs has been proposed: a western population that is found in the Okhotsk Sea and in the north-western North Pacific Ocean, and an eastern population that spends the summer in the SEBS and the Gulf of Alaska (GOA) (Clapham *et al*., 2004; Shelden *et al*., 2005). The eastern stock was heavily exploited by pelagic whalers beginning in 1835, and the population was seriously depleted by 1900 (Brownell *et al*., 2001; Scarff, 2001). Sighting data from the mid-20th century suggested that a slow recovery was occurring (Brownell *et al*., 2001). However, the illegal killing of 529 whales by Soviet whaling fleets in the Bering Sea and the GOA in the 1960s drove this population to near-extinction and may have compromised its long-term chances of recovery (Brownell *et al.*, 2001; Ivashchenko and Clapham, 2012).

Today, the eastern population of the NPRW is the most endangered stock of large whales in the world (Clapham, 1999). Recent abundance estimates based on photo-identification and genetic mark-recapture data collected during this and other projects suggest that nearly 30 individuals inhabit the southeastern Bering Sea at present, only a third of which are are females (Wade *et al*., 2011).

Historical data suggest that NPRWs had an extensive offshore distribution in their feeding grounds in the BS and GOA (Townsend, 1935; Scarff, 1986; 2001; Clapham *et al.*, 2004; Shelden *et al.*, 2005; Ivashchenko and Clapham, 2012). Currently, the few remaining whales in the eastern stock are only a remnant of the former population, and may not fully occupy the same range they did two centuries ago (Clapham *et al.*, 2004). In fact, modern sightings and acoustic detections of NPRWs have been reported in the SEBS (Goddard and Rugh 1998; LeDuc *et al*., 2001; Tynan *et al*., 2001; Wade *et al*., 2006) and, more rarely, in the northwestern GOA (Waite *et al*., 2003; Mellinger *et al*., 2004).

In 2004, Wade *et al* (2006) located a pair of NPRWs in the BS and deployed a satellite tag on one individual. This whale was monitored for 40 days and stayed primarily on the SEBS shelf and outer shelf. During that time, a combination of telemetry tag data and acoustic detection methods led to the discovery of the largest concentration of NPRWs (10 males and 7 females) observed since the 1960's (Wade *et al.* 2006).

There is an increasing body of evidence suggesting that the SEBS middle shelf constitutes the primary habitat of NPRWs in the SEBS during the summer. Acoustic surveys (Munger *et al*., 2008; Mellinger *et al.*, 2009; Stafford *et al.*, 2010) have shown that the only region in the Bering Sea where NPRWs have been consistently seen is the middle shelf (LeDuc *et al.*, 2001; Shelden *et al.*, 2005). Occasional sightings and acoustic detections have been observed in other areas (e.g. near the Pribilof Islands, National Marine Mammal Laboratory, unpublished data), but these occurrences appear rarer. This study is consistent with the existing information on NPRW occurrence in the SEBS, and underscores the theory that whales spend extended periods of time in the region. This contrasts with some acoustic evidence (e.g. Munger *et al*., 2008), which suggests that NPRWs passed through the middle shelf of the SEBS intermittently and remain in the area for usually a few days.

The reasons why NPRWs concentrate in the SEBS during the summer are not yet well understood and have primarily been related to the availability and possibly high biomass of their main prey (calanoid copepods). Species of copepods upon which NPRWs feed (e.g. *Calanus marshallae* and *Neocalanus* spp.) are among the most abundant zooplankton over the Bering Sea middle shelf (Cooney and Coyle, 1982; Baumgartner *et al.*, unpublished data) and therefore the region appears to be a suitable habitat for these whales. However, other factors may play a role in explaining the relatively high occurrence of right whales in the SEBS middle shelf, including maternally driven site fidelity. In fact, re-sightings of photo-identified NPRWs in the SEBS have shown that some individuals regularly return to this region during their feeding season (e.g. Kennedy *et al*., 2011; Wade *et al*., 2011).

Although some information is available about the current occurrence of NPRWs in the feeding grounds, the migratory routes and wintering destinations are still unknown (Scarff, 1986; Clapham *et al.*, 2004). Data from historical catches and sightings indicated that a general southward movement of the population occurred in the autumn, but there are minimal records of the species anywhere in winter (Scarff 1986; Clapham *et al.*, 2004; Ivashchenko and Clapham, 2012). Scarff (1986) noted that there is little evidence that coastal waters of the eastern North Pacific were ever used as calving grounds by NPRWs, and therefore suggested that whales move to wintering grounds somewhere in remote offshore areas. There have been several sightings of the species between Washington, Baja and Hawaii, yet the paths used by these whales during migration and the precise geographical location of the wintering grounds have yet to be determined. Kennedy *et al*. (2011) recently reported the first high- to low-latitude (between the SEBS and Hawaii) NPRW match (Figure 1). This might suggest that Hawaiian waters represent a NPRW winter habitat, yet the lack of consistent historical and current sightings, despite intense effort in the area, suggests that Hawaii is not the definitive migratory destination for the species.

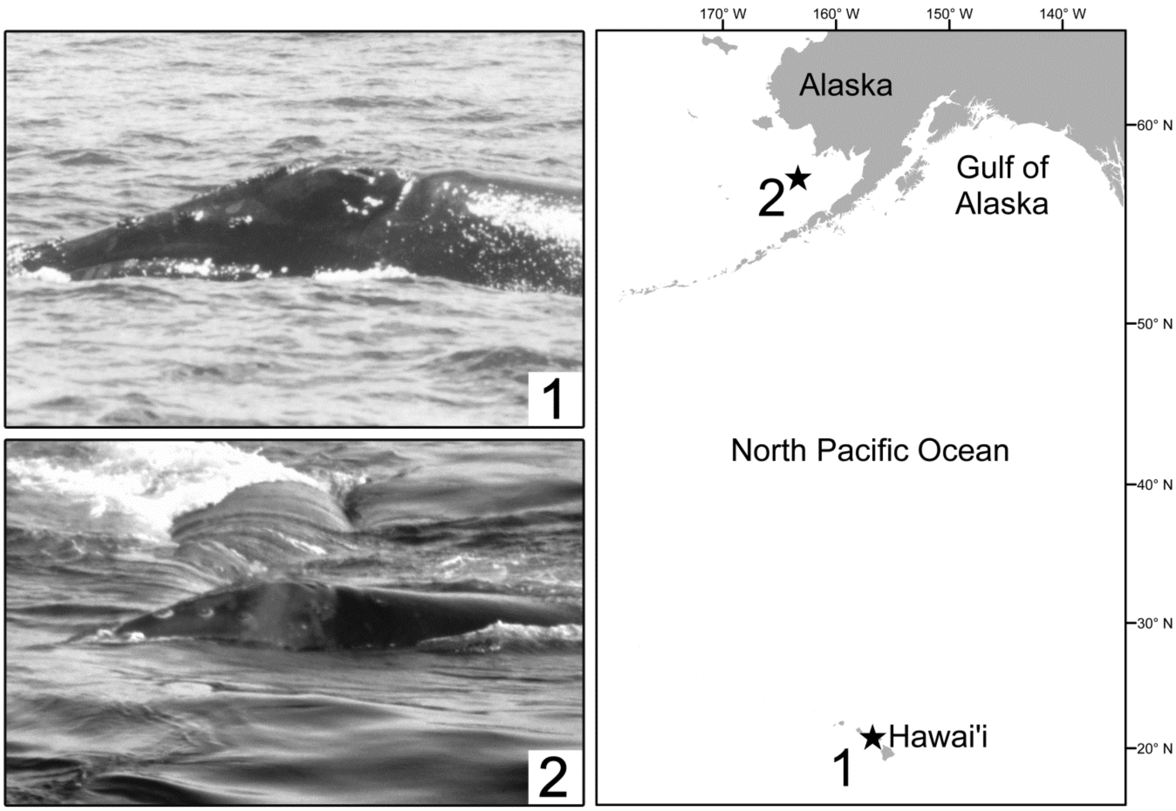


Figure 1: First high- to low-latitude match of an NPRW between Hawaii and the NPRW Critical Habitat.

Commercial hunting of other mysticetes (primarily fin and humpback whales) in the Bering Sea during the mid- to late-1990's was also extensive (Wada, 1981). Given the difficulties and expenses inherent with SEBS research (compared to more coastal areas), the region is under-sampled and the effects of those large-scale removals remain unknown. Visual line-transect surveys were conducted in the summers of 1997 (Tynan, 1999), 1999 (Moore *et al.*, 2000), 2000 (Moore *et al.*, 2002, BSIERP), 2002, 2008, and 2009 (Friday *et al.*, in press). These surveys covered the Coastal Domain (shore to 50m), the Middle Shelf Domain (50-100m, includes the SEBS) and the Outer Shelf Domain (100-200m) (Moore *et al.*, 2002). Fin whales were the most numerous large whales encountered, yet sightings were clustered near the 200m contour and Pribilof Canyon. Humpbacks were commonly found along the 50m contour and north of Unimak Island. Minke whales were most often seen along the north side of the Alaskan Peninsula and along the 100m contour, especially near Pribilof Canyon. Only a few scattered sightings of killer whales were recorded in the SEBS. The results from these surveys depict only a broad snapshot of overall occurrence and abundance; additional sighting data from the SEBS would provide valuable knowledge to existing cetacean distribution datasets.

Through an Inter-Agency Agreement (IA) between the National Marine Mammal Laboratory (NMML) and the US Department of the Interior, Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM, formerly the Minerals Management Service, MMS), NMML conducted dedicated multi-year studies of the distribution, abundance and habitat use of North Pacific right whales in the North Aleutian Basin (NAB) and southeastern Bering Sea (SEBS). Additional funding came from the North Pacific Research Board and the National Marine Fisheries Service. This work was prompted by the need for better data to assess the potential impact of oil and gas development in the NAB area. The IA study was a multi-year project which featured multidisciplinary investigations of right whale occurrence, movements and feeding ecology. The overall goal of the IA study was to facilitate any development of future oil and gas-related mitigation (although none is being considered at present) by assessing the distribution, occurrence and habitat use of North Pacific right whales in the SEBS (North Aleutian Basin lease sale area and adjacent waters). The general objectives of the study were as follows:

- To assess distribution of NPRWs in the SEBS, with emphasis on the NPRW Critical Habitat in the Bering Sea.
- To locate whales for tagging, behavioral observations and habitat studies using ship-based visual surveys and passive acoustic methodology.
- To deploy satellite transmitters to assess movements and distribution on the feeding grounds as well as to determine migratory routes and destinations in the North Pacific Ocean.
- To deploy long-term passive acoustic recorders to assess year-round presence and relative abundance of NPRWs in the SEBS.
- To collect photo-identification data and biopsy samples from individual whales to investigate population structure, improve estimates of abundance, determine sex, pollutant loads, diet and other studies.

The proposed study, named the Pacific RIght whale Ecology STudy (PRIEST) was intended to have three yearly project field components: right whale biology (shipboard and aerial), passive acoustics, and right whale feeding and prey. Each project component is a technological discipline and was coordinated by a Project Leader with extensive experience in that discipline. All project components were conducted in the summer of 2008 and 2009. In the 2007, 2010 and 2011 field seasons, shipboard, visual and passive acoustic data were collected, but no feeding/prey or aerial surveys were conducted due to funding constraints. Table 1 illustrates the period in which field work was carried out. In all, 38 scientists from 15 different organizations participated in this project (Table 2a+b).

Particular emphasis was placed on the deployment of satellite transmitters during this cruise. In the past decades, satellite telemetry has been used to investigate hypotheses about migratory routes and destinations. For example, Zerbini *et al.* (2006a) deployed satellite transmitters on humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) wintering in Brazil and demonstrated that only one of two hypothesized migratory routes to the feeding grounds in the western South Atlantic Ocean was actually used. In addition, these authors found that once whales reached the feeding areas, they stayed in areas nearly 300-500 km offshore of their historical feeding grounds. Telemetry was also used to describe the extension of movements, preferred habitat, and associations with environmental features. A study conducted with North Atlantic right whales (*Eubalaena glacialis*) (Mate *et al.*, 1997) illustrates the value of using telemetry to discover previously unknown habitats. Prior to tagging, this was considered a slow-moving species restricted to coastal areas for relatively well-defined periods of time (CeTAP (Winn & University of Rhode Island) 1982; NMFS, 1991). However, the study, conducted in the feeding grounds of the Gulf of Maine and Scotian Shelf, revealed that satellite-tagged whales were highly mobile and capable of traveling long distances (Mate *et al.*, 1997; Baumgartner & Mate, 2005). In addition, telemetry showed that right whales were not restricted to coastal habitats. Some individuals moved into deep waters off the continental shelf, where the species had not been previously reported (Mate *et al.*, 1997). This study also revealed that right whales often associated with oceanographic features (warm core rings and upwelling areas), which likely concentrated prey and provided foraging opportunities.

Real-time satellite-monitoring has also been used to focus intensive research effort in areas inhabited by tracked whales, in order to collect additional data with important conservation implications. For example, locations from a satellite-monitored NPRW in 2004 were used to direct a survey vessel to locate the largest aggregation of the species recorded in the past 40 years (Wade *et al.*, 2006).

This report covers the period between March 2007 and April 2012, during which five shipboard surveys and 2 aerial surveys were conducted in the Bering Sea (Table 1). In all, 38 scientists from 15 different organizations participated in this project (Table 2a+b).

Table 1: Dates for PRIEST Aerial and Vessel Surveys.

Vessel		
2007	July 31	August 29
2008	August 2	September 14
2009	July 16	August 30
2010	July 30	August 23
2011	September 3	September 10

Aerial		
2008	July 20	August 31
2009	July 8	August 30

Table 2a: Scientist roster for PRIEST aerial surveys.

Name	Role	Organization
Brenda Rone	Chief Scientist, Observer, Photographer, Data Manager, Acoustician	NMML-AFSC-NOAA
Cynthia Christman	Observer	NMML-AFSC-NOAA
Greg Fulling	Observer	Aquatic Farms Contractor
Jeff Foster	Observer	Aquatic Farms Contractor
Laura Morse	Observer, Acoustician	NMML-AFSC-NOAA

Table 2b: Scientist roster for PRIEST vessel surveys

Name	Role	Organization
Alexandre Zerbini	Chief scientist, Observer, Photographer and Satellite Tagger	NMML-AFSC-NOAA
Amy Kennedy	Chief scientist, Observer, Photographer, Coxswain and Satellite Tagger	NMML-AFSC-NOAA
Anthony Martinez	Chief scientist, Observer, Photographer, and Coxswain	SEFSC-NOAA
Billy Adams	Observer, Coxswain	North Slope Borough
Brenda Rone	Observer, Photographer, Data Manager, Coxswain	NMML-AFSC-NOAA
Carter Esch	Observer, Foraging Ecology Team	WHOI
Catherine Berchok	Acoustician	NMML-AFSC-NOAA
Dee Allen	Observer, Photographer	NMML-AFSC-NOAA
Desray Reeb	Observer, Photographer, and Data Manager	Aquatic Farms Contractor
Don Ljungblad	Acoustician	Marine Acoustic Consultants
Elizabeth Kusel	Acoustician	University of Oregon
Francesco Scattorin	Acoustician	Volunteer
Hans Christian Schmidt	Satellite Tagger	Contractor
Heather Riley	Observer, Photographer	University of Alaska-Fairbanks
Holger Klinck	Acoustician	WHOI
James Dunn	Acoustician	Cornell
Jason Michalec	Acoustician	Cornell
Jennifer Keating	Acoustician	San Diego Zoo
Jessica Crance	Acoustician	NMML-AFSC-NOAA
Jessica Thompson	Observer	NMML-AFSC-NOAA
Julia Hager	Acoustician	University of Oregon
Karolin Klinck	Acoustician	University of Oregon
Lamalani Siverts	Observer	Volunteer
Mark Baumgartner	Observer, Tagger, Foraging Ecology Team Leader	WHOI
Mikkel Vellum Jensen	Observer, Satellite Tagger	Contractor
Nadie Lysiak	Observer, foraging ecology team	WHOI
Oswaldo Vasquez	Observer, biopsy sampler	Atemar
Phillip Clapham	Chief Scientist, Observer, Photographer	NMML-AFSC-NOAA
Richard Pace	Observer, coxswain	NEFSC-NOAA
Sarah Mussoline	Observer, foraging ecology team	WHOI
Siri Hakala	Acoustician	Aquatic Farms Contractor
Stephanie Grassia	Observer	NMML-AFSC-NOAA
Suzanne Yin	Observer, coxswain	SWFSC
Ygor Geyer	Observer, Satellite Tagger	Contractor
Yulia Ivashchenko	Observer, Photographer	NMML-AFSC-NOAA

METHODS

Shipboard Surveys

Vessel surveys were conducted in the in Bering Sea during the summers of 2007 through 2011, although 2008 and 2009 were significantly longer cruises than the rest due to budget issues (Table 1). All surveys focused in an area on the SEBS shelf where the majority of recent (post-1970) July-September NPRWs records were reported. Initially, a survey planning area was established and zig-zag tracklines were proposed for the ship to cover the survey area (Figure 2). This design could be surveyed multiple times and could be shifted in the east-west direction in order to provide coverage of previously unsurveyed areas whenever necessary.

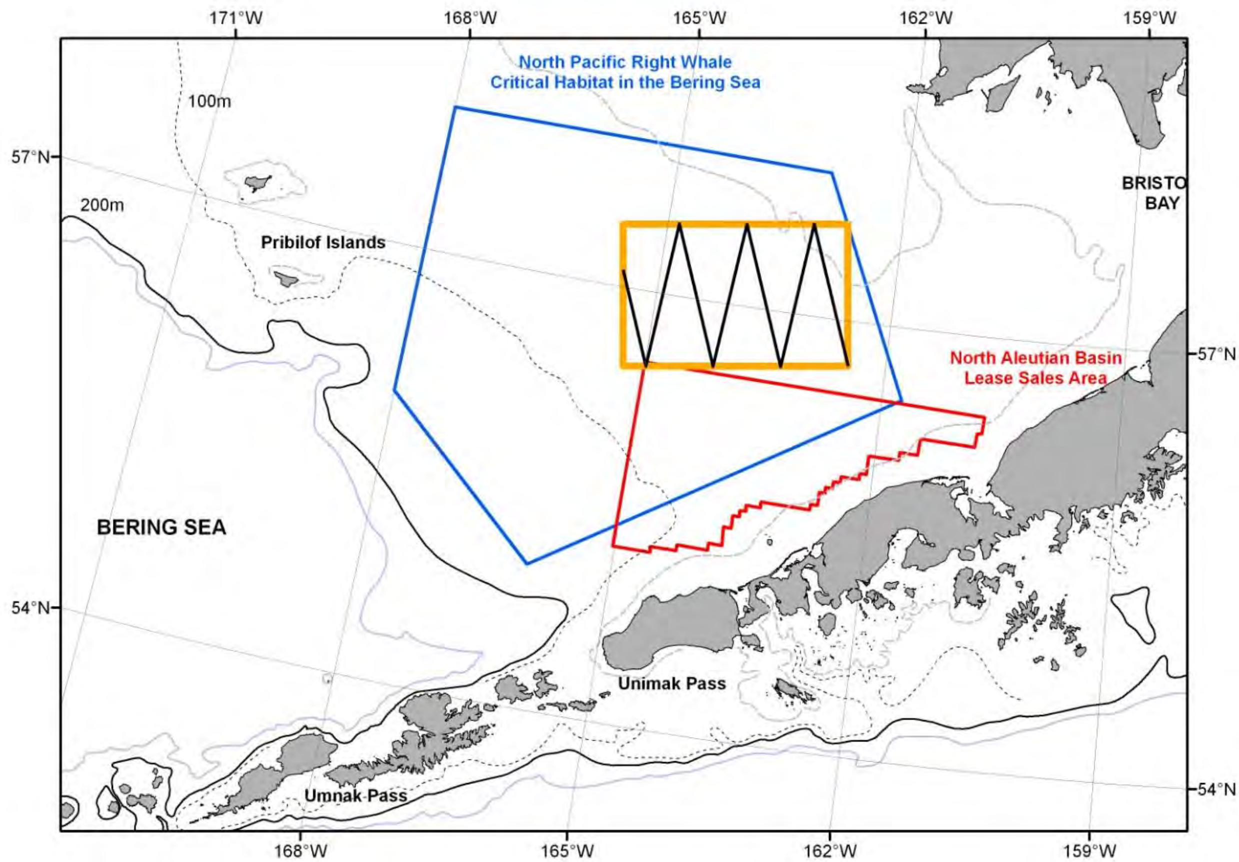


Figure 2: Proposed trackline (black) for all shipboard surveys during PRIEST. The yellow box highlights historically dense NPRW habitat.

Although right whales were the primary target of this project, researchers also conducted distribution, photo-ID and satellite telemetry studies on other species of large whales (namely humpback, fin and killer whales) on an opportunistic basis. Given the remote location and paucity of survey effort in the SEBS, any information on cetacean distribution and behavior in this region could contribute greatly to existing scientific knowledge. Methodology for all aspects of the project did not differ between species.

Shipboard visual survey methods were applied during daylight hours and appropriate sighting conditions (e.g. sea state below 5 in the Beaufort scale, light to no rain, >1mi visibility, and wind speeds below 20 knots). Visual searching was carried out by 3 observers located in the flying bridge, bridge wings and/or inside the bridge. Weather permitting, two observers were stationed outside on either side of the vessel and looked for animals with the assistance of low (7x50) and high powered (25x, 'Big Eye') binoculars. The observers scanned the water 180° in front of the vessel, from beam to beam. The recorder (who also acted as a "naked eye" observer) recorded all marine mammal sightings using the WinCruz program. When a sighting was detected, the observer would relay the following information to the recorder:

- number of reticles from the horizon to the sighting
- radial angle from the trackline (bow of the ship) to the sighting
- sighting cue (blow, animals' body, birds, etc.)
- swimming direction of the group
- swimming speed of the group
- species identifications
- best, high, and low estimates of group size

Barnett Velocispeed Crossbows (120 lb draw) with specially designed bolts and collection tips were used to collect skin and blubber samples during this project. Professional Digital Single Lens Reflex (DSLR) cameras and high quality telephoto lenses were used during PRIEST for photo-ID. During photo-ID events, 2-4 observers would photograph the target animal(s) and attempt to take high quality images of individually identifiable markings on the whales. For right whales, photographs of both sides of the callosity pattern forward of the blowholes were essential; for humpbacks, observers focused on ventral fluke photos. At least one camera, usually the primary photographer's, would record images in RAW format but most were recorded as large jpeg files to save space. After the photo-ID events, the photographer would download and back-up their photos, then fill out data sheets that with sighting-specific meta-data and individual details for each image.

Aerial Surveys

Aerial surveys were conducted in 2008 and 2009. During 2008, the survey area was divided into three strata: Western, Central and Eastern (Figure 3). The Central stratum included the NAB lease area and the region where a majority of the right whale records (sightings, acoustic detections and satellite telemetry locations) had been documented since the late 1960s. Due to the lack of sightings in 2007, effort was also applied in the Western and Eastern strata. Transect lines consisted of a north-south and east-west grid pattern, producing equal probability of detection in all three strata. In 2009, the survey was redesigned to account for the limited range of the right whales observed in 2008 within the Critical Habitat; tracklines were designed with fine-scale coverage to account for the limited visibility conditions often encountered in the Bering Sea (Figure 4). Survey design consisted of 30 boxes. Each box contained nine north-south transect lines, 40 nm in length with 5 nm spacing between tracklines. Survey boxes were designed to cover the entire Critical Habitat and the NAB and immediate surrounding waters. The small-scale design proved more effective in locating individual animals given that the right whales in 2008 were only observed in singles or pairs.

During both years, the survey team consisted of two observers and a data recorder/observer (and acoustician in 2009). Sighting data was collected by a team of three scientists using standard line-transect methods. One scientist was designated as data recorder for the entire survey project to maintain consistency. The aircraft was flown at a speed of 110 knots.

Surveys were flown at altitudes ranging from 600-1000 ft, weather permitting. Surveys lasted between 4 and 6 hours, depending on the location of the survey area to the refueling destination. If conditions permitted, the aircraft would refuel and conduct a second survey in a given day.

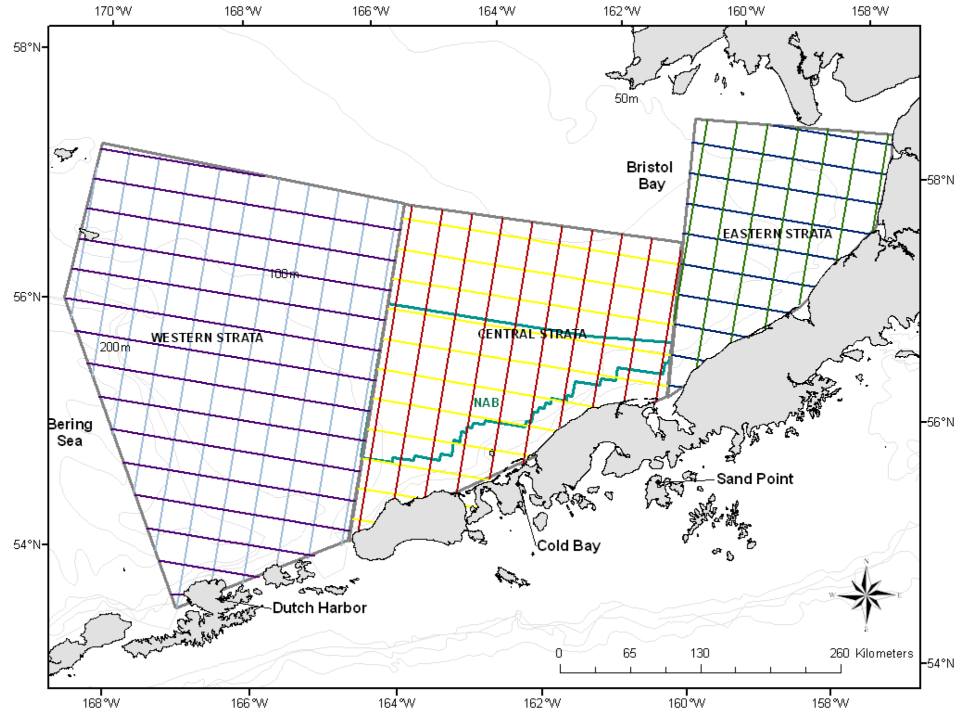


Figure 3. Systematic aerial transects in the southeastern Bering Sea in 2008.

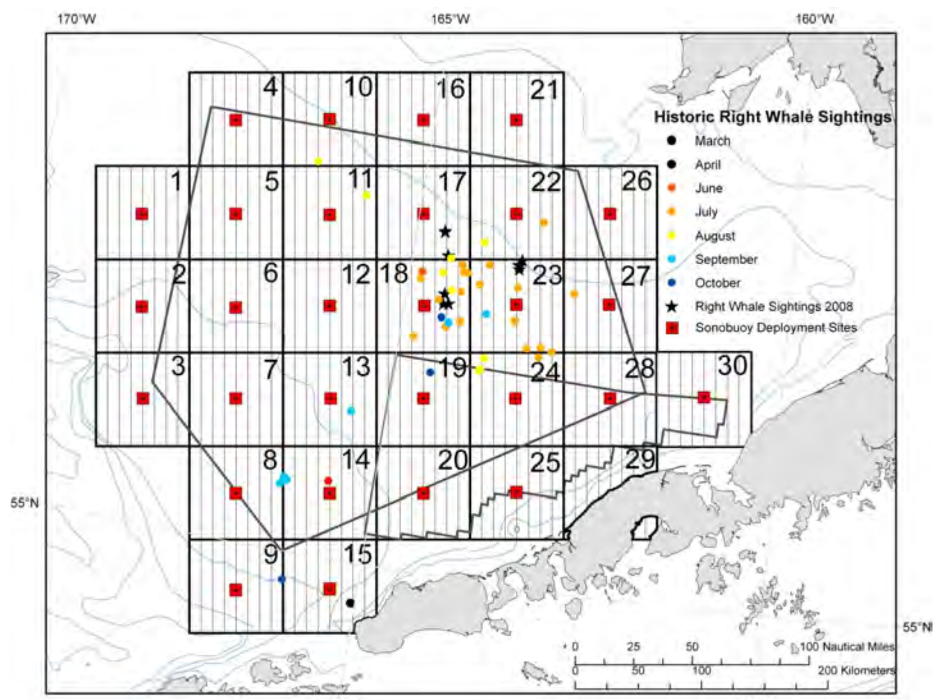


Figure 4. Systematic aerial transects in the southeastern Bering Sea in 2009.

Satellite Telemetry

Once right whales or other target species were seen by vessel observers, inflatable boats were launched for tag deployment whenever possible. Satellite transmitters were attached to the body of NPRWs and humpback whales using the Air Rocket Transmitter System (ARTS, Heide-Jørgensen *et al.*, 2001), which is a modified marine safety pneumatic line thrower. Tagging took place at distances from 6-10m. Tag deployment in previous right whale tagging studies (Mate *et al.*, 1997; Wade *et al.*, 2006) was conducted with a pole (see Heide-Jørgensen *et al.*, 2003) and required a closer approach (within 3-6m) to the whales. The use of the ARTS allowed tag deployment from greater distances and therefore provided more tagging opportunities.

All species were tagged with the implantable configuration of the SPOT 5 transmitters produced by Wildlife Computers (Redmond, WA) (Figure 5). These instruments are cylindrical in shape and contain an ARGOS satellite PTT. The tags are divided into two components. The transmitter cylinder is a stainless steel tube where the electronic components of the tag are cast. It measures 11.5 cm in length and 2 cm in diameter. The cylinder is attached to the anchoring system, which corresponds to a 15-20cm long stainless steel rod of smaller diameter (0.8 cm) with 3-5cm retention flanges (or barbs) at the proximal end. When deployed, approximately 4 cm of the tag remains external to the body of the whale, with an antenna extending out of the distal end of the tag (Figure 6). Attempts were made to photograph and biopsy sample all tagged whales for individual identification and sex determination. Tag deployment, photo-identification and biopsy sampling were performed according to regulations and restrictions specified in the existing permits issued by the NMFS to the National Marine Mammal Laboratory (permit #782-1719-09, 14245).

Figure 5: SPOT 5 satellite transmitters deployed on NPRWs in the SEBS in 2008 and 2009.

PTT 87636-09

PTT 87637-09

Figure 6: NPRW showing SPOT 5 satellite tags deployed on the right dorsal side of the body.

Transmitters were duty-cycled to optimize data collection in the feeding grounds (for habitat use studies) and for maximizing tag longevity. Tags were programmed to transmit every day for 6 hours (14-21hs UTC) during daytime and 6 hours (2-9hs UTC) during night time for the months of August and September. This sampling design was expected to provide extensive data while the whales are on their feeding grounds. Beginning in October, when migration likely begins, transmitters were programmed to transmit every other day, following the same alternate 6hr on/off periods.

Satellite tags were monitored by Argos Data Collection and Location Service receivers on NOAA TIROS-N weather satellites in sun-synchronous polar orbits (Argos, 1990). Locations were calculated by Argos from Doppler-shift data when multiple messages were received during a satellite's passage overhead. Argos codes locations in quality classes (LQ) labeled B, A, 0, 1, 2, 3, in order of increasing accuracy. Fadely *et al.* (2005) verified accuracies of 0.4 km (±0.3) for LQ3, 0.7 km (±0.6) for LQ2, 1.5 km (±1.5) for LQ1, 4.9 km (±5.3) for LQ0, 2.9 km (±5.2) for LQA, and 17.4 km (±26.2) for LQB.

The SDA Argos filter (Freitas *et al.*, 2008) was applied to all location qualities in software R in order to remove locations that implied unlikely deviations from the track's path as well as unrealistic travel rates. This filter requires two main parameters: turning angles and maximum speed of travel. The default value of turning angles (Freitas *et al.*, 2008) was used and the maximum speed was assumed to be 15km/h (*e.g.* Mate *et al.*, 1997). Exploratory analysis showed that the use of different maximum speed limits (12 and 18km/h) did not influence the results. Distances between filtered locations were calculated assuming a great circle route.

Passive Acoustic Monitoring

A combination of long-term moored passive acoustic recorders and short-term sonobuoys were used throughout the PRIEST survey to provide the best combination of seasonal and spatial coverage of the study area. In addition, a proof-of-concept deployment of a near-real-time auto-detection buoy was completed in 2009 through a partnership with the Bioacoustics Research Program at Cornell University and Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution.

Sonobuoys

Sonobuoys played a key role in locating right whales during the field surveys. They had been used successfully in a previous tagging study (Wade *et al*., 2006) to locate individual whales, and were invaluable during PRIEST. Sonobuoys would routinely detect calling right whales up to 10 nm away, even when visual observations were limited by darkness, high sea states, or fog (as was often the case in the Bering Sea).

Designed for military purposes, sonobuoys (Figure 7a) are free-floating, expendable, short-term hydrophones that transmit signals in real time via VHF radio waves to a receiver on a vessel (or aircraft). Because they contain batteries, sonobuoys have a limited shelf life. The military is often unable to use all of their sonobuoys before the expiration date passes. Because their operations have no room for equipment failure, expired sonobuoys are sent to surplus, where many are donated to marine mammal research projects, like this one, for passive acoustic research.

The functional range of sonobuoys is dependent on two factors. The distance a transmitting sonobuoy can be detected by the antenna on the vessel (or aircraft), or the in-air reception range, depends on the transmission power of the sonobuoy (battery strength dependent), the height, type, and gain of the antenna, and whether any objects block the line of sight between the two (such as ocean waves or superstructure on the ship). An omnidirectional antenna was installed in all years of the survey; starting in 2010 a Yagi directional antenna was also installed. Both antennas were placed up in the crow's nest of the vessel (Figure 7b) with the directional antenna facing astern. The Yagi was used primarily during transit when the sonobuoy was guaranteed to be behind the vessel, and the omnidirectional antenna was used for monitoring multiple sonobuoys simultaneously. A switch located in the bridge was used to select which antenna fed into the monitoring system. The omnidirectional antenna had a maximum in-air reception range of approximately 8-10 nm. The Yagi antenna almost doubled the in-air reception range, providing 15 miles or more on some buoys. The distance a calling animal could be detected by the sonobuoy hydrophone, or acoustic detection range, is highly dependent on oceanographic conditions, but typically averages 10-15nm.

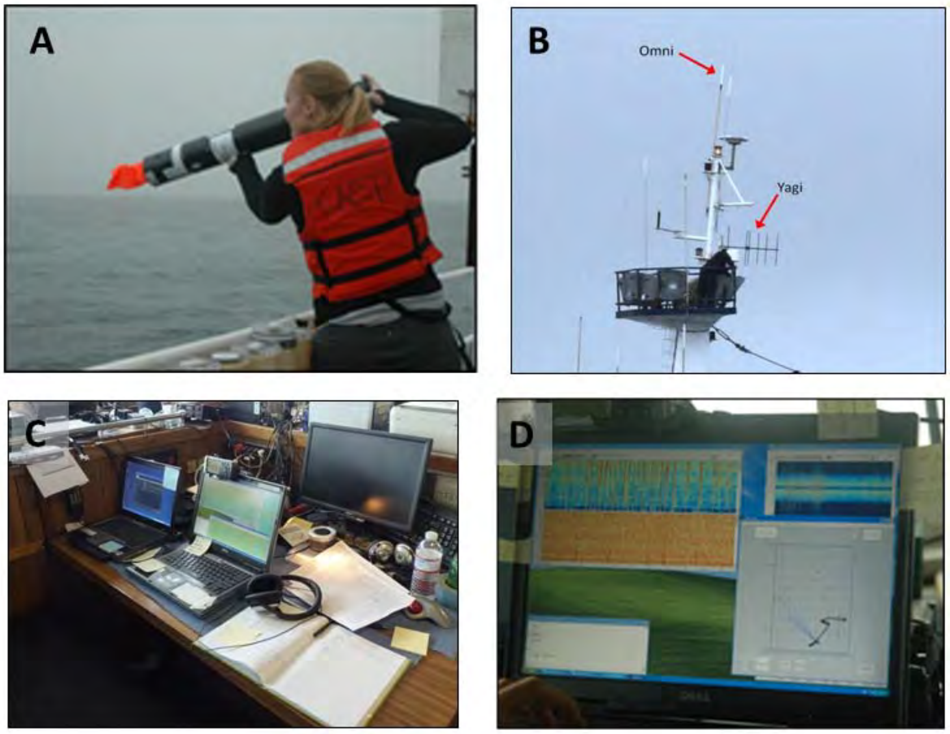


Figure 7: Sonobuoy deployment and monitoring methods: a) A sonobuoy is deployed off the rail of the vessel. It transmits up to b) one of two receiving antennas located on the crow's nest. c) Specialized receiving equipment located on the bridge is used to record and monitor the sonobuoy acoustic signal, d) DifarTracker software screenshot.

Sonobuoys come in two main types: omni-directional sonobuoys can record up to 100 kHz, a frequency range that includes most marine mammal vocalizations. DiFAR (Directional Frequency Analysis and Recording) sonobuoys can record up to 2.5 kHz, which is still sufficient for most vocalizations, but transmit directional bearing information in addition to the acoustic signals. By deploying two or more DiFAR sonobuoys a few miles apart, we can obtain a cross-fix or triangulation on a calling whale and localize on the whale's position in real-time (detailed below). This information can be used to verify that the calling animal is the same as the one spotted by the observers, to conduct focal follows that correlate acoustic behavior with visual behaviors, or most importantly – to help direct the vessel to the calling animal so that visual observations can be made, photographs and biopsy samples can be taken, and telemetry tags can be attached.

The sonobuoys were removed from their housing on the deck of the ship and were stationed alongside the rail of the ship nearest the bridge for easy deployment. When removing the buoys from the housing and prepping them for deployment, all excess or unnecessary plastic or parts were removed to reduce the amount of marine debris going into the sea. On some sonobuoy models, the minimum depth of deployment was greater than the depth of the water column. To shorten the deployment depth, modifications were made to the sonobuoys, including taping up additional sensor arrays, cutting off excess string, and tying up the top portion of the buoy containing the coiled cable to prevent accidental deployment. After such modifications were completed, the approximate deployment depth of the sonobuoys was 70 ft.

Sonobuoys were deployed every year of the right whale survey (2007-2010) and continue to be deployed during the transit legs for the CHAOZ (Chukchi Acoustic Oceanographic and Zooplankton) survey which pass between Dutch Harbor and Nome, AK. Since 2007, nearly

1000 sonobuoys (with an overall success rate of 79.9%) were deployed for this study (Table 3). Locations of all successfully deployed sonobuoys can be found in Figures 23-27 in the Results section.

Sonobuoys were also used in 2009 from the aerial survey platform (See Rone *et al*, 2011 for aerial sonobuoy methods). Because the sonobuoys used by the boat and the plane were the same, monitoring was conducted by both observation platforms whenever either were in range of a deployed sonobuoy.

Table 3: Numbers of sonobuoys deployed each field season: # successful (total #).

Sonobuoy type	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011
DiFAR	79 (133)	226 (290)	261 (305)	89 (100)	118 (141)
Magnavox 57B Omni	0	11 (12)	3 (4)	2 (2)	1 (1)
TOTAL	**79 (133)**	**237 (302)**	**264 (309)**	**91 (102)**	**119 (142)**

Analysis of sonobuoy data was undertaken primarily in real time during the cruise. The acoustic output from the antenna was fed into 3 WiNRADiO G39WSBe receivers (Oakleigh, Australia). The digital output of these receivers were input through a MOTU model UltraLite mk3 external soundcard (S & S Research, Inc., Norwood, MA) to the laptop computer (Figure 7c). Two windows of the sound analysis program, Ishmael[1], were used to simultaneously save the sound files to an external drive as well as to monitor the recordings. An acoustic technician monitored the scrolling spectrograms of the recordings from each sonobuoy aurally as well as visually, and noted the species detected during its deployment. Monitoring occurred in real time 24/7 throughout the cruise, although sonobuoys were deployed only every three hours while transiting.

When a call of interest was detected, a box was drawn around it and a custom designed tracking program, DifarTracker (Figure 7d), was launched. DifarTracker was written in-house using Matlab, the demultiplexing software created by Greeneridge Sciences, Inc. (Santa Barbara, CA), and the Ishmael-to-Matlab demultiplexer interface written by Mark McDonald (Whale Acoustics, Bellvue, CO). DifarTracker produces a map of sonobuoy deployment locations and the vessel track (updated every minute). After the call is processed, a line indicating the bearing angle from the sonobuoy is drawn on the map. When the call is detected on multiple sonobuoys, DifarTracker calculates a cross-fix position (latitude/longitude) from the intersection of two of the bearing angle lines. On occasion, a sonobuoy with shifted bearing information was encountered. Since DifarTracker produces a track of the vessel, the bearing angle to the ship can be calculated and compared to the actual ship position to calibrate the bearing angle from the DiFAR recording, eliminating this bearing error. Once NPRW calls were detected and their position was calculated, the ship was then diverted towards the calls to locate the whale(s) or start an expanding box search from that location.

[1] Mellinger, David K., 2001. Ishmael 1.0 User's Guide. NOAA Technical Memorandum OAR PMEL-120, available from NOAA/PMEL, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115-6349

Aerial Acoustics

After taking into consideration the limitations that were encountered on the 2008 aerial survey (i.e. limited visibility and high sea states combined with minimal numbers of right whales), an acoustic component was incorporated into the aerial survey this year in order to maximize the detection probability and expand coverage. (See Appendix A, pg. 99 for further details)

Long-term moored acoustic recorders

While sonobuoys provide real-time monitoring capabilities with broad spatial coverage, they are limited to only the time period of the cruise. To obtain a full picture of the seasonal distribution of the right whales, long-term moored passive acoustic recorders were used. Three different types of passive acoustic recorders (Figure 8) were deployed on two different types of sub-surface moorings (Figure 9).

Every year since 2006, through the generosity of Dr. Phyllis Stabeno (Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory (PMEL/NOAA)), NMML has been able to occupy four (M2, M4, M5, and M8, Figure 10) of her long-term oceanographic moorings located along the 70 m isobaths in the Bering Sea. The 2006 and 2007 recorders were funded by a North Pacific Research Board project (data graciously provided by Drs. Kate Stafford (APL/UW) and David K. Mellinger (PMEL/Oregon State University)), and were picked up by the PRIEST survey in 2008. No ship time or mooring costs were ever incurred by the PRIEST survey for any of these deployments. This report includes results from 2007-2011. Two types of passive acoustic recorders have been deployed on these PMEL moorings. Haruphones (Haru Matsumoto, CIMRS/NOAA, Newport, OR) were deployed on the M2 and M4 moorings during both the 2007-2008 and 2008-2009 deployments, and AURALs (Autonomous Underwater Recorder for Acoustic Listening, Multi-Électronique, Inc., Rimouski, QC) were used on the M5 and M8 moorings during the 2008-2009 deployments, and on all four moorings from 2009 on. Acoustic Doppler Current Profilers are collocated on all PMEL moorings (Figures 9a and 9b) while Acoustic Water Column Profilers (for zooplankton and fish) are located underneath the AURALs on the M2 and M4 moorings (Figure 9b). Information on the recording period, sampling rate, and duty cycle can be found in Table 4.

Table 4:. Recorder locations and settings. Recorder type: H – Haruphone, A – Aural, and E – Ear.

Year	Recorder		Location		Recording		Sampling	Duty Cycle (min)	
	Name	Type	Lat (N)	Long (W)	Start	End	Rate	Record time	Cycle time
2007	M2b	H	56.86562	-164.05335	12/28/07	05/06/08	2000	CONT	--
2007	M4	H	57.86100	-168.87663	10/02/07	05/08/08	2000	CONT	--
2008	M2a	H	56.86546	-164.05309	MIA	MIA	2000	CONT	--
2008	M4	H	57.86283	-168.87700	05/16/08	05/02/09	2000	CONT	--
2008	M5	A	59.90475	171.70475	10/01/08	05/29/09	8192	9	30
2008	M8	A	62.19595	174.65925	10/01/08	07/02/09	8192	9	30
2009	M2a	A	56.86610	-164.04630	05/06/09	09/25/09	8192	CONT	--
2009	M2b	A	56.85950	-164.06333	10/15/09	03/07/10	8192	26	30
2009	M4	A	57.84945	-168.86616	05/06/09	04/01/10	8192	9	20
2009	M5	A	59.90988	-171.70832	06/01/09	03/29/10	8192	9	20
2009	M8	A	62.19583	-174.65900	09/30/09	05/06/10	8192	9	20
2010	M2a	A	56.85917	-164.06333	05/03/10	05/23/10	8192	29	30
2010	M2b	A	56.85900	-164.06383	10/05/10	04/04/11	8192	58	60
2010	M4	A	57.85017	-168.86667	10/03/10	05/19/11	8192	10	20
2010	M5	A	59.91000	-171.70783	10/03/10	06/09/11	8192	12	20
2010	M8	A	62.19600	-174.65883	10/03/10	02/01/11	8192	12	20
2008	EA1	E	55.75100	-164.99667	08/04/08	02/11/09	4000	6.667	60
2008	EA2	E	56.25033	-164.00283	08/03/08	03/30/09	4000	6.667	60
2008	EA3	E	56.33457	-161.83660	failed	-	4000	6.667	60
2009	EA1	E	53.63180	-167.39287	07/16/09	01/20/10	4000	6.667	60
2009	EA2	E	55.75128	-164.99095	07/18/09	02/26/10	4000	6.667	60
2009	EA3	E	54.42667	-165.26550	08/04/09	08/01/10	4000	4	60
2010	EA1	E	61.58780	-171.32470	09/16/10	10/18/10	4000	4	60
2010	EA2	E	59.23970	-169.40895	09/17/10	08/14/11	4000	4	60
2010	EA3	E	57.67020	-164.72373	09/18/10	07/05/11	4000	4	60
2010	EA4	E	54.42782	-165.28035	09/22/10	08/12/11	4000	4	60

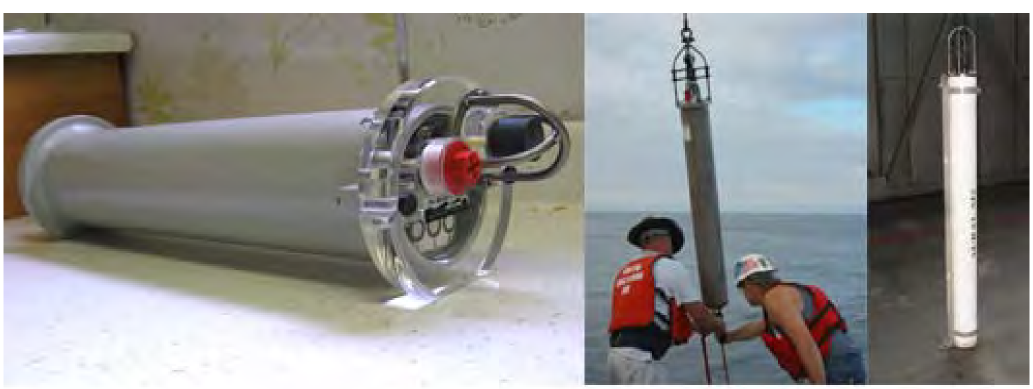


Figure 8: Three types of passive acoustic recorders used. A) Ecological Acoustic Recorder (EAR); B) Haruphone; C) Autonomous Underwater Recorder for Acoustic Listening (AURAL).

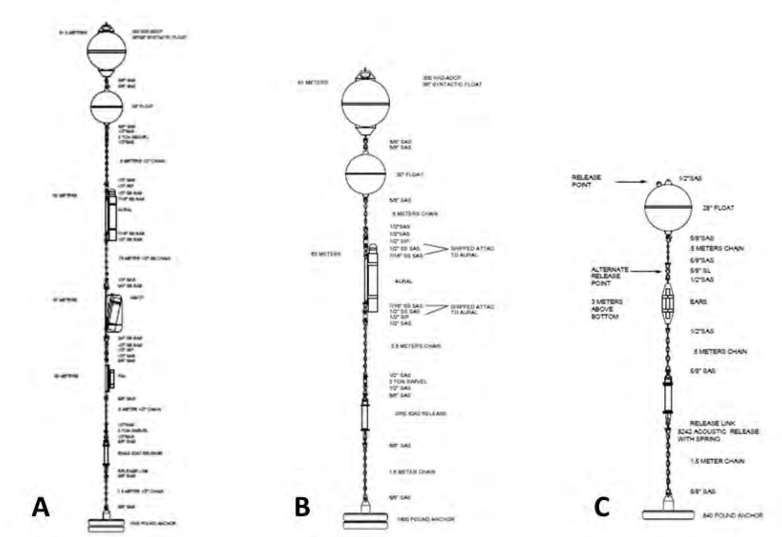


Figure 9: Mooring designs (not to scale) for a) M2 and M5 moorings 10.5m tall b) M4 and M8 moorings 10.5m tall c) EAR moorings 4m tall.

Starting in 2008, EARs (Ecological Acoustic Recorders, in collaboration with Drs. Marc Lammers and Whitlow Au, Hawaii Institute of Marine Biology, Univ. of HI, Kaneohe, HI) were also deployed on NMML-owned sub-surface moorings (Figure 9c) in various locations throughout the Bering Sea (EA1- EA4, Figure 10). Information on the recording period, sampling rate, and duty cycle for these EARs can be found in Table 4.

Although the last field season of the PRIEST survey was in 2010, because the cost of redeploying these recorders is minimal and because of the importance of maintaining a long time record of data for this area, we have continued to deploy these recorders during our transit legs through the Bering Sea for the CHAOZ (Chukchi Sea Acoustics, Oceanography, and Zooplankton) study.

Data from these long-term recorders were analyzed separately for right whale gunshot and upsweep calls, because these two call types span different frequency bands. The data were also analyzed for fin whale calls, results of which can be found in Appendix C.

Analysis of the data from these long-term recorders was carried out with a Matlab-based sound analysis software package, SoundChecker, developed in-house. SoundChecker was designed in response to the sheer magnitude of passive acoustic data recordings that need to be analyzed, the enormous overlap of the acoustic repertoires of many Alaskan marine mammal species, and the lack of any semblance of a stereotyped call for most of the species. We began analysis in 2009 using autodetectors, but spot-checks of those results showed that these auto-detectors were missing many of the right whale calls. In fact, comparison of the autodetector results with the current results shown in this report confirms this. Since this species is critically endangered, we found it safer to process the data by hand rather than risk missing any right whale detections.

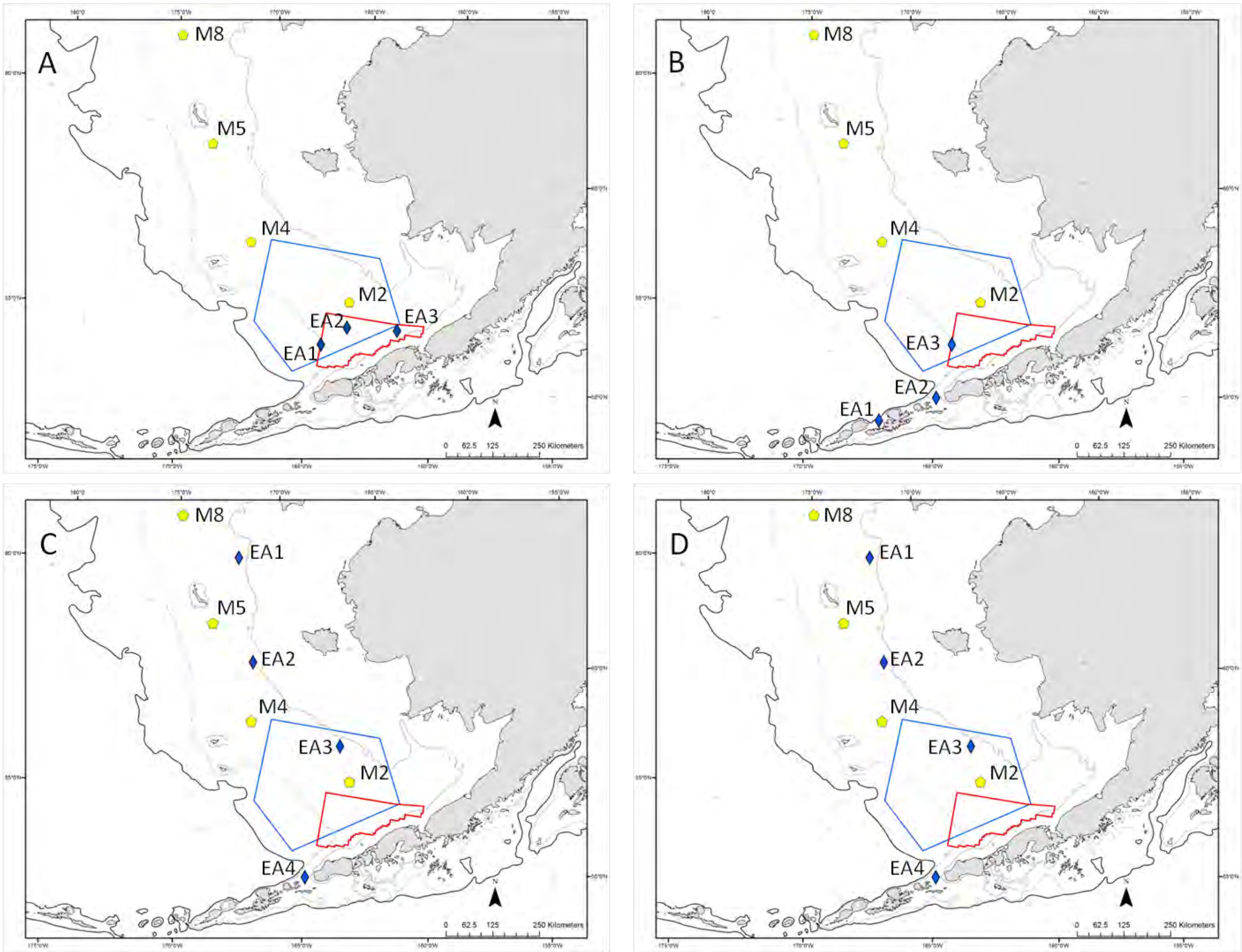


Figure 10: Locations of all passive acoustic recorders analyzed for this study. A) 2008, B) 2009, C) 2010, D) 2011. In addition, 2007 data from the M2 and M4 moorings were also analyzed.

The trouble with any spectrogram based sound analysis program is the amount of computational time needed to generate the spectrograms. This time increases as the frequency band of interest increases. SoundChecker (Figure 11) operates on image files (Portable Network Graphics (PNG) format) that can be generated ahead of time, so no time is wasted waiting for the spectrogram to be generated during the analysis sessions. For each image file the analyst decides if a species or call type is present, and selects the appropriate Yes/No/Maybe button. If No or Maybe is selected the program jumps to the next image file. If Yes is selected, then the program skips ahead to the first image file of the next time interval. An analysis interval of three hours is used for the AURALs and Haruphones, while every image file was reviewed for the EARs. Since many sounds are difficult to determine visually, there are playback and zoom options available to the analyst.

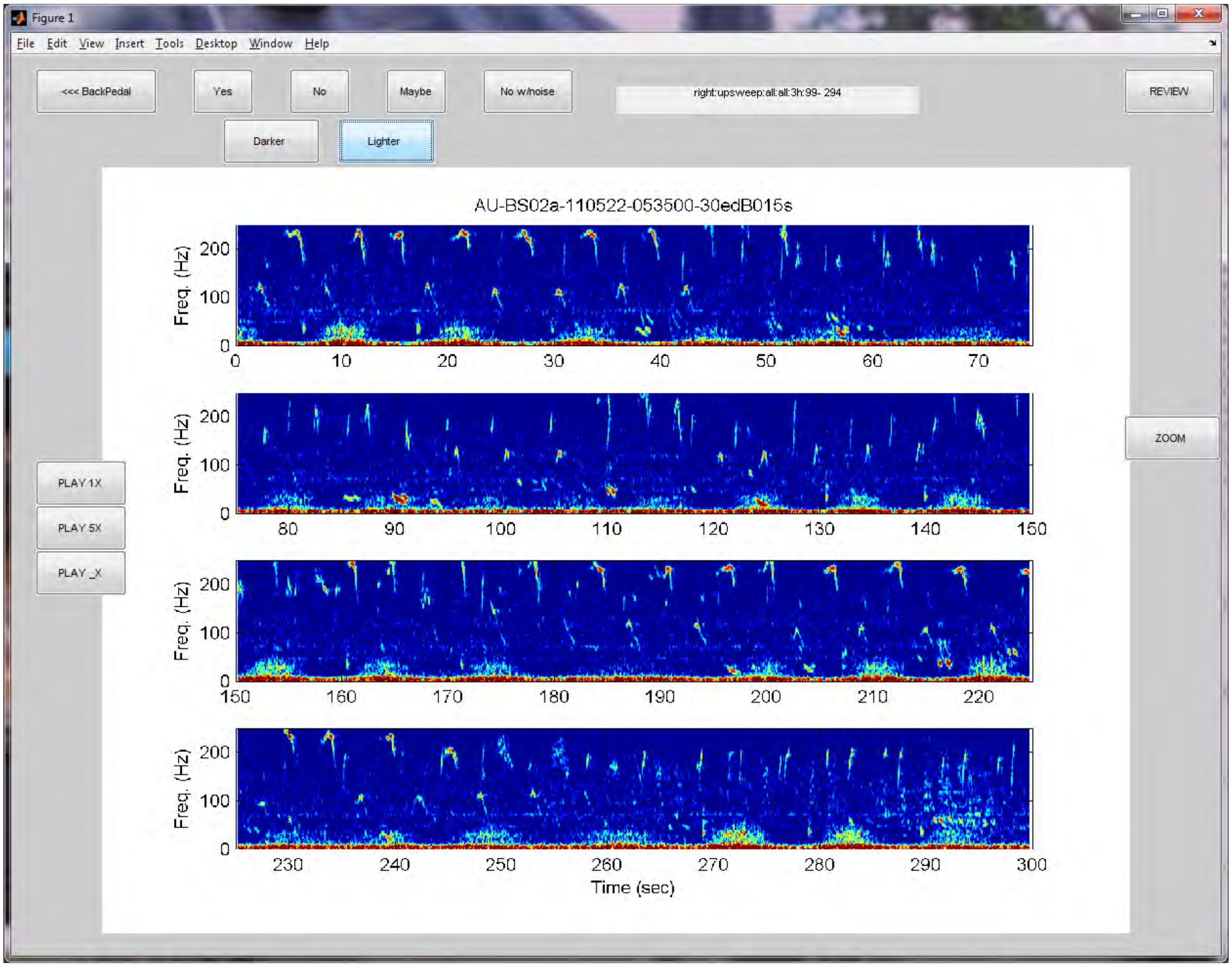


Figure 11: SoundChecker analysis interface. Spectrogram shown is for the Bering Sea PMEL M2 mooring deployed in 2011 and represents 300 s of recordings starting at 05:35:00 UTC on 22 May 2011. The upper information bar shows that this analyst is looking for right whale upsweep calls in 3 hour analysis intervals and is 294 spectrograms into their analysis session. Present are humpback and fin whale calls. SoundChecker was written in the Matlab programming language.

Near-real-time auto-detection buoy

A Right Whale Detection System (AB-22) built by Cornell University's Bioacoustics Research Laboratory (BRP) and Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution (WHOI) was deployed at 57°08.64'N and 164° 30.54'W. The system is a demonstration passive acoustic monitoring system that utilizes an automatic detection buoy with the capability to detect and notify (via an iridium link) a land-based station of the occurrence of North Pacific right whales in the vicinity of the buoy. The buoy was paid for by the Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM) funded Chukchi Acoustics, Oceanography, and Zooplankton (CHAOZ) study, as proof of concept needed to be determined prior to its deployment in the Chukchi Sea for that project. The land-based station then notified both the survey ship and airplane via a twice daily text message. The system was deployed from the USCGC *Healy* on July 20, 2009. This buoy remained in the water for just over one month, and recovery of the buoy occurred on 22 August 2009 from the NOAA ship *Oscar Dyson*. In addition, an acoustic pop-up buoy from Cornell was recovered on the same day less than half a mile from the automatic detection buoy. See Appendix B for the full Cornell report.

RESULTS

Shipboard and Aerial Surveys

Humpback whales were by far the most prevalent species observed (Figure 16), but several other species of large and small cetaceans were also observed (Table 5, Figures 13-17). A total of 13,605nm of combined aerial and shipboard effort were surveyed (Table 6, Figure 12).

There were 79 sightings of 120 individual right whales (Figure 14); this number reflects the high resighting rate of individual right whales during the study. All right whale sightings were photo-ID'd and only 12 individuals were identified during this study. Although right whales were acoustically detected during both the 2010 and 2011 surveys, inclement weather directly impacted observational work, thereby significantly reducing effort when compared to previous years (Table 6); the lack of visual sightings are the result of consistently poor visibility and weather conditions, not absence of aerial survey support. High seas and poor visibility would have likely restricted aerial survey operations.

Table 5: Vessel and aerial sightings/(number of animals) of marine mammals by year, PRIEST data only.

SIGHTINGS								
	VESSEL					AERIAL		
SPECIES	*2007*	*2008*	*2009*	*2010*	*2011*	*2008*	*2009*	**Total**
Right*	0	22(37)	24(43)	0	0*	10(12)	23(28)	**79(120)****
Humpback	60(349)	50(107)	36(137)	38(82)	54(122)	129(262)	17(29)	**384(1088)**
Fin	43(71)	28(47)	107(190)	2(6)	2(2)	40(91)	84(156)	**17(563)**
Minke	3(3)	7(9)	1(1)	4(5)	2(2)	0	0	**17(20)**
Gray	0	0	0	0	5(7)	0	0	**5(7)**
Sei	0	0	0	0	0	2(4)	0	**2(4)**
Killer	16(120)	14(61)	7(46)	2(12)	3(12)	4(27)	0	**46(278)**
Unid Beaked	0	0	0	0	0	2(4)	0	**2(4)**
Pacific white-sides	0	0	0	0	0	4(92)	0	**4(92)**
Dall's porpoise	38(216)	0	0	8(50)	2(19)	7(47)	0	**55(332)**
Harbor porpoise	12(20)	0	0	17(27)	21(31)	15(21)	0	**65(99)**

*One NPRW was seen in 2011 during the CHAOZ cruise, but those data are not included here.
**Due to the extremely high resighting rate of North Pacific right whales, these numbers do not reflect the number of individuals seen per season. Only 12 individual right whales were identified over the course of this study.

Table 6: PRIEST Survey Effort. Includes fog, transits, and cross-legs.

EFFORT		
Year	*Platform*	*On Effort (nm)*
2007	Vessel	1806
2008	Vessel	1206
	Aerial	6292
2009	Vessel	1013
	Aerial	2590
2010	Vessel	416
2011	Vessel	282
Total		**13605**

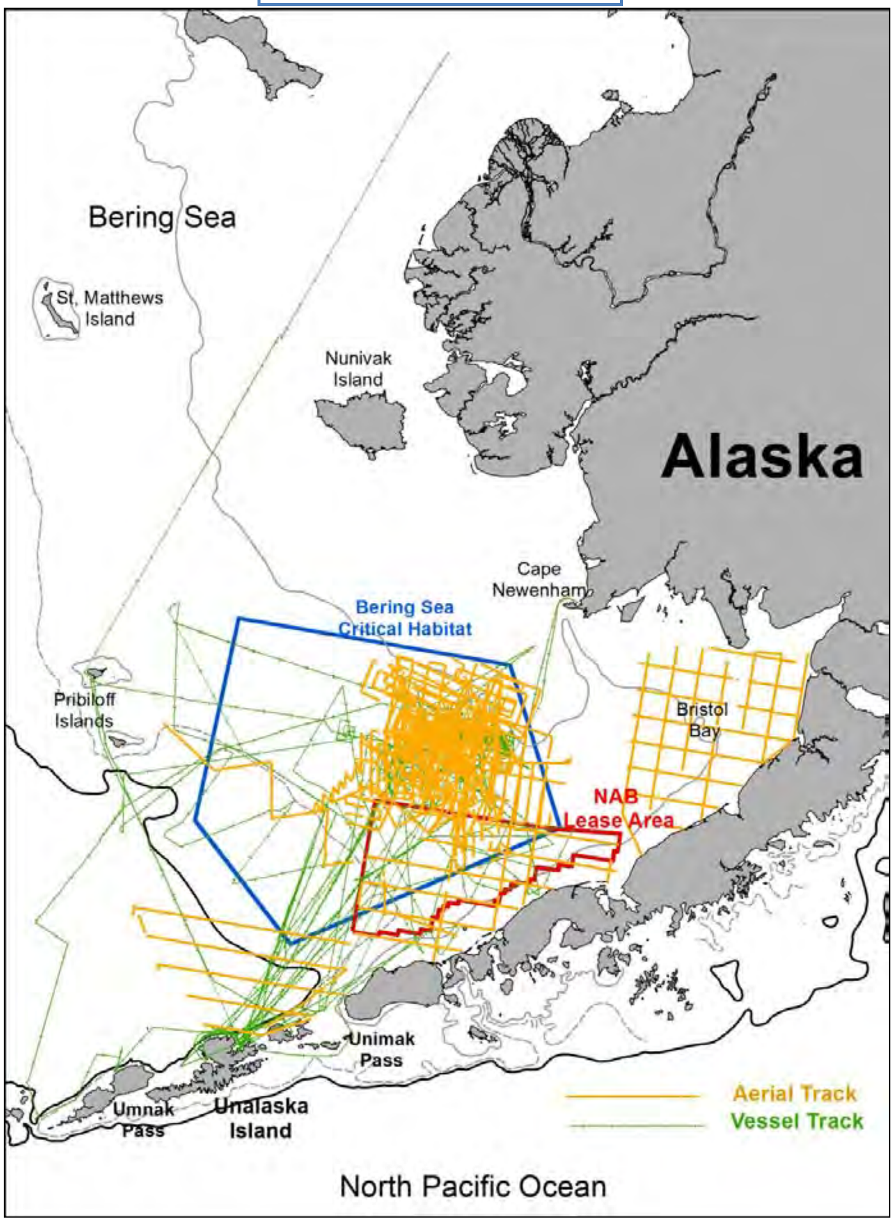


Figure 12: Aerial (yellow) and Vessel (green) tracklines from PRIEST 2007-2011

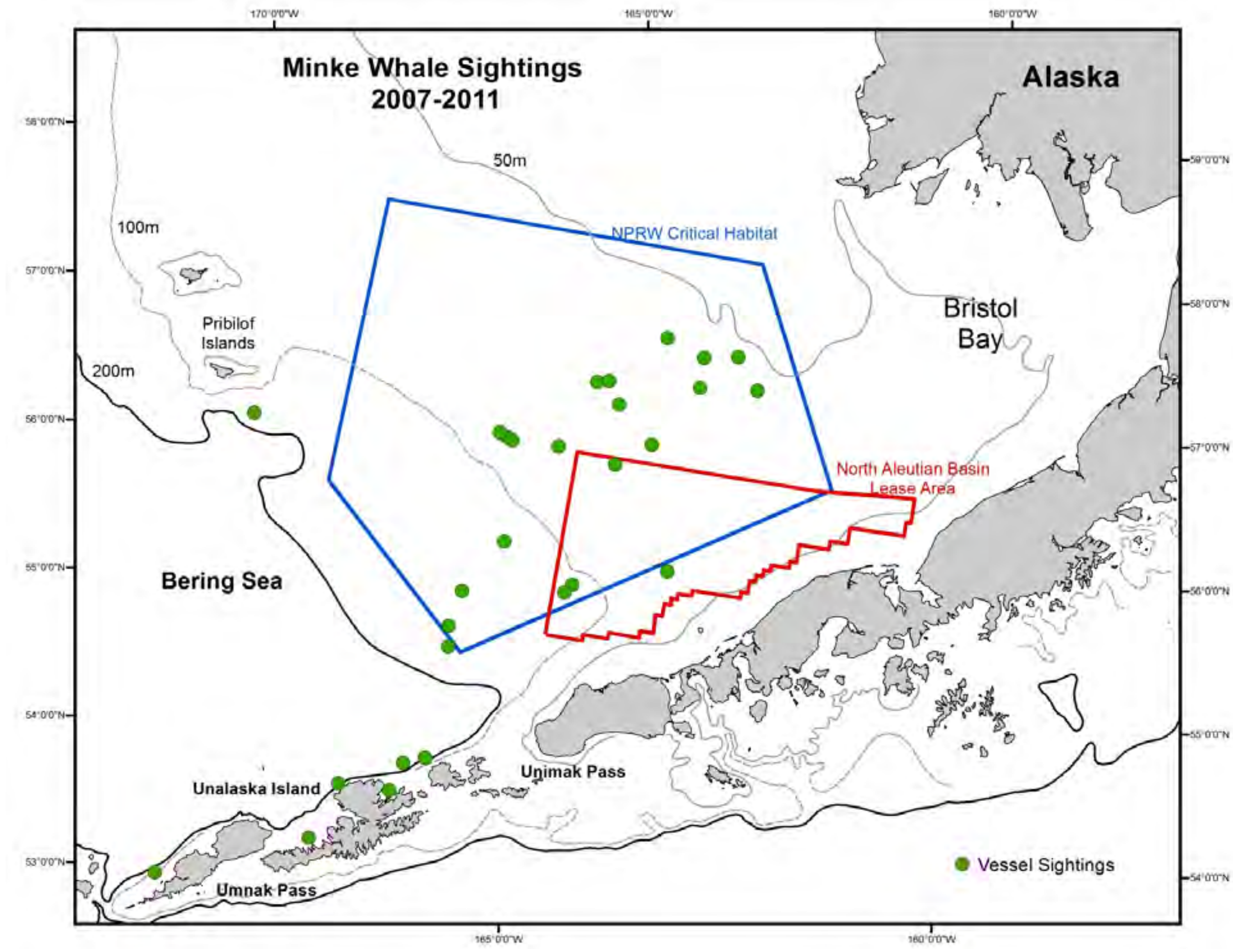


Figure 13: Minke whale sightings PRIEST 2007-2011.

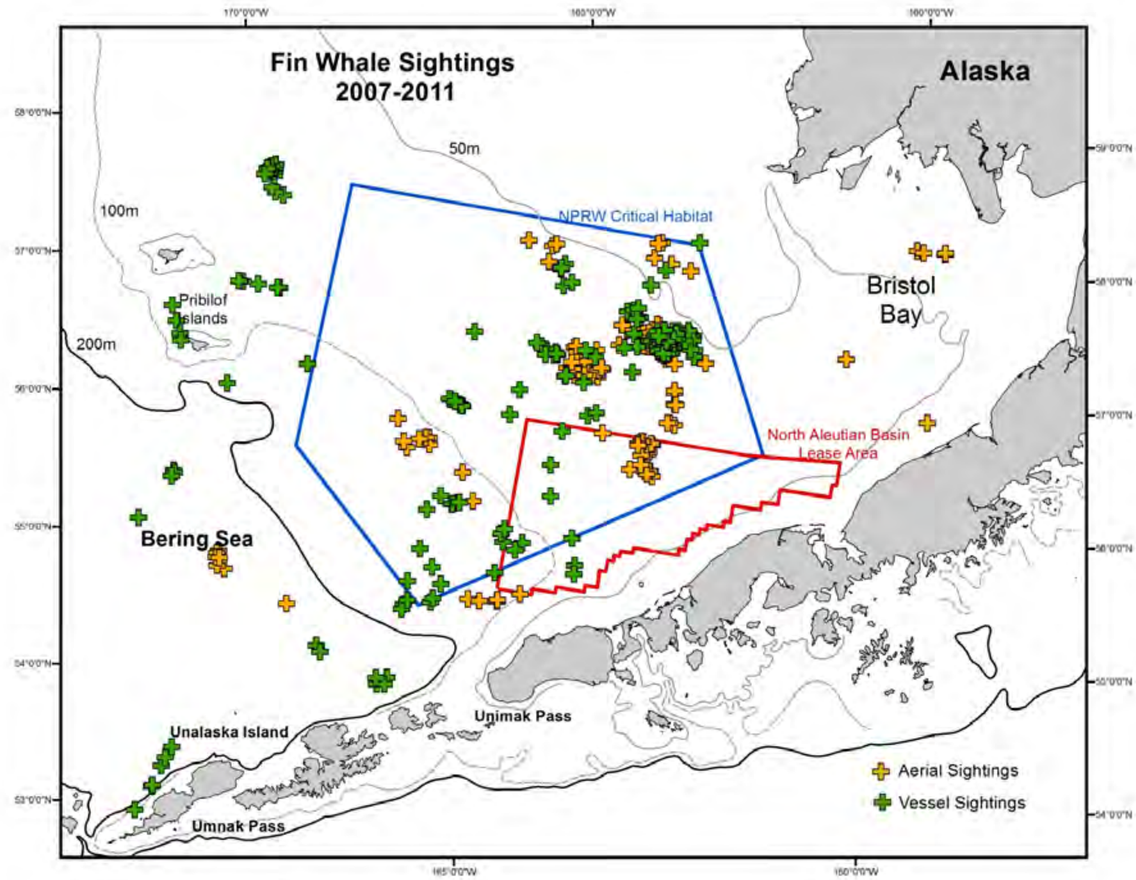


Figure 14: Fin whale sightings PRIEST 2007-2011.

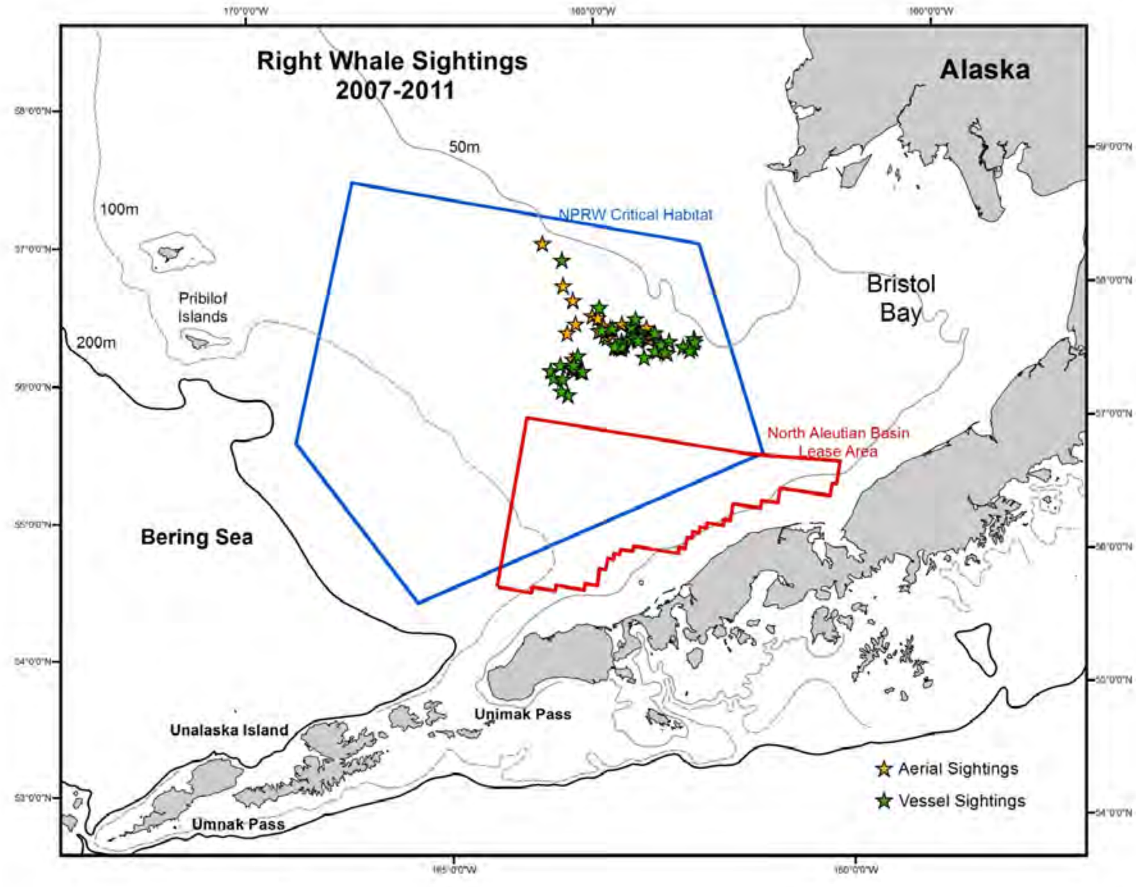


Figure 15: Right whale sightings PRIEST 2007-2011.

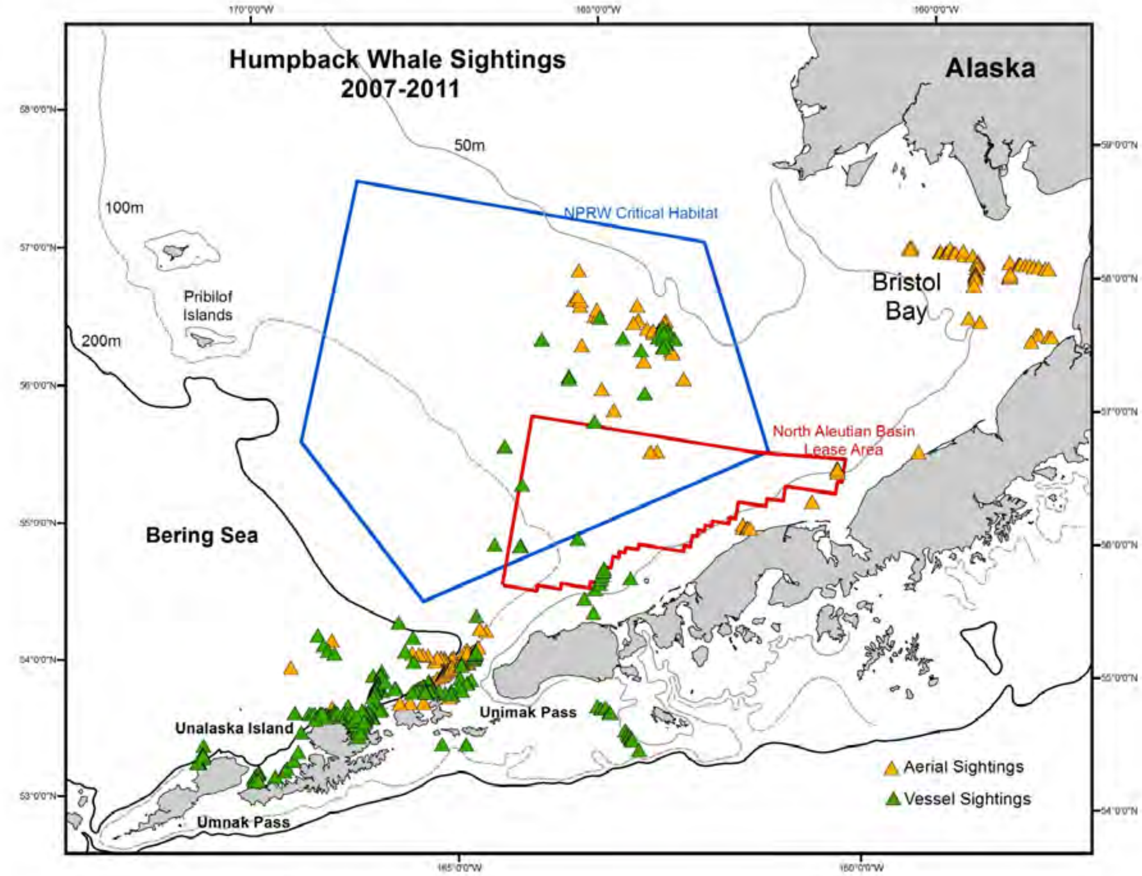


Figure 16: Humpback whale sightings PRIEST 2007-2011.

.

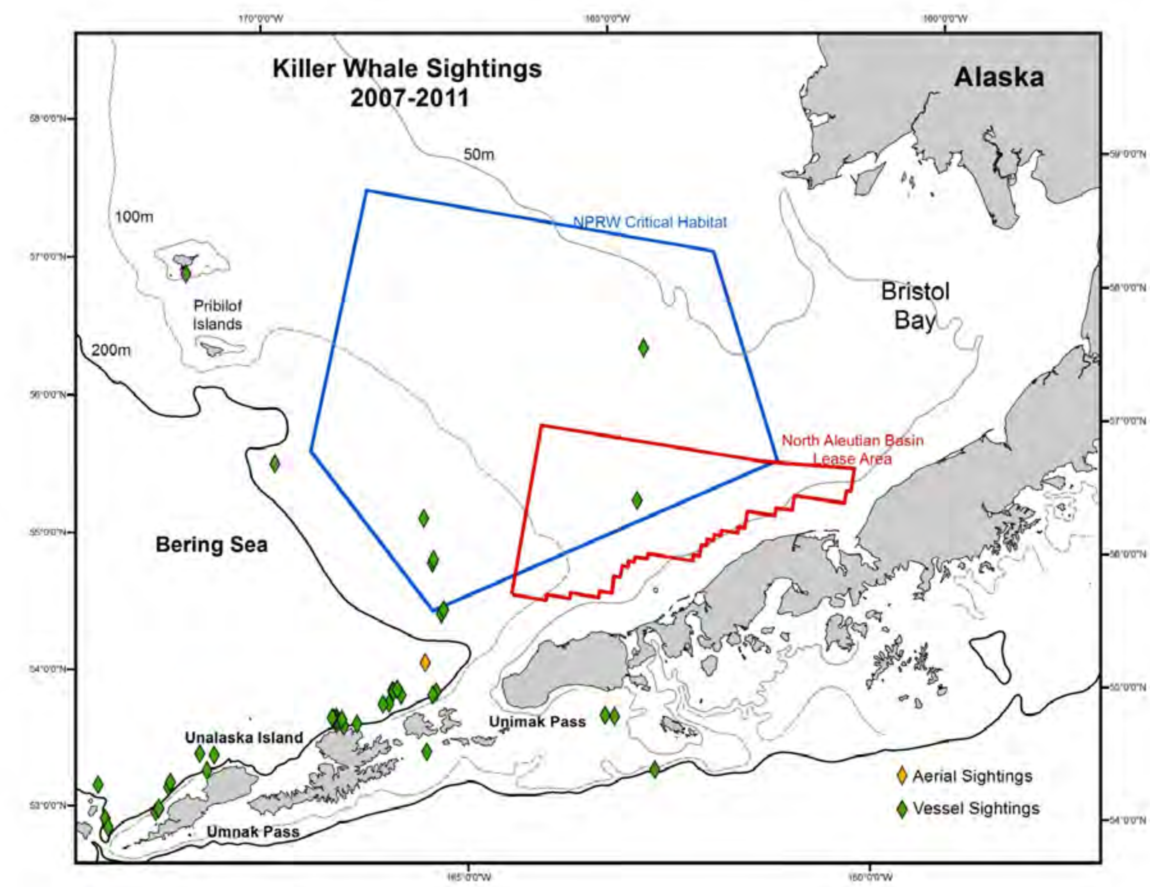


Figure 17: Killer whale sightings PRIEST 2007-2011

Biopsy Sampling:

In total, 4 right whales, 21 humpbacks and 5 fin whales (with one duplicate) were sampled (Tables 7 and 8).

Table 7: PRIEST biopsy collection summary. (Mn=humpback, Ej=NPRW, Bp=fin whale)

biopsy #	Date	species	sgt #	wh #	reaction	gen	arch	oth	Notes
001	8/11/2007	Mn	158	1		y	y	y	ES, tag 1, bio 1
002	8/11/2007	Mn	158	1		y	y	y	MO, bio2
003	8/11/2007	Mn	158	3		y	y	y	ES, tag2, bio 3
004	8/11/2007	Mn	158	1		y	y	y	SN, bio4
005	8/22/2007	Mn	242	3		y	y	y	Bio1
006	8/23/2007	Mn	315	1		y	y	y	bio1 sgt 315-1
007	8/23/2007	Mn	315	1		y	y	y	bio2 subgp6
008	8/23/2007	Mn	315	1		y	y	y	bio3 subgp9
009	8/23/2007	Mn	315	1		y	y	y	bio4 subgp10
010	8/23/2007	Mn	315	1		y	y	y	bio5 subgp12
011	8/23/2007	Mn	315	1		y	y	y	bio6 subgp14
012	8/23/2007	Mn	315	1		y	y	y	bio7 subgp15
013	8/23/2007	Mn	315	1		y	y	y	bio8 subgp18
014	8/23/2007	Mn	315	1		y	y	y	bio9 subgp19
015	8/23/2007	Mn	315	2		y	y	y	bio10 subgp19
016	8/23/2007	Mn	315	2		y	y	y	bio11 subgp20
017	8/23/2007	Mn	315	1		y	y	y	bio12 subgp20
018	8/23/2007	Mn	315	2		y	y	y	bio13 subgp21
001	8/21/2008	Ej	54	1	no	y	y	y	Skin only. After Tag.
002	8/29/2008	Mn	89	1	no	y	y	y	
003	9/11/2008	Mn	177	1	no	y	y	y	working number 001. After Tag.
001	7/31/2009	Ej	85	1	no	y	y	y	wn1 img8301
002	8/14/2009	Ej	169	1	no	y	y	y	wn1 img7159
003	8/15/2009	Ej	172	1	no	y	y	y	wn1 img7231
004	8/17/2009	Bp	187	1	no	y	y	y	wn1 img7372
005	8/17/2009	Bp	190	1	no	y	y	y	wn2 img7386
006	8/17/2009	Bp	190	2	no	n	n	n	skin only img7401
007	8/17/2009	Bp	190	2	no	y	y	y	wn4 img7404
008	8/17/2009	Bp	190	4	no	y	y	y	wn5 img7408
001	8/1/2010	Mn	20	2	no	y	y	y	after tag#2

Table 8: PRIEST NPRW sample results.

Date	Species	Sighting #	Whale #	Sex	History
8/21/2008	Ej	54	1	M	prev. sampled on 8/27/02 by SWFSC
7/31/2009	Ej	85	1	F	prev. sampled on 09/09/04 by SWFSC
8/14/2009	Ej	169	1	F	no previous samples
8/15/2009	Ej	172	1	M	prev. sampled on 09/08/04 by SWFSC

Photo-identification:

Individual identification photographs of 4 species were obtained during PRIEST (Table 9). Again, humpbacks were by far the most prevalent species.

Table 9: PRIEST Individual photo ID's, by species.

PHOTO-IDENTIFICATION						
Species	*2007*	*2008*	*2009*	*2010*	*2011*	**Total**
Right	0	9	7	0	0	**16**
Humpback	106	53	59	16	21	**255**
Killer	23	25	20	0	0	**68**
Fin	0	0	8	0	0	**8**

Satellite Telemetry:

A total of 4 satellite tags were deployed in NPRW in the SEBS in 2008 and 2009 (Table 10). All transmitters were deployed within a maximum distance of 65nm from each other. Transmitter average duration was 40 days (range = 30-58 days, Table 10) and provided information on the distribution and movements of NPRWs during the months of July to October. A total of 496 locations were retained after filtering with the SDA filter, with 113 (22.7%) of the locations being of high quality (Argos LQ = 1-3).

Table 10: NPRW Satellite telemetry metadata

PTT ID	Deployment date	Deployment time	Latitude	Longitude	Tag longevity (days)	Total distance traveled (km)	Average travel rate (km/h)
21803-08	21-Aug-08	20:15	56°55.3'N	164°27.1'W	58	1818	3.2
87636-09	25-Jul-09	11:44	57°12.9'N	163°00.7'W	30	850	4.7
87637-09	14-Aug-09	16:37	57°17.3'N	163°46.8'W	35	1212	3.1
87772-09	26-Jul-09	19:40	57°07.6'N	162°55.5'W	36	195	1.7

All tagged individuals were successfully tracked (Figure 18). In one case (PTT 87636-09), the satellite tag did not provide transmissions for 9 days after tagging, but worked as programmed after this period. A second whale (PTT 87772-09) had the tag deployed in a relatively low position and therefore provided only a few locations. The four individuals travelled a total of 4075 km, with an average of 1018 km/whale (range = 195-1818 km, Table 10). However, because of the small number of locations provided by PTT 87772-09, the track of this individual (195km over a period of 36 days) is likely not representative of its movements. Therefore data from this individual is not considered further.

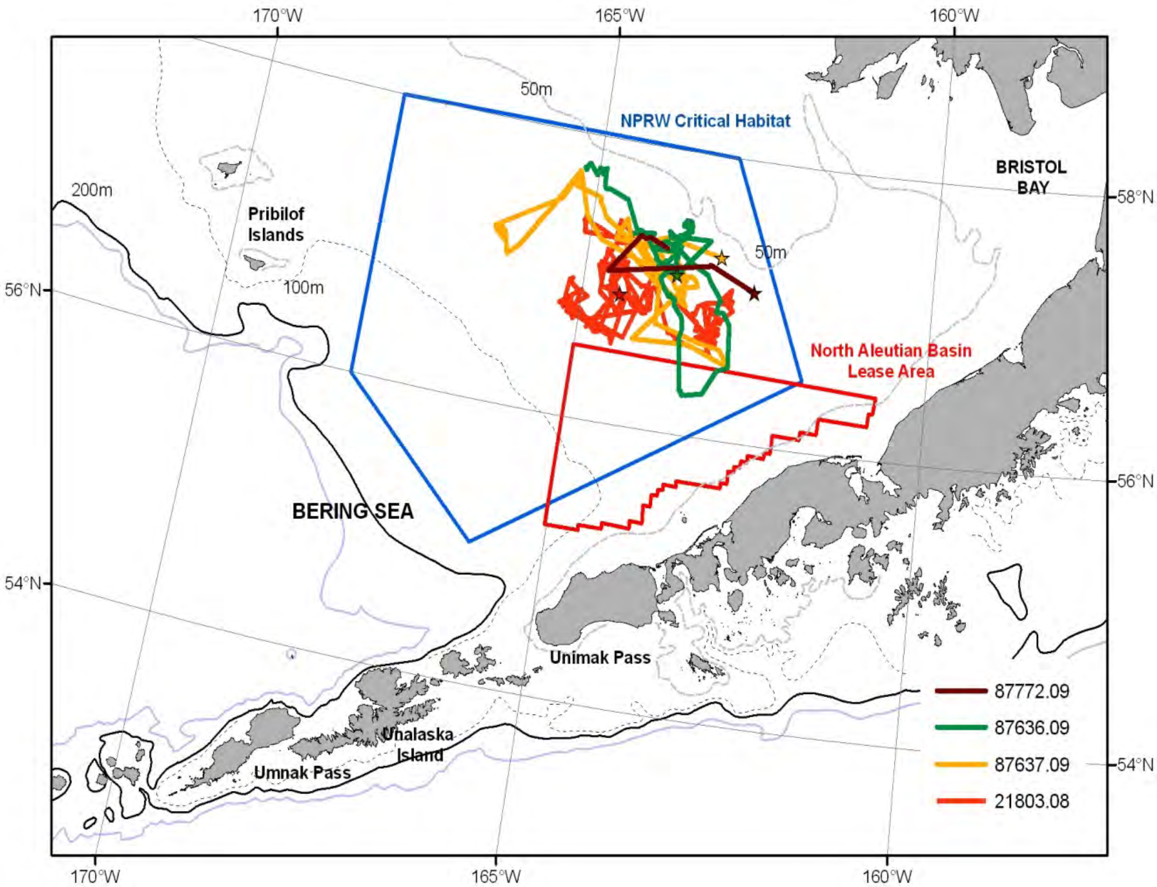


Figure 18: Tracks of NPRWs tagged in the SEBS in 2008 and 2009. Stars represent tagging location (see also Table 7)

NPRW movements in the SEBS were restricted to a relatively small region between 56°-58°N and 163°-167°W in the middle shelf to the west of Bristol Bay (Figure 18). This region corresponds to an area of nearly 26,400 km^2. Satellite locations show that none of the whales ventured into waters shallower than 50m and that they did not move in deeper waters (e.g. >80m) during the period they were tracked. The monthly average location of PTT 21803-08 (the only whale tagged in 2008) was further offshore than that of two whales tagged in 2009 (Figure 18). Average locations also suggest that NPRWs move offshore later in the season (Figure 19).

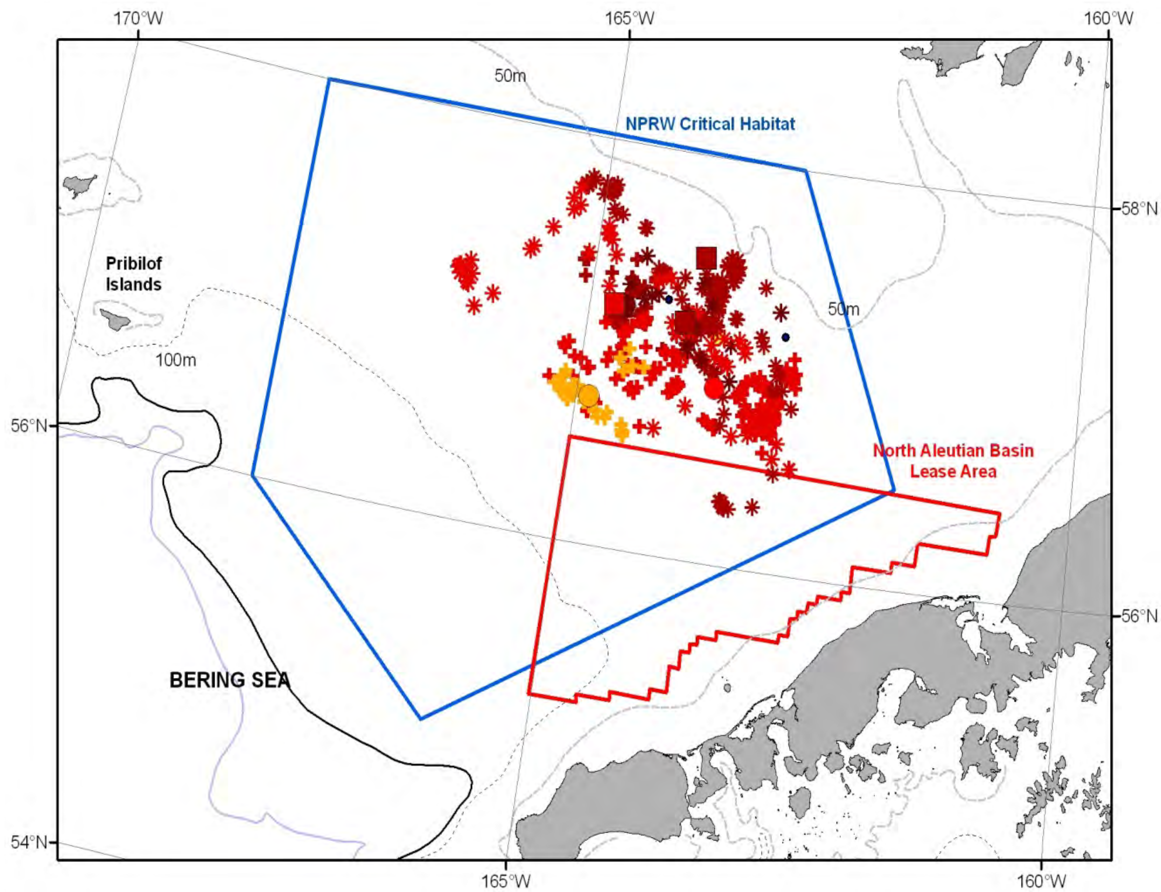


Figure 19: Individual satellite locations of four NPRWs in the SEBS in 2008 (crosses) and 2009 (asterisks). Circles and squares represent monthly averages in 2008 and 2009, respectively. Month color code: August = dark red, September = red, October = Orange.

Attempts were made to approach whales within the range for tagging and biopsy sampling from rigid hull inflatable boats and, occasionally, from the larger survey vessel. NPRWs showed extreme avoidance behavior to all types of platforms used, not only for tag deployment, but also for photo-identification and biopsy sampling. Due to this behavior, satellite transmitters were deployed at ranges greater (> 8m) than the typical ranges preferred in this type of study (5-10m). Despite avoiding vessels, NPRWs showed little or no visible reaction to tag deployment per se and the animals were repeatedly seen displaying normal behavior in the hours and days following deployment or deployment attempts.

After tags were deployed, attempts were made to visually relocate tagged whales both immediately after deployment as well as in subsequent days during search for other individuals for tagging and other studies. The intention was to assess the conditions of the tag on the body of the whale as well as the physical condition of the animals before and after the tag stopped working. One individual (PTT 21803-08) was photographed 14 days after tagging (Figure 20). While the tag had shown a small degree of migration outside the body of the animal, no swelling, signs of infection or other evidence of physical injuries were observed. In addition, a whale tagged in 2004 (Wade *et al*., 2006) was re-sighted. Even though it was not possible to assess the site where the tag had been deployed, this individual showed no evidence of poor body condition or of being unhealthy.

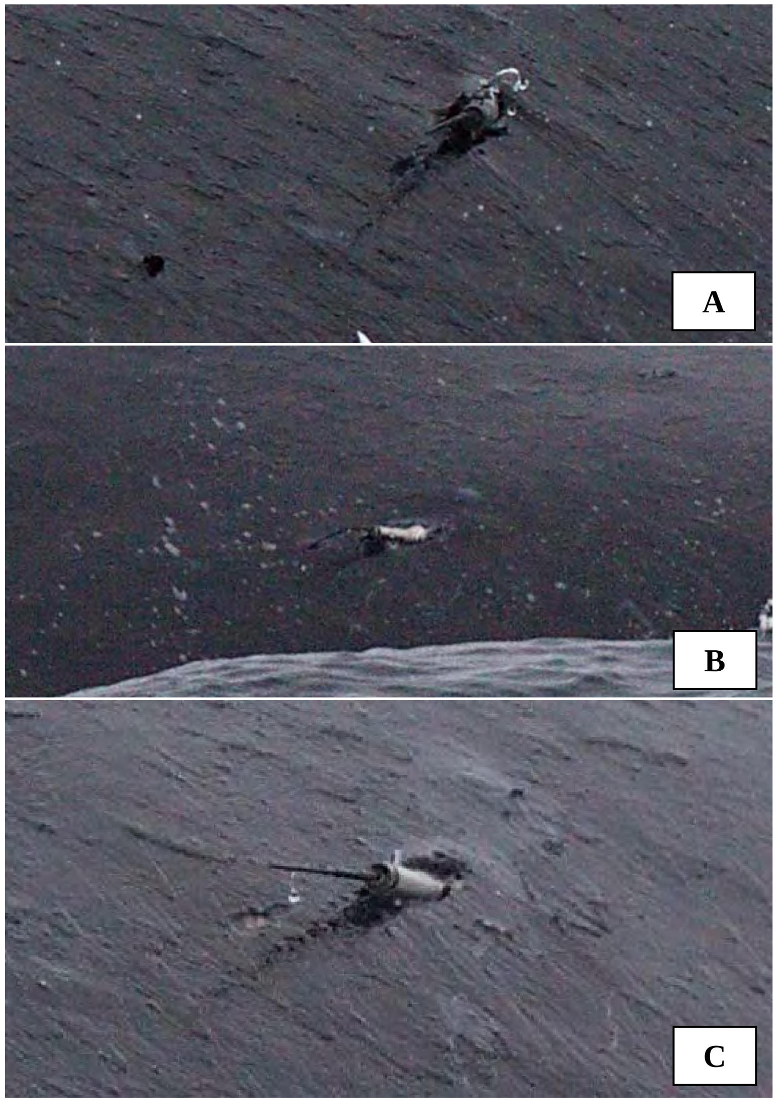


Figure 20: PTT # 21803-08 shown at time of deployment (A), 1 day after deployment (B), and 14 days after deployment (C).

Additionally, there were ten satellite transmitters deployments in humpback whales during this study, yet only 8 tags transmitted long enough to be considered for further study (Table 11, Figure 21). The SPOT 5 tags were placed on the right or left dorsal surface of the whales' body using an Air Rocket Transmitting System (ARTS) (see Methods section). Most tags were in relatively good position and flush against the body of the whales. Individual whales were tracked for an average of 28 days (range = 7-67 days) (Table 11) and showed substantial variation in movements. Three individuals remained within 50km of their tagging locations for as many as 14 days (Figure 22b, c, f). Three whales explored presumed feeding areas within 60 km from shore, along the Bering Sea side of Unalaska Bay and Unimak Pass (Figure 22a, b, f). Two whales moved west; one made a trip to the Island of Four Mountains and returned to the northern side of Umnak Islands and a second whale moved through Umnak Pass and explored feeding areas on both the Bering and Pacific sides of Umnak Island (Figure 22a, d). One individual left Unalaska Bay three days after tagging and moved ~1500km (in 12 days) along the outer Bering Sea shelf to the southern Chukotka, Russia. After 4 days, this individual moved east across the Bering Sea basin to Navarin Canyon (60^{o}30’N, 179^{o}20’W), where it remained until transmissions ceased (Figure 22e).

Table 11: Humpback whale satellite telemetry metadata.

PTT ID	Deployment Date	Tag Longevity (d)	Total km traveled (minimum)	Avg. km/day
21809.07	8/11/2007	28	892.2	31.9
21810.07	8/11/2007	17	746.5	44.0
21809.08	8/26/2008	36	956.0	26.6
21810.08	8/26/2008	67	2636.9	39.4
87769.09	8/6/2009	7	219.3	31.3
87720.10	8/1/2010	15	550.1	36.7
87721.10	8/1/2010	26	3014.5	115.9
87771.11	9/10/2011	29	1254.1	43.2
	AVERAGE:	**28**	**1283.7**	**46.1**

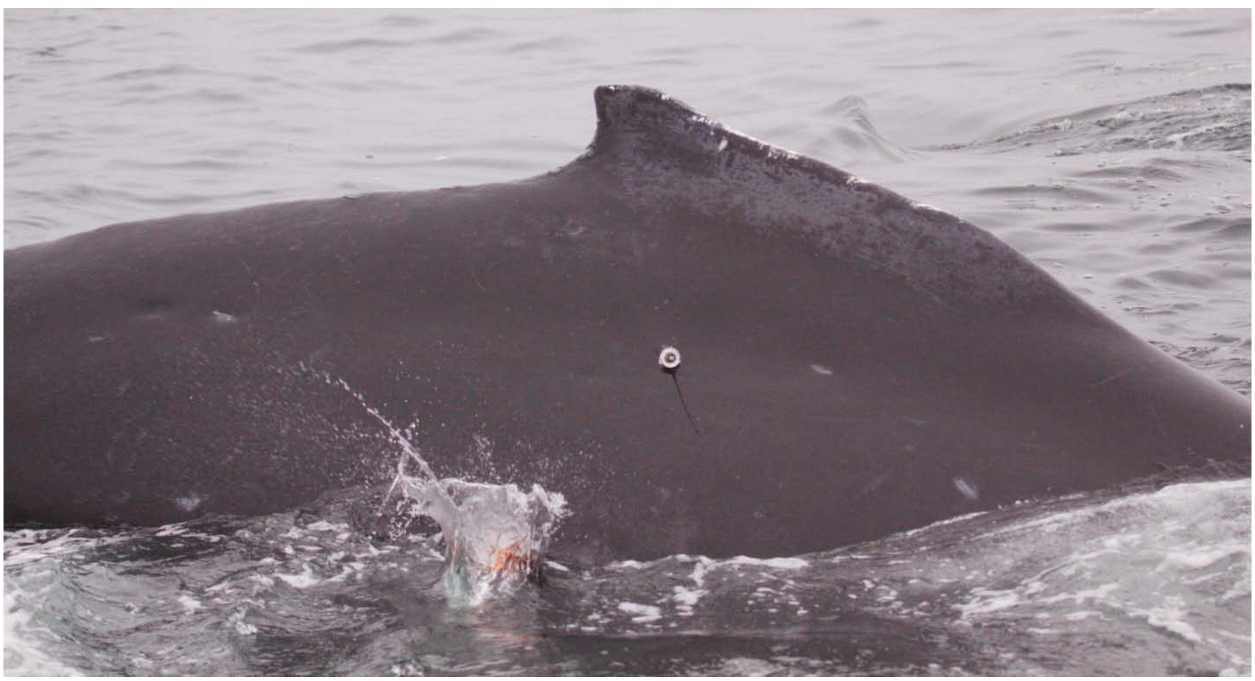


Figure 21: Satellite transmitter (PTT 87721) attached deployed on a humpback whale in 2010.

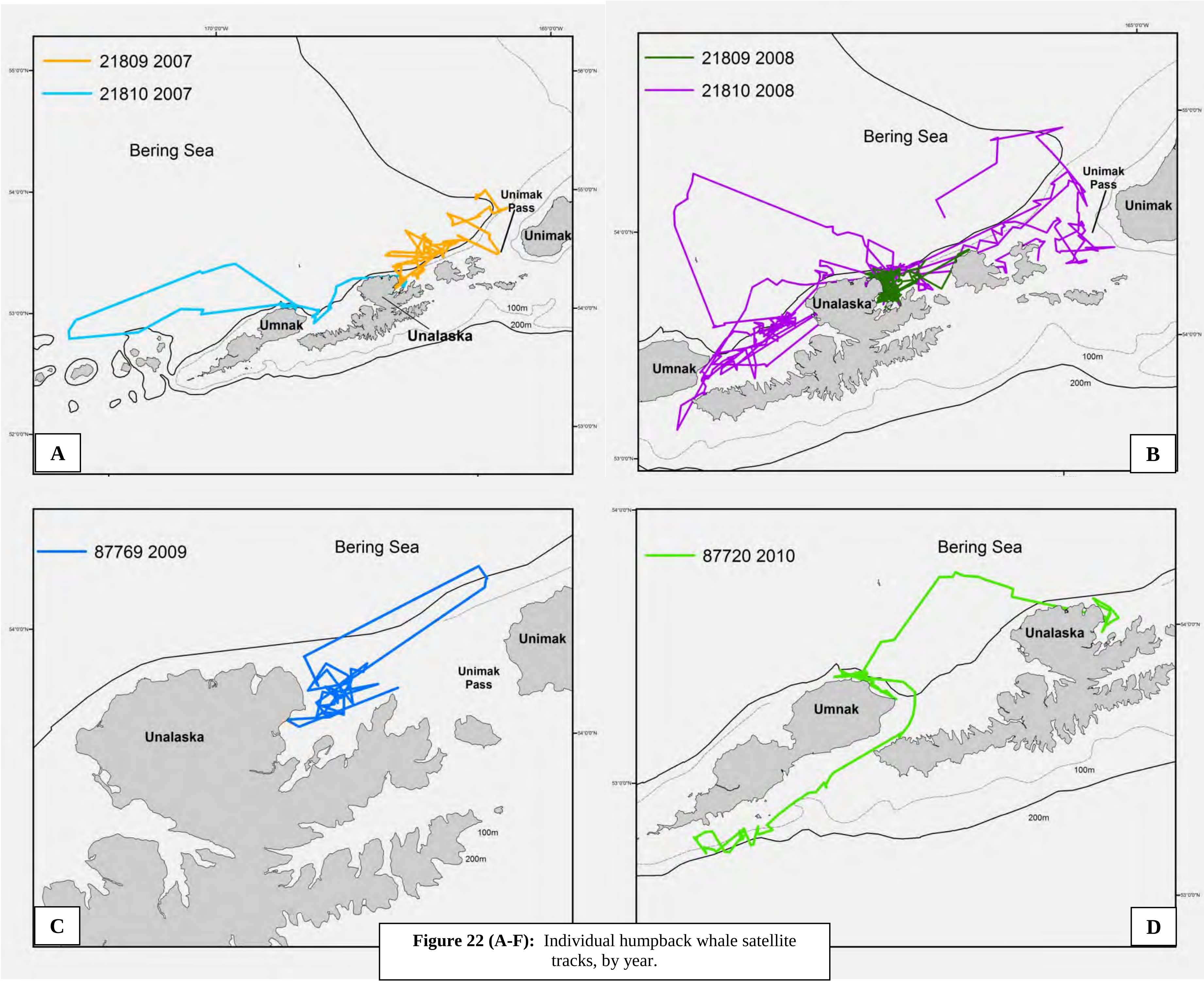


Figure 22 (A-F): Individual humpback whale satellite tracks, by year.

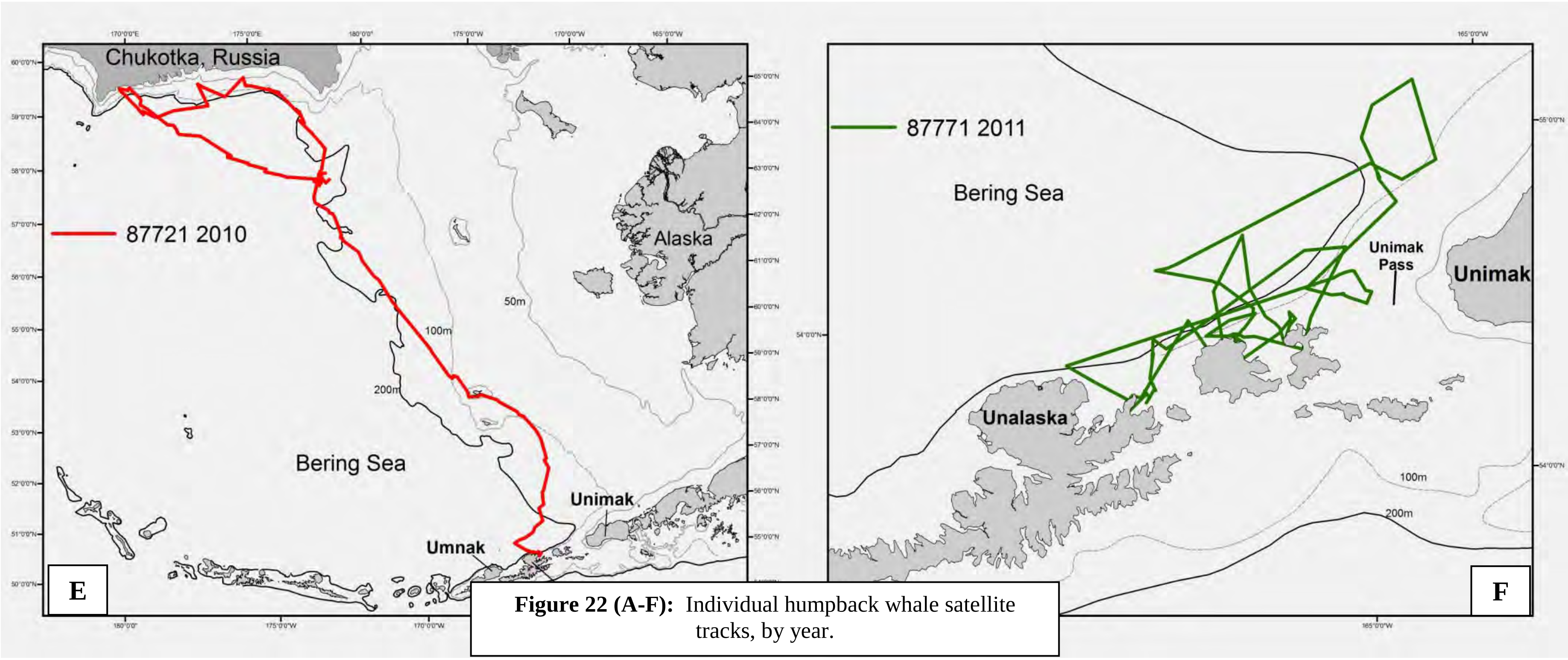


Figure 22 (A-F): Individual humpback whale satellite tracks, by year.

Acoustics:

Right whales vs. Bowheads

Because a number of species like humpback and bowhead whales can all produce the same or very similar call types to right whales, with similar call characteristics, analysts relied heavily on context for distinguishing between species. For example, analysts would look for the presence of other known call types of humpback, bowhead, or right whales near the call in question. The general inter-call intervals and/or patterning of the questionable calls were also used.

We focused on the upsweep and gunshot call types for this analysis because of their common use in right whale acoustic studies (upsweeps) and overall abundance in the recordings (gunshots). Right whale gunshot calls are impulsive broad band signals, ranging from approximately 50 Hz to 4 kHz, with most energy below 2 kHz, and a duration of 0.25-1.25 s (Figure 23a). Right whale upsweep calls are frequency modulated calls between 80 Hz and 200 Hz, with a duration ranging from 0.5-1.5 s (Figure 23b).

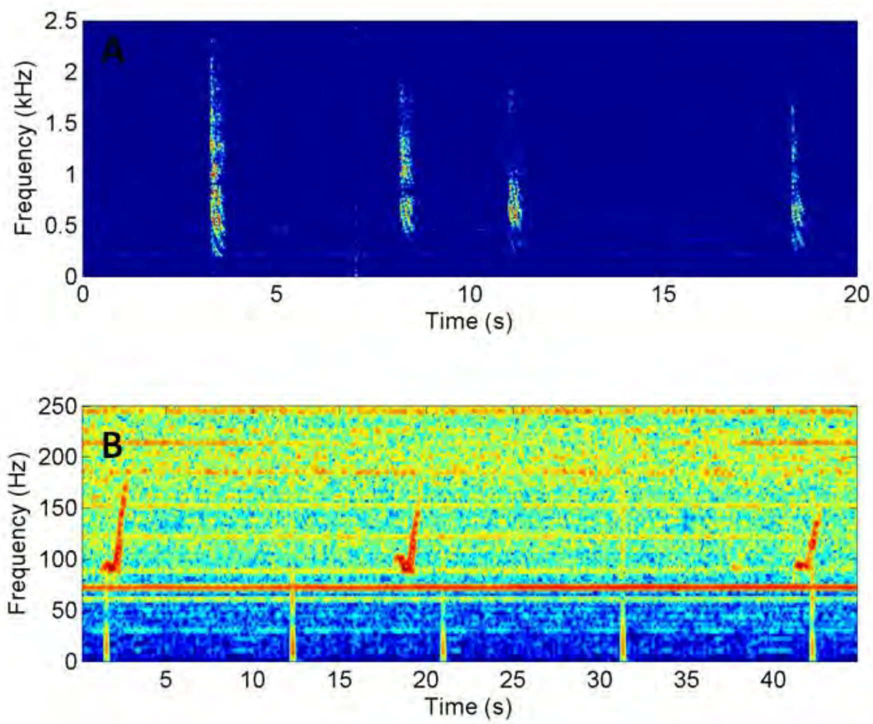


Figure 23: Most common right whale sounds encountered during PRIEST. A) Gunshot calls B) Upsweeps. Color of spectrogram represents amplitude of sound (red = highest).

Both right and bowhead whales produce similar gunshot and upsweep calls (humpbacks produce upsweep calls, but these are easily distinguished through contextual clues). However, right whale gunshot calls follow a very similar seasonal trend to upsweeps, whereas bowhead gunshot and upsweep calls do not follow any trend. This correlation was primarily what we used to distinguish between species. However, in some cases, conclusions could not be made based on seasonal call correlations because of insufficient data, and the analysis was left as uncertain.

The overall findings in the results that follow are that gunshot and upsweep seasonal calling trends are more highly correlated the closer the recording is to the RWCH. Therefore, while we cannot rule out the possibility that right whales occur north of 60° N in the Bering Sea, historical whaling data and lack of any correlation in seasonal calling trends between gunshot and upsweep calls north of this 60° N line make it highly likely that the upsweep and gunshot calls detected on recordings are produced by bowhead whales.

Sonobuoys

Sonobuoys were deployed in all four years of the PRIEST survey, and also during the transit leg through the Bering Sea for the 2011 CHAOZ survey. Figure 24 shows a composite map of the locations of sonobuoys on which right whale sounds were detected (no right whales were detected in 2007). Figures 25-29 show the location of all sonobuoy deployments and species detected during the 2008-2011 field seasons, respectively.

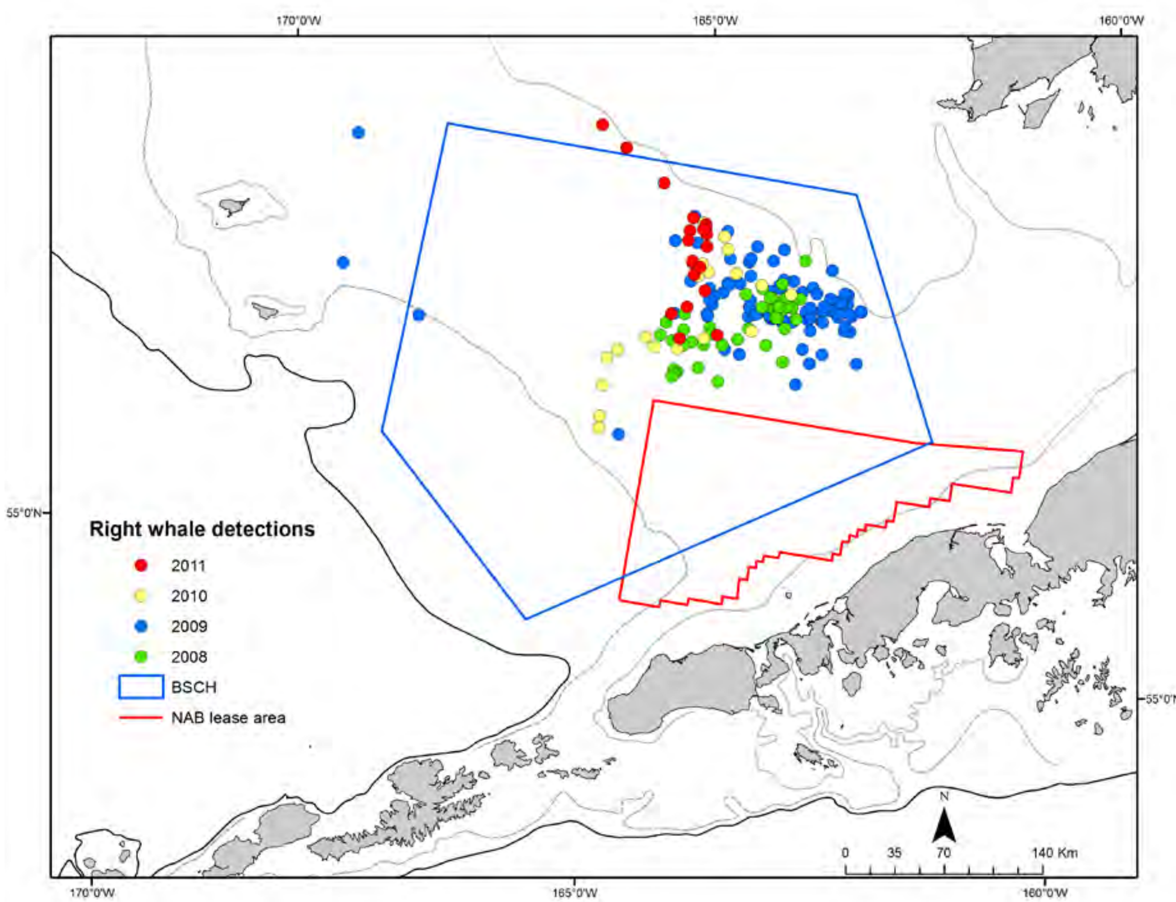


Figure 24: Location of sonobuoys with right whale acoustic detections 2007-2011.

The first field season, 2007, was plagued by sonobuoys that malfunctioned in mass (59% success rate). Even when the sonobuoys functioned, results were disappointing in regards to the lack of sounds present on the recordings. Of the 79 successfully deployed buoys, 6 (7.5%) recorded humpback sounds, 8 (10.1%) had fin calls, and 8 (10.1%) had other or unknown marine mammal calls (Figure 25). No right whale calls were detected during this survey.

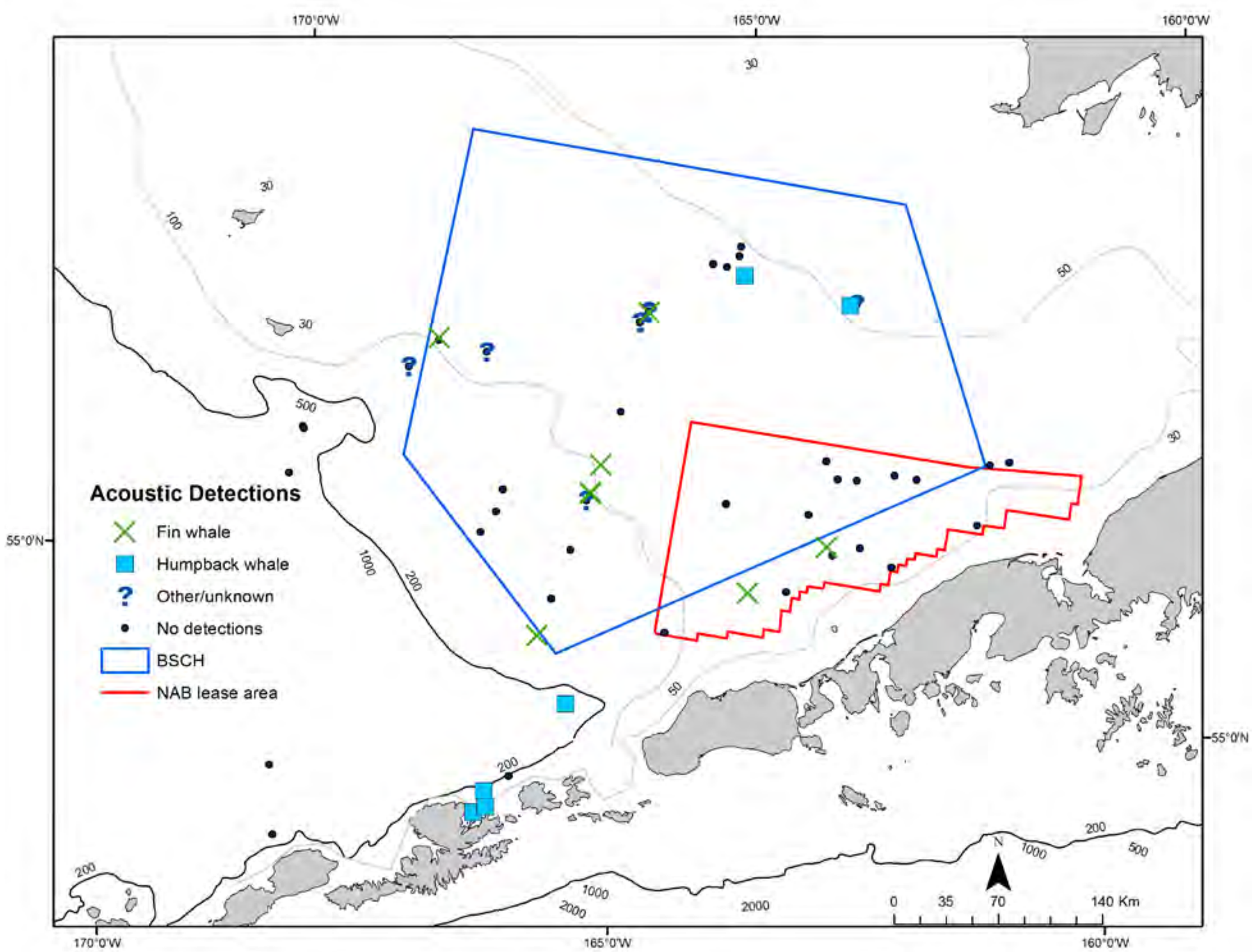


Figure 25: Location of and species detected on all sonobuoys deployed during the 2007 PRIEST survey.

A total of 302 sonobuoys were deployed in 2008 (Figure 26), with much greater success (78.5%) than in 2007, thanks to the efforts of Jeff Leonhard (Naval Surface Warfare Center, Crane Division) and Theresa Yost (Naval Operational Logistics Support Center) in providing us with more recently expired sonobuoys (the sonobuoys used in 2007 were 30 years old). Of the 237 successfully deployed buoys, 74 (31%) had right whale gunshot calls and 21 (9%) had some variation of right whale upsweeps. In addition, humpback, fin, and orca whale sounds were detected on 11 (5%), 58 (25%), and 10 (4%) of the sonobuoys respectively.

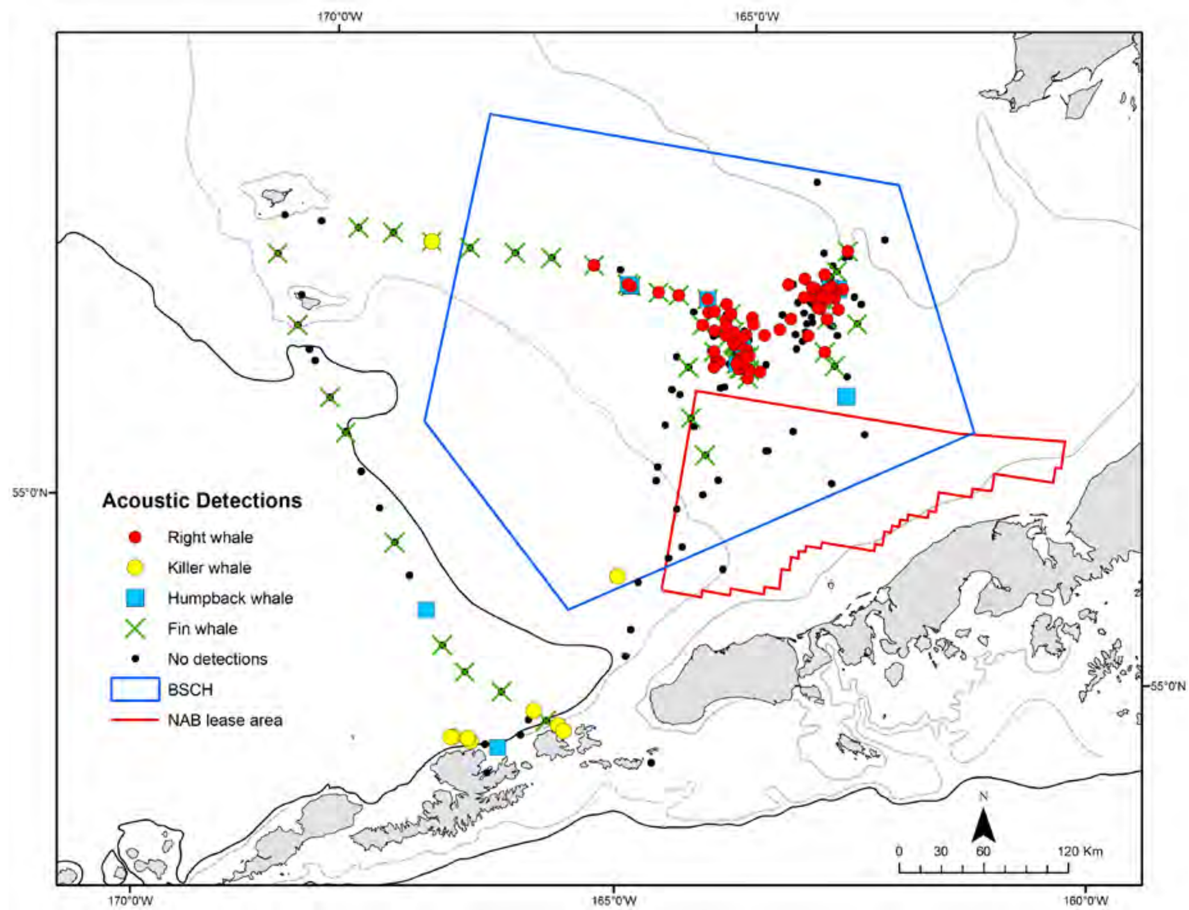


Figure 26: Location of and species detected on all sonobuoys deployed during the 2008 PRIEST survey.

In 2009, 262 sonobuoys were deployed successfully (Figure 27). Of these, 157 (60%) recorded right whale gunshot calls, 53 (20%) recorded right whale upsweep calls, 30 (11%) recorded humpback sounds, 167 (64%) had fin calls, 14 (5%) had killer whale calls, and 20 (7%) had other marine mammal calls. Improvements in the sonobuoy tracking software in 2009 allowed for much more accurate localizations of the vocalizing right whales, substantially reducing the amount of vessel time spent searching for the whales compared with the previous seasons. This increased the amount of time the research team could spend with photo-identification, biopsy, and satellite tagging of the whales.

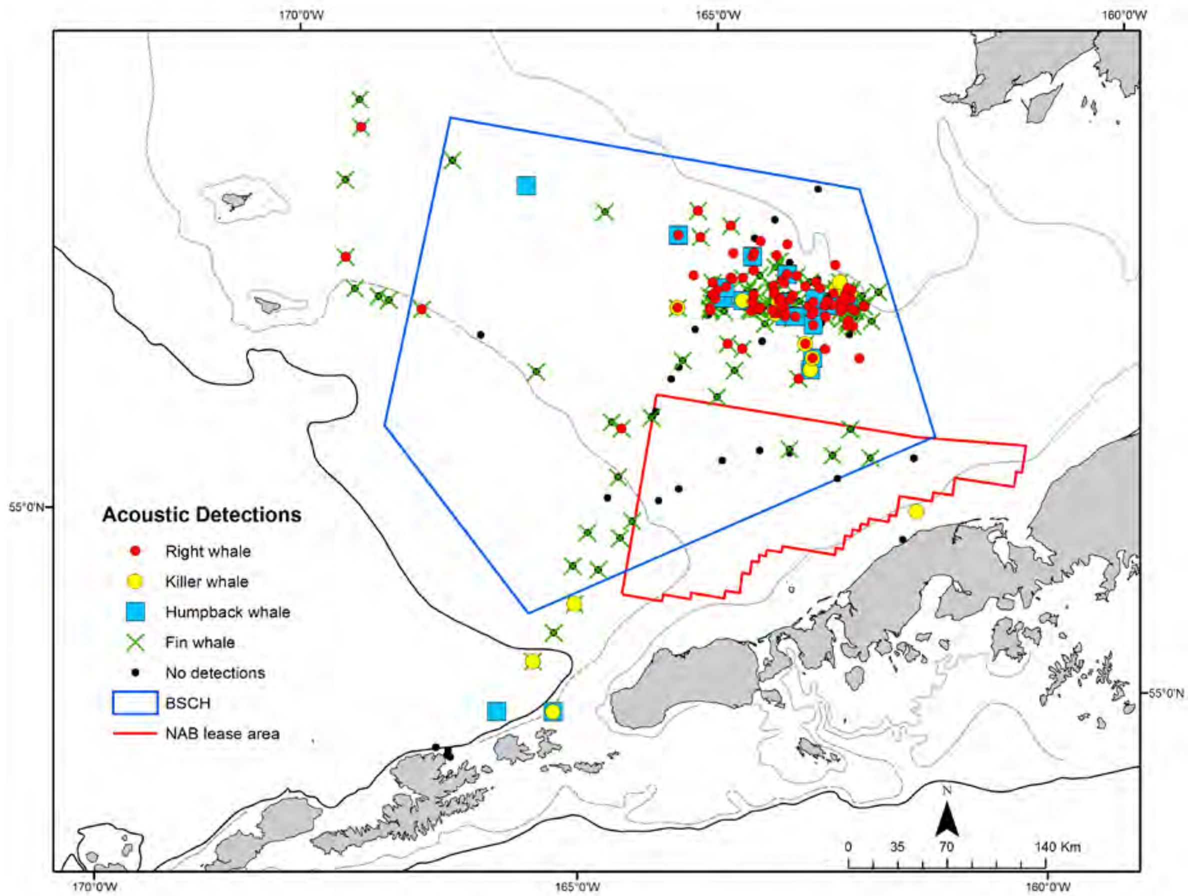


Figure 27: Location of and species detected on all sonobuoys deployed during the 2009 PRIEST survey.

Gunshots calls were the most common right whale vocalization detected in 2010 (Figure 28), present on 33% of all buoys successfully deployed in the Bering Sea. Right whale upsweep calls were detected on 17% of the buoys. The most common species detected was the fin whale, detected on 55% of the buoys. Other species detected include humpback whales (detected on 17% of the buoys), killer whales (5% of the buoys), and one minke whale detection. Overall, fewer buoys were deployed and fewer species detected in 2010 than in the previous two years. This was due to the inclement weather experienced throughout the survey. Many of the buoys were deployed during transit to and from the area, where species are historically less likely to be present. Fewer days were spent in the right whale Critical Habitat than in the previous two years, which accounts for lower number of acoustic detections. We were never able to remain in the Critical Habitat for more than two days before having to find a lee from the weather. During the 2010 Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM) funded Chukchi Acoustics, Oceanography, and Zooplankton (CHAOZ) survey (Aug 24 – Sept 20), two days were spent in the Right Whale Critical Habitat during the vessel's return transit to Dutch Harbor (Sept 18-19). Once the vessel was within the Critical Habitat, 24 hour passive acoustic monitoring was conducted (increased from every 3 hours) to maximize the likelihood of detection. A right whale was detected on the morning of September 18th. Sonobuoy detections during the right whale portion of the CHAOZ cruise are included in the figures mentioned above for 2010.

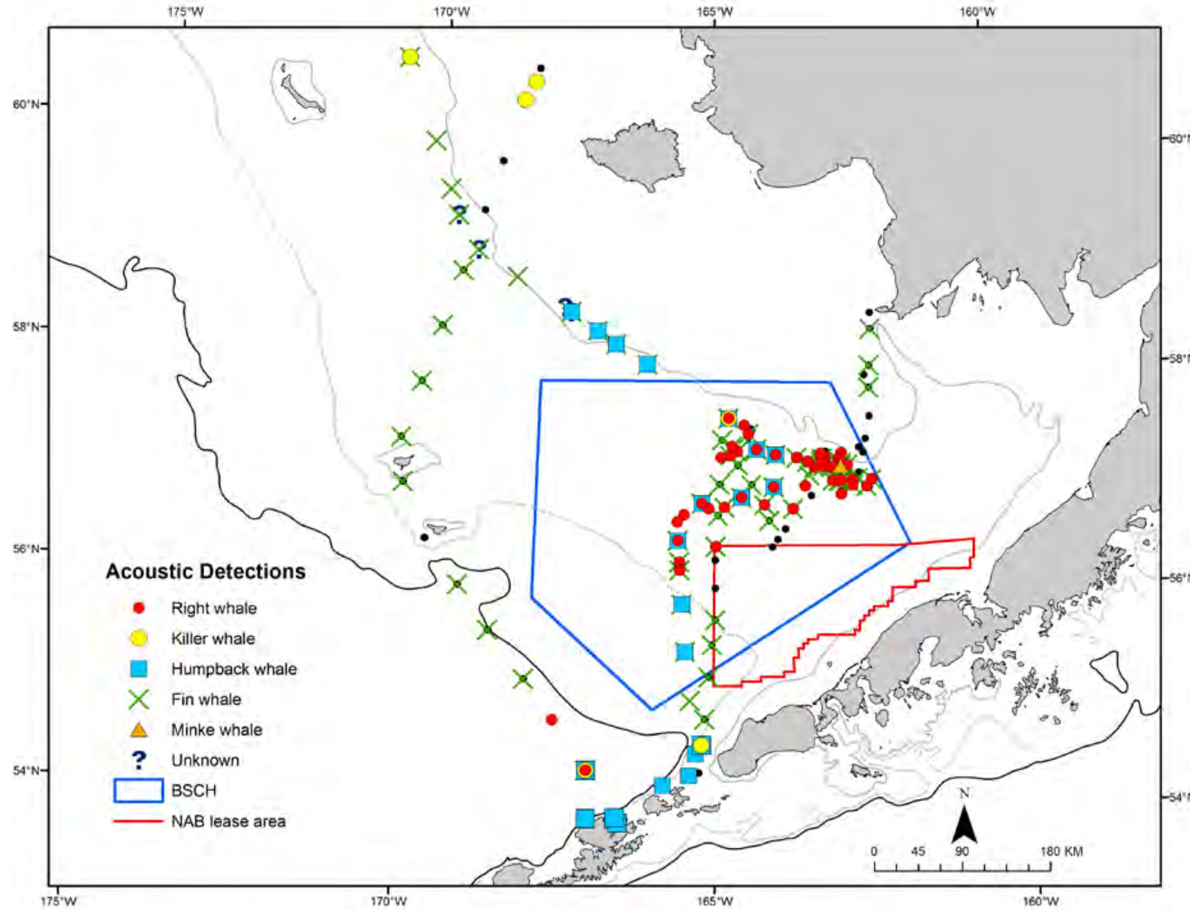


Figure 28: Location of and species detected on all sonobuoys deployed during the 2010 PRIEST & CHAOZ surveys.

During the Bering Sea legs of the 2011 CHAOZ survey, the acoustics team deployed a total of 142 sonobuoys with an overall success rate of 84% (Figure 29). Right whale gunshot calls were present on 15% of the buoys, and right whale upsweep calls were present on 4% of the buoys. Fin whales were the most common species detected, present on 46% of the buoys. Humpbacks were detected on 39% of the buoys, killer whales were present on 18% of the buoys, and sperm whales were detected on 2% of the buoys. The lower number of acoustic detections for 2011 versus 2008 & 2009 was due to the fact that most of the buoys were deployed during transit to and from the area in 2011. During the Dutch Harbor – Nome transit leg of the 2011 CHAOZ survey (Aug 12-17, 2011), right whale gunshot calls were detected on August 13th at around noon. The DiFAR bearings to the vocalizations resulted in a position directly in the path of the vessel, and two hours later, four right whales were seen by the visual observers as described above. This was the only day right whale calls were detected during that leg. On the return transit to Dutch Harbor from Nome (Sep 3-11, 2011), right whale calls were detected in the same general area where they were seen on the first transit leg, and although we tried to wait out the bad weather for an extra day, the forecast was predicting even higher sea states (which occurred), and so we left the area before getting a chance to work with those animals. We detected right whales for a total of two days on this return transit leg.

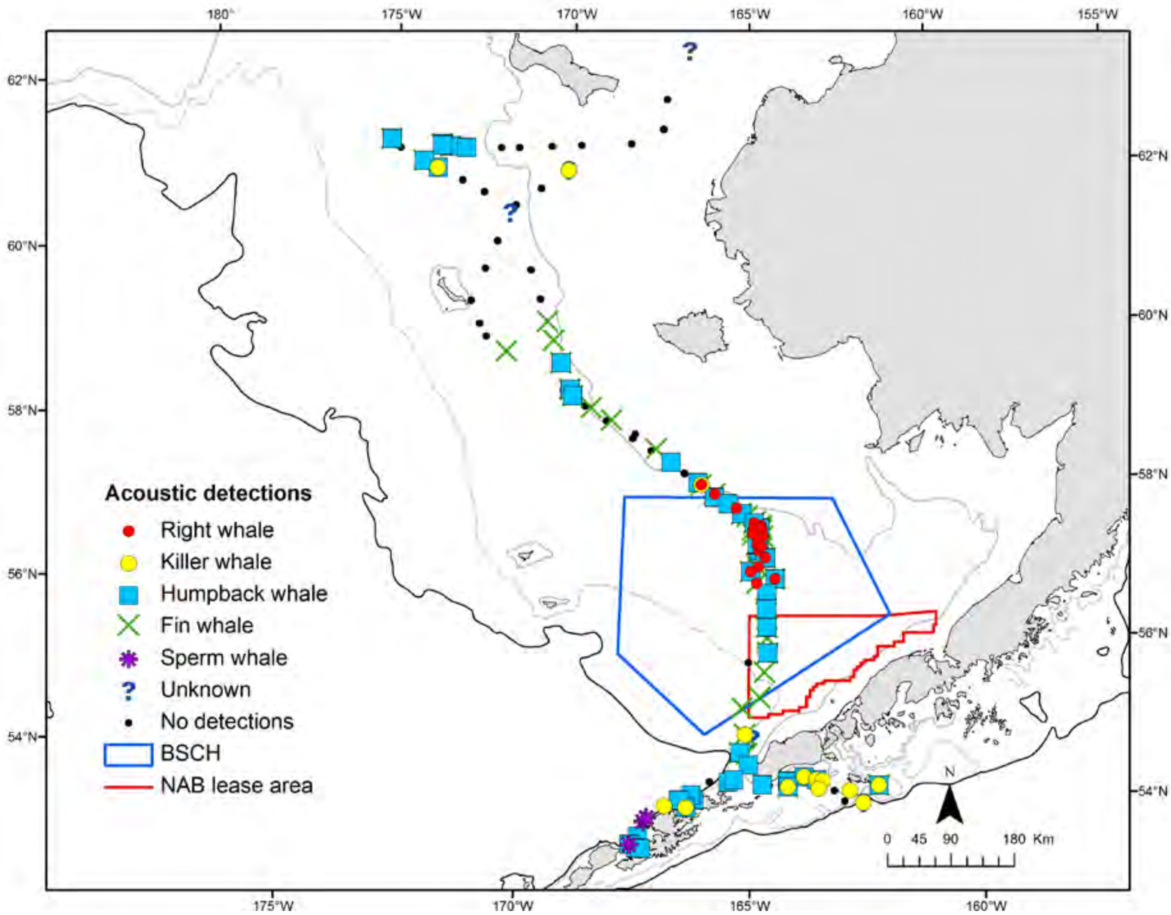


Figure 29: Location of and species detected on all sonobuoys deployed during the 2011 CHAOZ survey.

Aerial Acoustics

There were a total of 58 sonobuoys used in deployed from the aircraft by the aerial survey team during this project. Two 53E units were activated on the ground to help with troubleshooting and testing of the equipment. Of the 56 deployed while on survey, 38 77C units were used with 3 failures while 18 53E units were deployed with 4 failures. Preliminary analysis and in-flight observations showed that right whale gunshots (51%) and upsweeps (35%) were detected, as well as fin whale calls on a majority of deployments (59%), and the occasional (20%) humpback call (Figure 30).

Sonobuoy tracking software allowed for very accurate localizations of the vocalizing right whales, and so the amount of time the aircraft spent searching for the whales during 2009 was much less than that from 2008. This increased the amount of time the research teams could spend with photo-identification, biopsy, and satellite tagging of the whales. (See Appendix A, pg. 102 for further details).

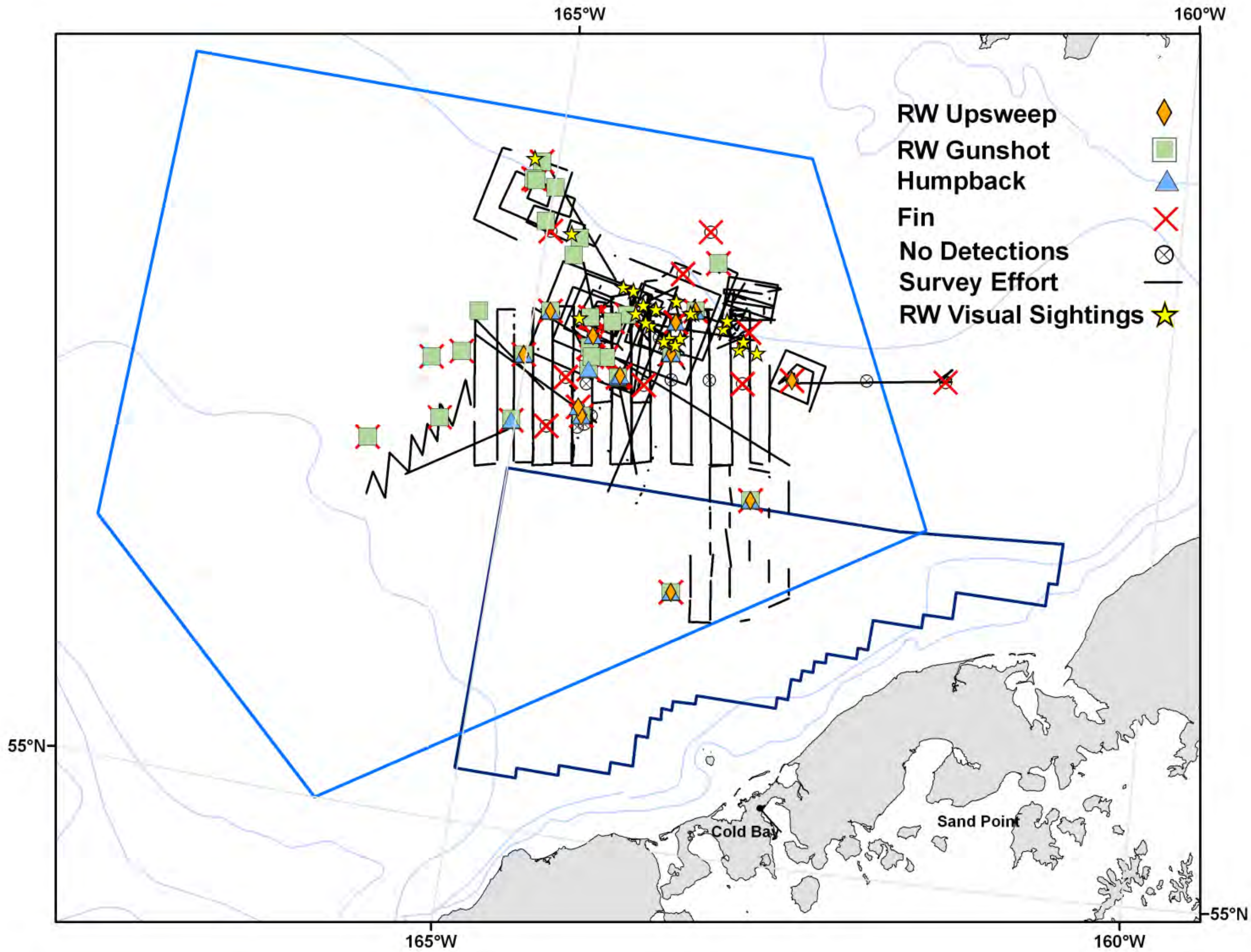


Figure 30 – Aerial sonobuoy detection results for the 2009 PRIEST survey.

Long-term moored acoustic recorders

Analysis was completed for a total of 22 recorders: 10 AURALs, 3 Haruphones, and 9 EARs. Right whale gunshot (Figure 23a) and upsweep (Figure 23b) calls were processed separately so that analysis for each could focus on its main frequency bandwidth.

In all figures that follow in this section, right whale gunshot calls are shown in blue, while upsweep calls are shown in red. For consistency, all figures also have their X-axes scaled to run from May of one year to November of the following year. Although each recorder type was processed on a different time interval (i.e., AURALs and Haruphones were processed in 3 hour time increments, while EARs were processed entirely) the results were compiled on a 3 hour time interval for all recorders. Therefore, each data point represents the percentage of 3 hour time intervals for that week (i.e. 56 total) that contain at least one right whale call of that type.

Two Haruphone recorders, funded by a North Pacific Research Board project (Drs. Kate Stafford (APL/UW) and David K. Mellinger (PMEL/Oregon State University)), were deployed on PMEL Bering Sea moorings M2 and M4 in 2007. Although these recorders were not part of the PRIEST project nor were they funded by NOAA, the data are of relevance to the study years of this project and are included in our analysis. The M4 mooring data (Figure 31c) show two common trends seen throughout the study. First, the seasonal occurrence of upsweep calls follows the same pattern as that for the gunshot calls. Second, gunshot calls occur during a much higher percentage of time intervals overall than the upsweeps. For 2007 the peak in both gunshot and upsweep calls occurred mid-October 2007 through January 2008. Because the seasonal trends of both these call types are similar, it seems likely that these are in fact attributable to right whales. More than half the data from the M2 mooring (Figure 31d) were lost when one of the hard drives extracted from the Haruphone at the PMEL facility in Newport, OR was dropped. Unfortunately, the lost data would have been recorded during the prime right whale calling time on that mooring (May-Dec). The number of calls of either type in the data available for this mooring are not numerous enough to show conclusive results, other than neither call type was detected at substantial levels from Jan-May, 2008. Figure 32 shows these seasonal call plots superimposed onto a map of their mooring locations in the Bering Sea. Spatial trends cannot be determined from this figure since the first half of the M2 data is missing. From Jan-May 2008, both the M4 and M2 moorings show a similar lack of calling.

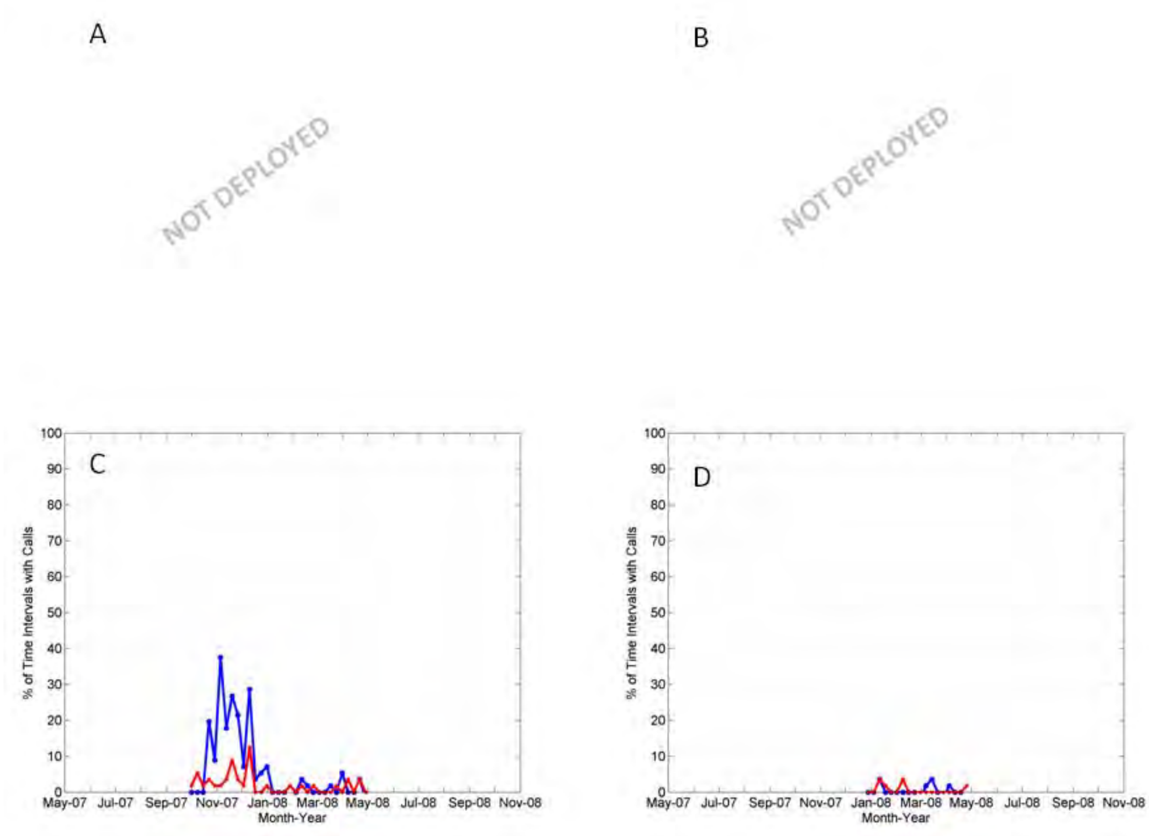


Figure 31: Right whale seasonal call distribution of gunshot (blue) and upsweep (red) calls on PMEL moorings 2007-2008: A) M8 B) M5 C) M4 D) M2 (first data disk in M2 was dropped and data were unrecoverable). Note: results are for all gunshot and upsweep calls, not necessarily specific to right whales. See text for explanation.

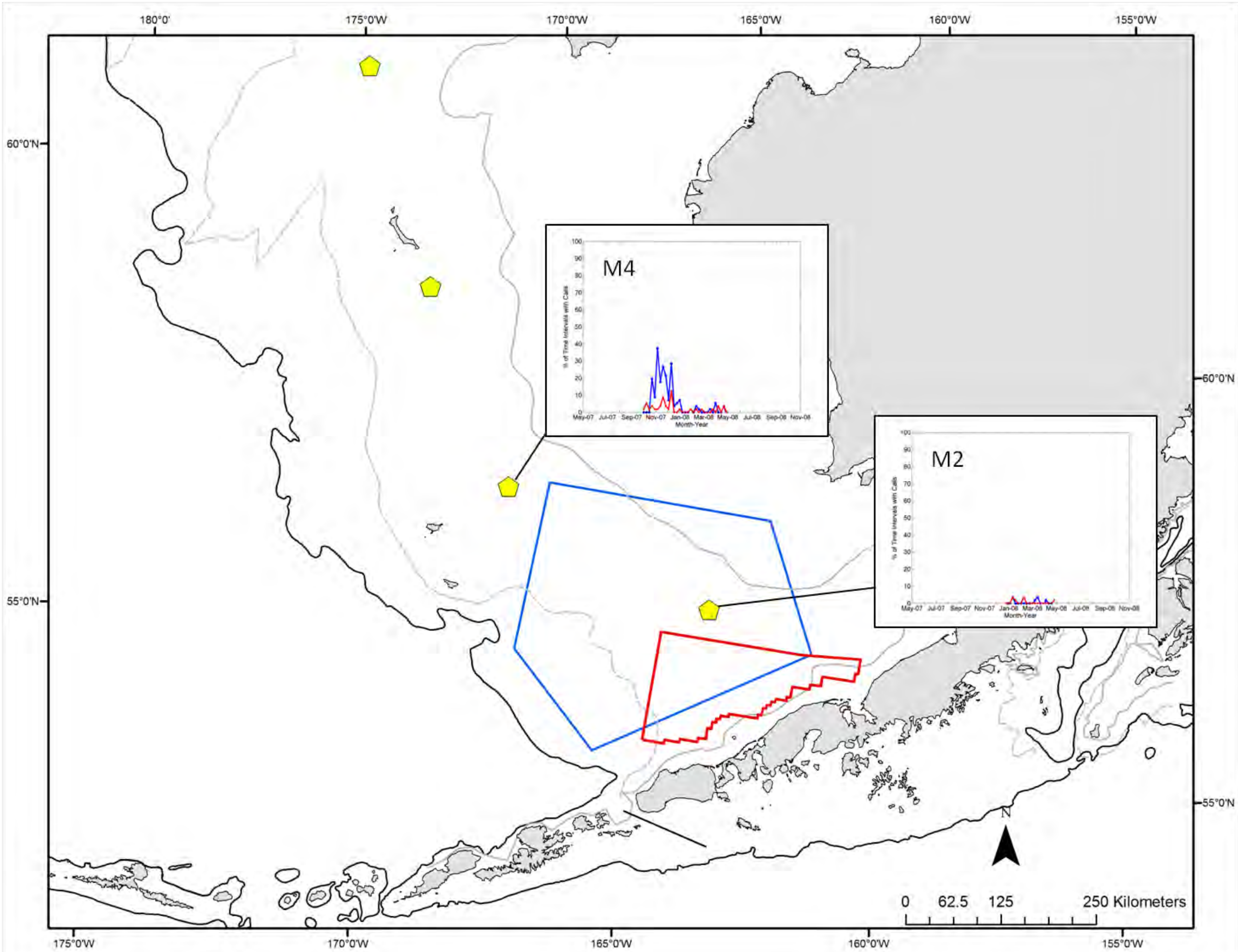


Figure 32: Results from 2007-2008 Haruphone recorders superimposed on map of mooring locations. See Figure 29 for larger versions of the Haruphone data plots. Blue pentagon = RWCH, red polygon = NAB lease area, yellow pentagons = PMEL moorings. On inset seasonal calling figures: blue = gunshot calls, red = upsweeps. Note: results are for all gunshot and upsweep calls, not necessarily specific to right whales. See text for explanation.

Two Haruphones (at M2 and M4), two AURALs (at M5 and M8), and three EARs were deployed in 2008. The bad luck continued with the M2 recorder, with the entire 2008 mooring lost at sea. Recordings from the M4 mooring (Figure 33c) show a different pattern in calling as compared to the M4 mooring from 2007 (Figure 31c). First, the gunshot call pattern is more spread out in 2008 than in 2007, occurring from Jul-Dec. Second, the peak occurs much earlier in July 2008 than in November for the 2007data. Lastly, this peak is half the size of the peak seen in 2008. The upsweep calling in 2008 does not track well with the gunshot calling, although there is some correspondence in the Sep-Oct time period. Very little correlation is seen between gunshot and upsweep calls with the M5 mooring (Figure 33b) and no correlation is see with M8 (Figure 33a). For all recorders, a much higher percentage of time intervals were found to contain gunshot rather than upsweep calls. The M5 recorder had the highest peak in percentage of time intervals containing gunshot calls (~45% in mid-January 2009, Figure 33b). However, since very little to no correlation is found with the gunshot/upsweep calling trends (as is common with right whales), it is likely that the calls recorded were actually produced by bowhead whales, especially at M5 and M8.

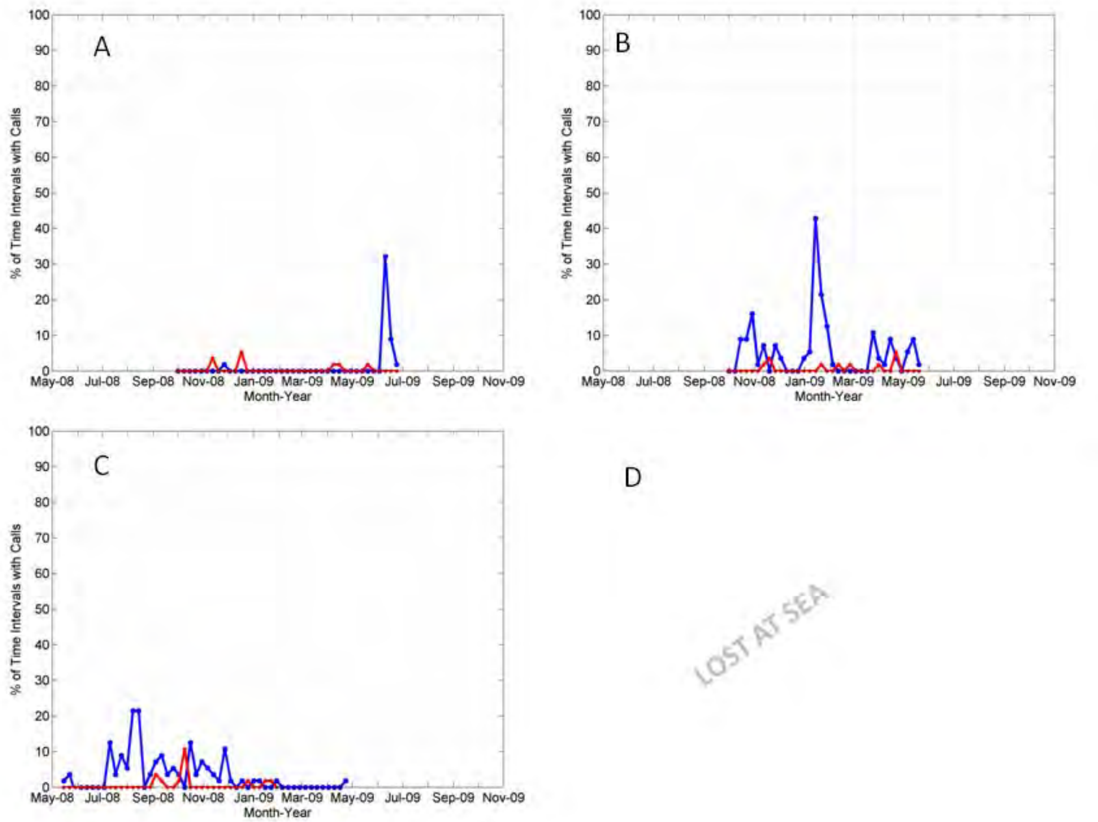


Figure 33: Right whale seasonal call distribution of gunshot (blue) and upsweep (red) calls on PMEL moorings 2008-2009: A) M8 B) M5 C) M4 (upsweep analysis from Feb-May 2009 not completed at the time of this report) D) M2. Note: results are for all gunshot and upsweep calls, not necessarily specific to right whales. See text for explanation.

Although the M2 mooring was lost, 2008 marked the first year where EAR recorders were deployed. Because of the possible lease sale at that time, BOEM requested we monitor the NAB lease area for a full year to track its use by right whales. Three deployment sites were selected based on information from bottom and mid-water column trawl fisheries to best minimize the chance these moorings would become entangled in fishing gear. Two of these sites were close to the M2 site (EA2 = 35nm from M2, EA1 = 70nm from M2, Figure 35). Of the three EARs deployed, two (EA1 and EA2) recorded for approximately nine months, while the third (EA3) failed to start recording at all due to a software glitch. The data from both working EARs (Figures 34a & 34b) both show gunshot calls occurring a higher percentage of time than the upsweeps, and a good correlation in seasonal calling patterns between the two call types, indicative of these calls being produced by right whales. Although both moorings had detections of right whales between August and January, peaks in right whale calling occurred in Aug-Sep on the EA2 mooring and Jan on the EA1 mooring, possibly indicating a westward shift in movement between the two sites (see Figure 35). Looking at all five mooring sites for spatial distribution of right whale calls (Figure 35), the percentage of time where right whale calls were detected decreased going north, with really low numbers at the M4 site. Again, the lack of correlation between call types for the M5 and M8 sites indicates that this calling is actually from bowhead and not right whales at these sites.

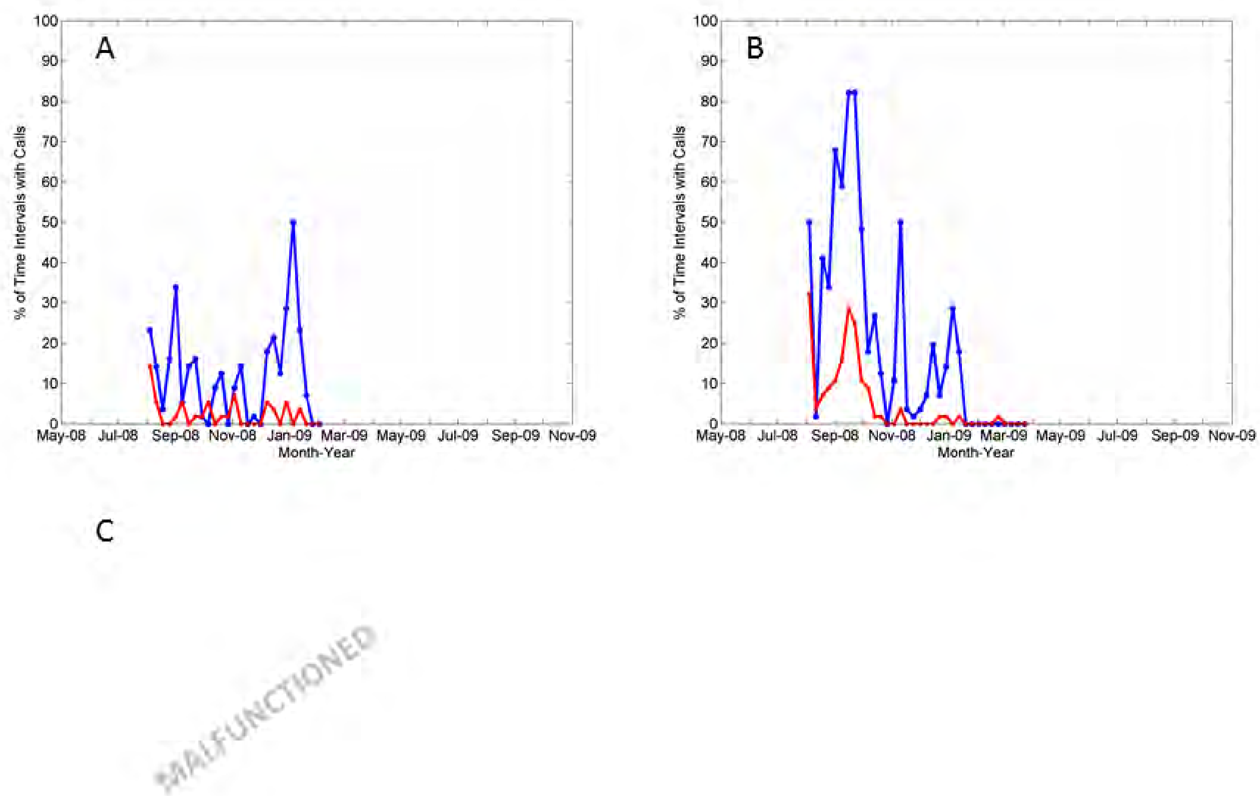


Figure 34: Right whale seasonal call distribution of gunshot (blue) and upsweep (red) calls on EAR moorings 2008-2009: A) EA01 B) EA02 C) EA03 (Malfunctioned). Note: results are for all gunshot and upsweep calls, not necessarily specific to right whales. See text for explanation.

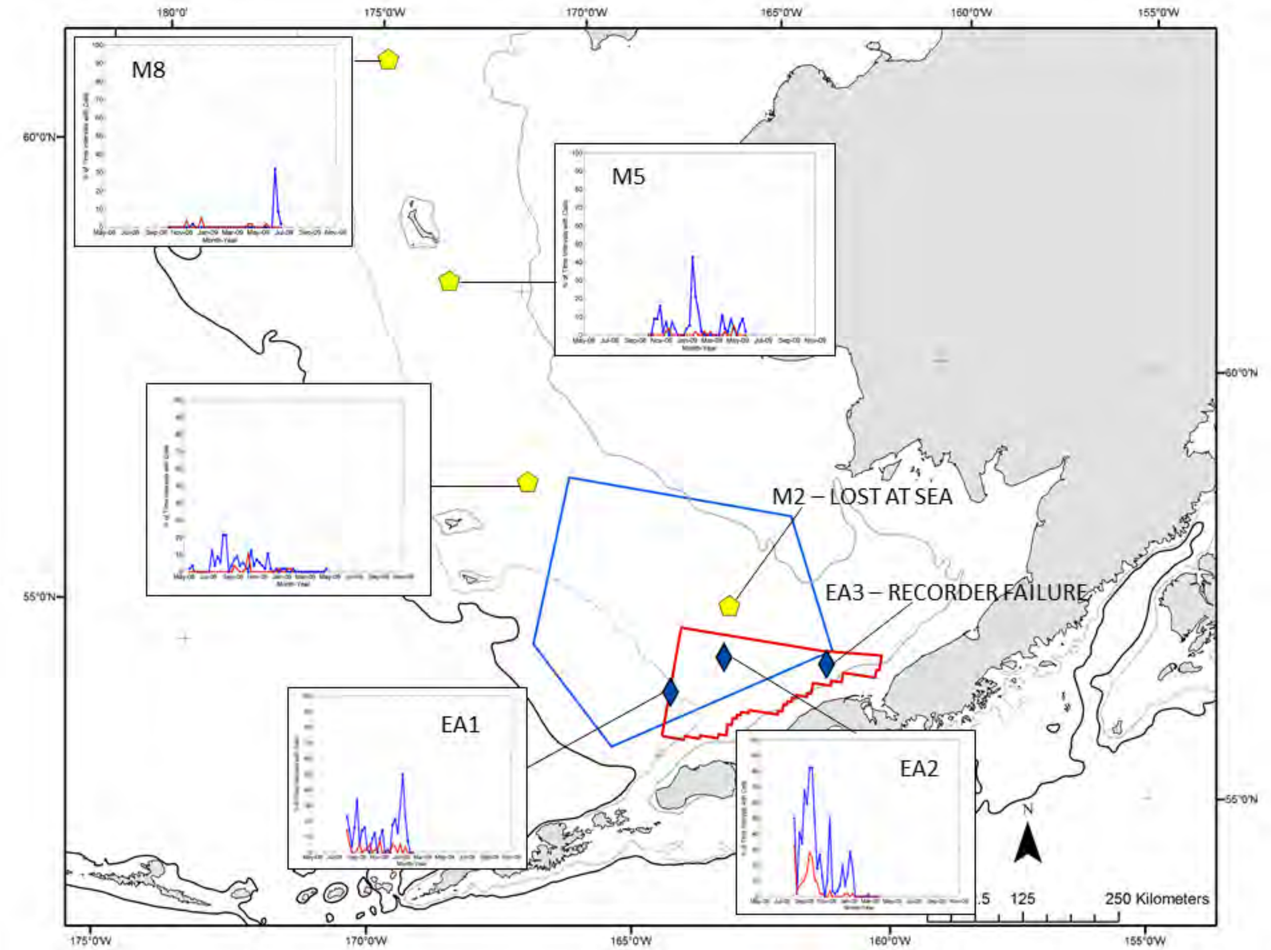


Figure 35: Results from 2008-2009 EAR and AURAL/Haruphone recorders superimposed on map of mooring locations. See Figures 33 and 34 for larger versions of the AURAL/Haruphone and EAR data plots, respectively. Blue pentagon = RWCH, red polygon = NAB lease area, yellow pentagons = PMEL moorings, blue diamonds = EAR moorings. On inset seasonal calling figures: blue = gunshot calls, red = upsweeps. Note: results are for all gunshot and upsweep calls, not necessarily specific to right whales. See text for explanation.

Four AURAL recorders were deployed at sites M2, M4, M5 and M8 in 2009. The mooring with the greatest percentage of calls was M2, with a peak from July 2009 – January 2010 (Figure 36d). In addition to the high percentage of calls present on M2, there is a strong correlation between upsweeps and gunshot calling patterns, suggesting that these calls are attributable to right whales. There were considerably fewer upsweeps than gunshot calls at M4, and as a result there is very little or no correlation between gunshot and upsweep calling patterns (Figure 36c). While there are a greater percentage of calls at M8 than at M5, neither show a correlation between gunshot calls and upsweeps, suggesting that these calls may have been produced by bowhead whales, not right whales.

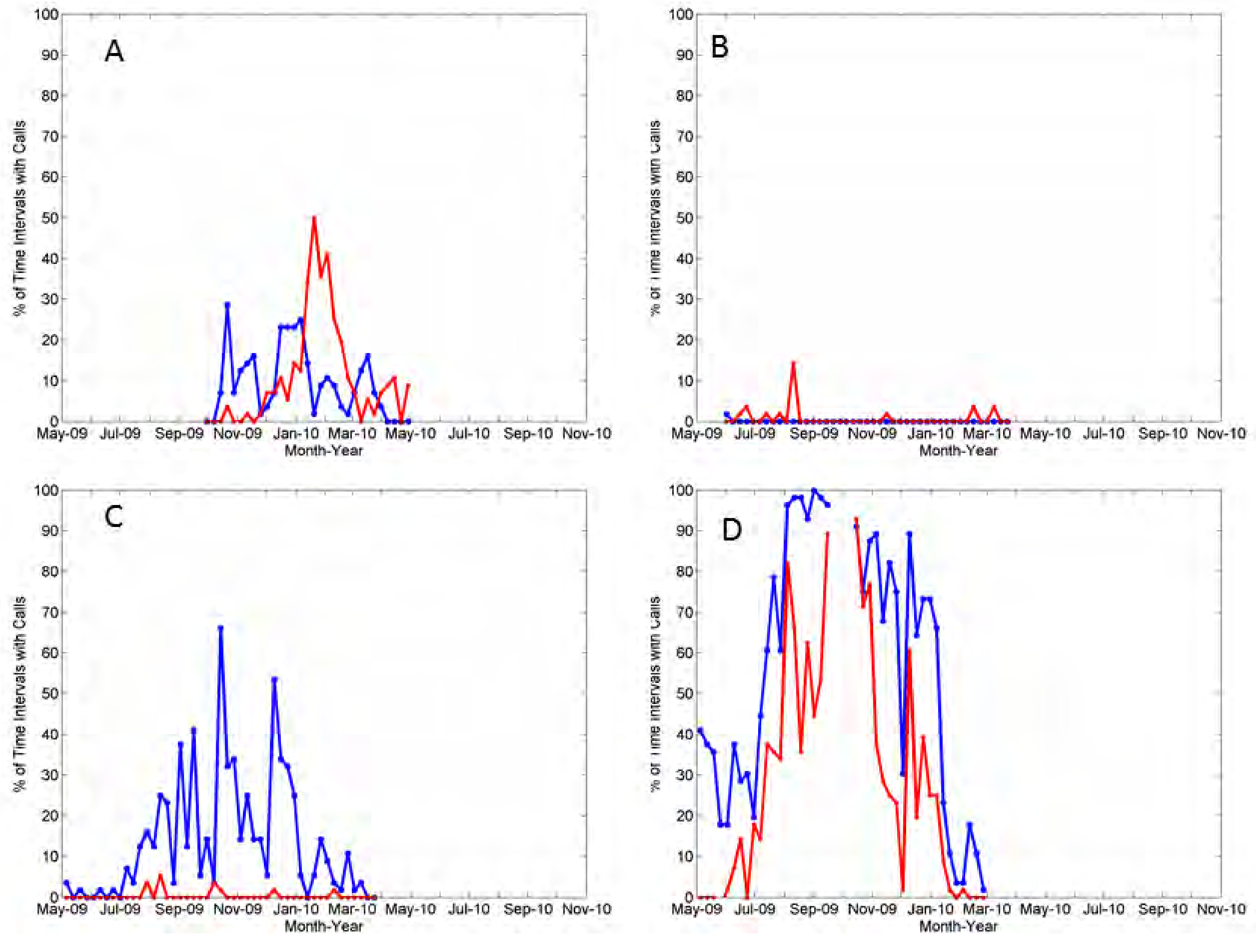


Figure 36: Right whale seasonal call distribution of gunshot (blue) and upsweep (red) calls on PMEL moorings 2009-2010: A) M8 B) M5 C) M4 D) M2. Note: results are for all gunshot and upsweep calls, not necessarily specific to right whales. See text for explanation.

Two of the three EAR recorders were moved to different locations in 2009. One was deployed in Umnak Pass (EA1), one was deployed in Unimak Pass (EA3), and one remained at the same location within the critical habitat on the western border of the NAB lease area (EA2) (Figure 38). The EAR mooring with the greatest percentage of calls was EA3, in Unimak Pass (Figure 37c). These data show a consistent, albeit low, presence of calls throughout the year, with a peak in September 2009. The Umnak Pass recorder (EA1) showed a peak in July 2009, with very few calls detected after September (Figure 37a). Interestingly, the recorder within the southwestern portion of the right whale Critical Habitat (EA2) showed a peak in late November 2009, with zero calls detected thereafter (Figure 37b). Any conclusions about which species is producing the calls based on correlation between call types cannot be made because of the low number of calls of either type. However, the location and seasonal patterns of these calls make them likely to be from right whales.

Similar to 2008, the percentage of time with right whale calls generally decreases going northward, with the lowest percentage of calls at the M5 mooring (Figure 38).

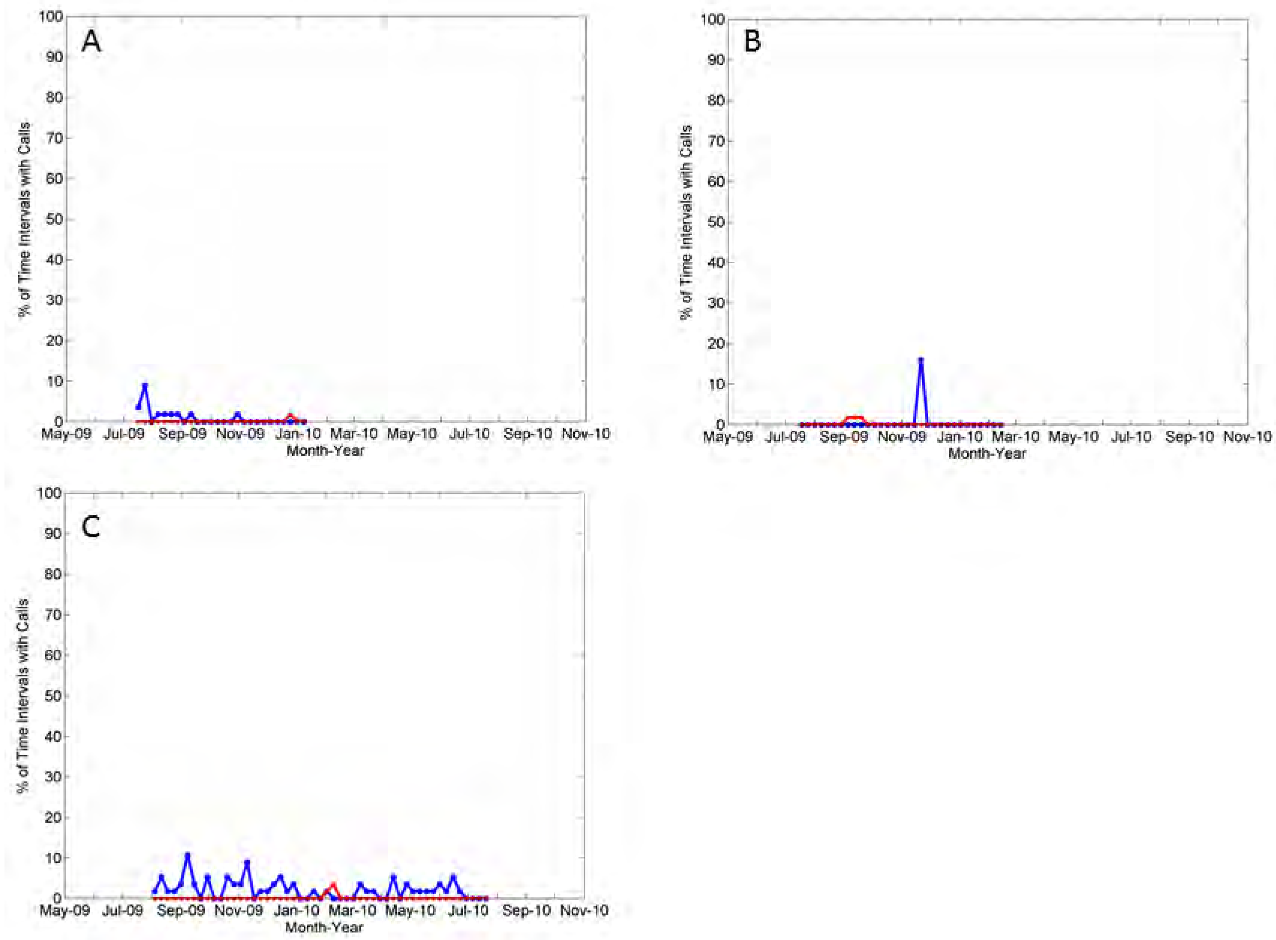


Figure 37: Right whale seasonal call distribution of gunshot (blue) and upsweep (red) calls on EAR moorings 2009-2010: A) EA01 Umnak Pass B) EA02 RWCH C) EA03 Unimak Pass. Note: results are for all gunshot and upsweep calls, not necessarily specific to right whales. See text for explanation.

Four AURAL recorders were redeployed at sites M2, M4, M5 and M8 in 2010. Although the recording from first deployment of the M2 mooring (May-Sep 2010) failed after 23 days, data from the second deployment (Sep 2010-May2011) again shows this mooring site has the highest percentage of time intervals with right whale calls, with a near constant presence of gunshot calling in November (Figure 39d). The M2 data also show a strong correlation in seasonal trends of the upsweeps and gunshot calls, indicating that right whales are most likely making these calls. The M4 recordings have a much lower level of both call types (Figure 39c), with a peak in gunshot calls in October under 50%. The correlation between the two call types is weaker than at M2, indicating uncertainty in the species making the calls, with a peak in upsweep calls occurring later in December. Unfortunately the M5 recordings were contaminated by mooring noise (chain rattling, etc), which made it impossible to see or hear any right whale calls, except for a few upsweeps at the very beginning of the deployment (Figure 39b). In contrast to the M2 and M4 recordings which had more time intervals with gunshot calls than upsweeps, M8 (Figure 39a) was the opposite, with a peak in upsweeps over twice the height of the gunshots. Because of this, and because the two call types show no correlation, it is highly likely that these calls are from bowheads, and not from right whales.

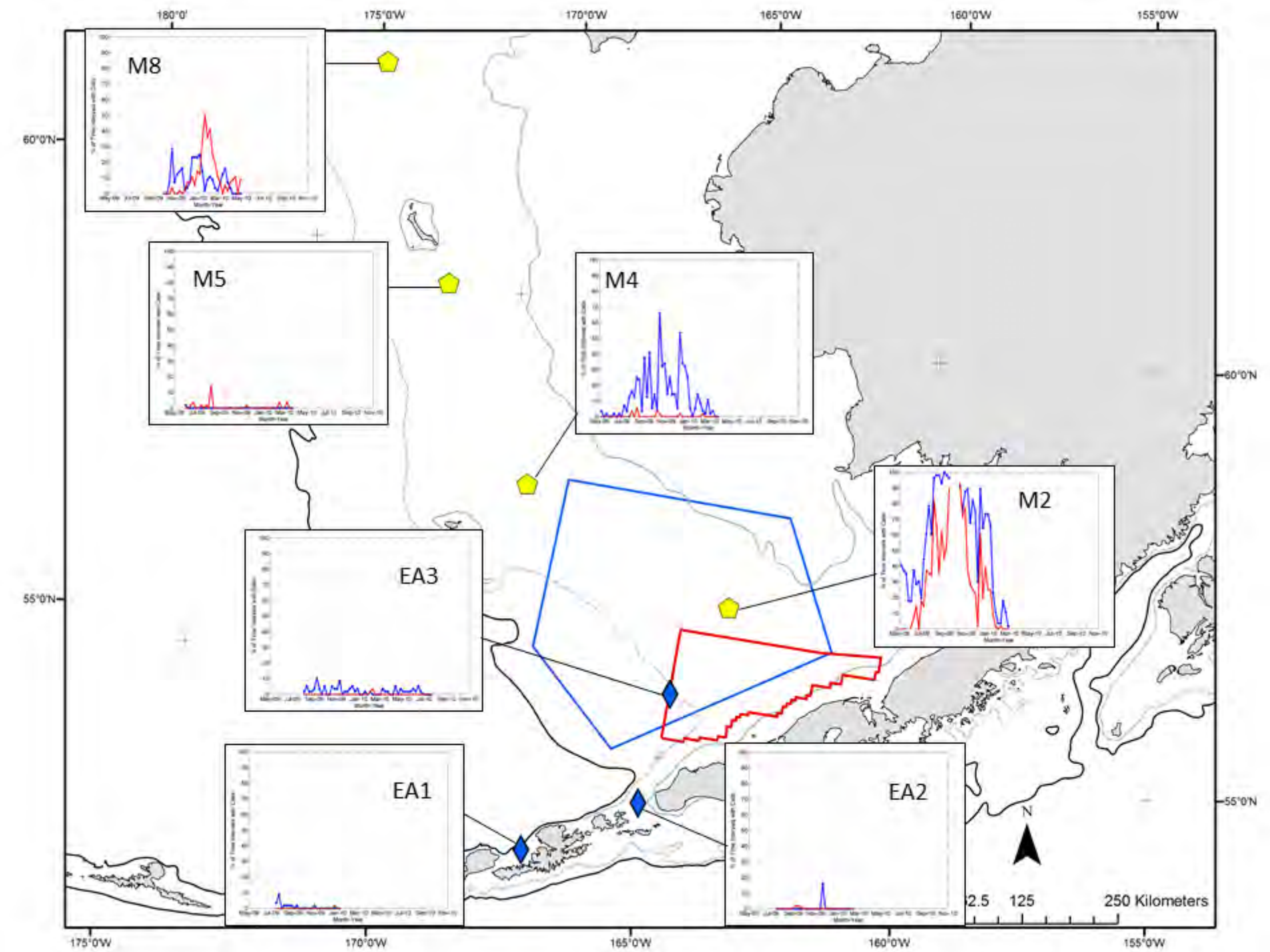


Figure 38: Results from 2009-2010 EAR and AURAL recorders superimposed on map of mooring locations. See Figures 36 and 37 for larger versions of the AURAL and EAR data plots, respectively. Blue pentagon = RWCH, red polygon = NAB lease area, yellow pentagons = PMEL moorings, blue diamonds = EAR moorings. On inset seasonal calling figures: blue = gunshot calls, red = upsweeps. Note: results are for all gunshot and upsweep calls, not necessarily specific to right whales. See text for explanation.

To get a better sense of the extent to which right whales use the Bering Sea shelf, and to monitor for other species of interest (i.e., humpback and fin whales), three EAR recorders were spread along the 50m isobath, while the fourth remained in Unimak Pass. Not surprisingly, the mooring site with the highest percentage of right whale calling was EA3 in the RWCH (closest to the M2 mooring), with a peak in gunshot calls of over 80% in November. The trend in upsweep calls tracked well with the gunshots, at about half the level (Figure 39c), indicating that these calls are produced by right whales. 2010 was a big disappointment for EAR recorders, however, with one recorder (Mooring EA01 – Figure 39a) failing after about a month with no calls of either type detected, and the Unimak Pass mooring (EA04 – Figure 39d) having very faint recording due to a faulty hydrophone. Very faint humpback whales were detected at on some days at the Unimak Pass mooring, but no right whale calls were detected. Given the interesting results from this mooring in 2009, it was extremely frustrating to have this failure in 2010.

The spatial trends in calling patterns seen in 2010 (Figure 41) again show a northward decrease in both calling types, with a stronger correlation between the two calling types to the south, indicating that the northern detections are more likely not right whale than those to the south. In addition by following the timing of calling peaks on these recorders with more certain right whale detections, there appears to be a possible southern movement of whales between the EA03 and M2 mooring sites.

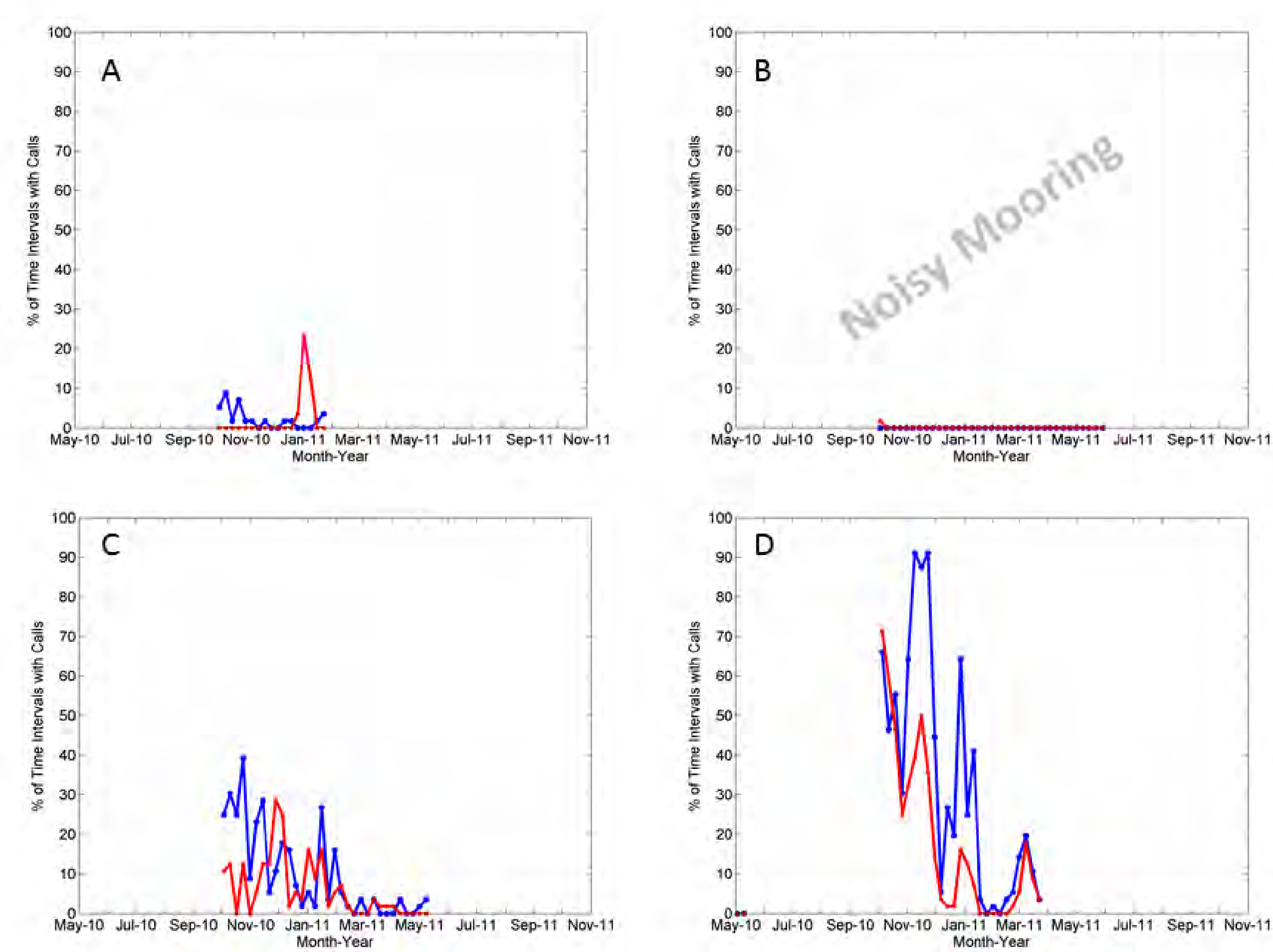


Figure 39: Right whale seasonal call distribution of gunshot (blue) and upsweep (red) calls on PMEL moorings 2010-2011: A) M8 B) M5 C) M4 D) M2. Note: results are for all gunshot and upsweep calls, not necessarily specific to right whales. See text for explanation.

The 2011 recorders are off to a good start, with the first deployment of the M2 mooring (May -Sep 2011) recording for the entire deployment (Figure 42d). The number of time intervals with right whales detections began to climb in June and reach 90% levels from August until the mooring was retrieved in September. Interestingly, not only did the trend in upsweep calling follow that of gunshot calls closely, the levels of both were well-matched, indicating these calls are produced by right whales. As this mooring is in the RWCH (Figure 43), the results for this mooring are expected.

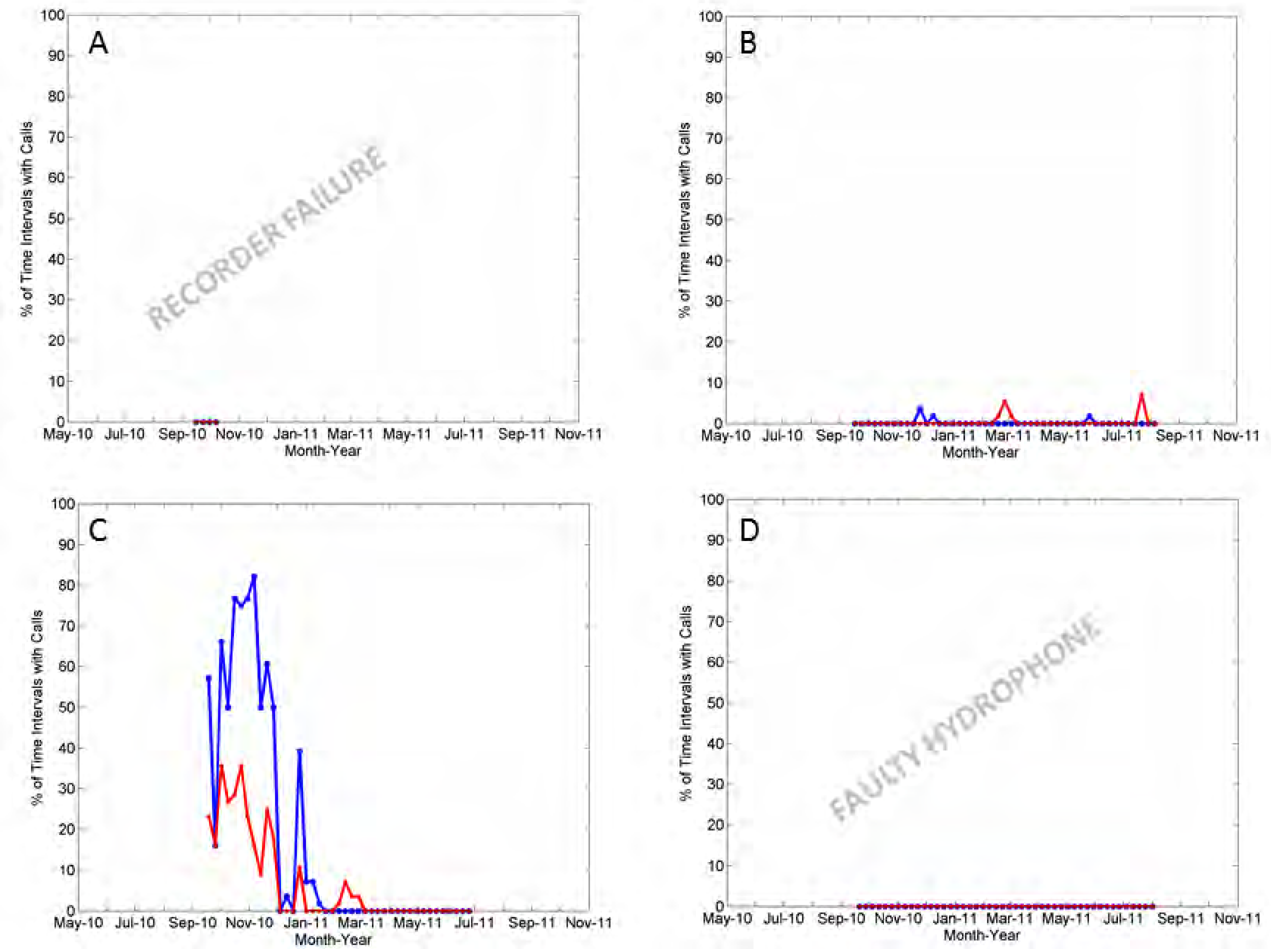


Figure 40: Right whale seasonal call distribution of gunshot (blue) and upsweep (red) calls on EAR moorings 2010-2011: A) EA01 (recorder failed) B) EA02 C) EA03 D) EA04 (hydrophone malfunctioned). Note: results are for all gunshot and upsweep calls, not necessarily specific to right whales. See text for explanation.

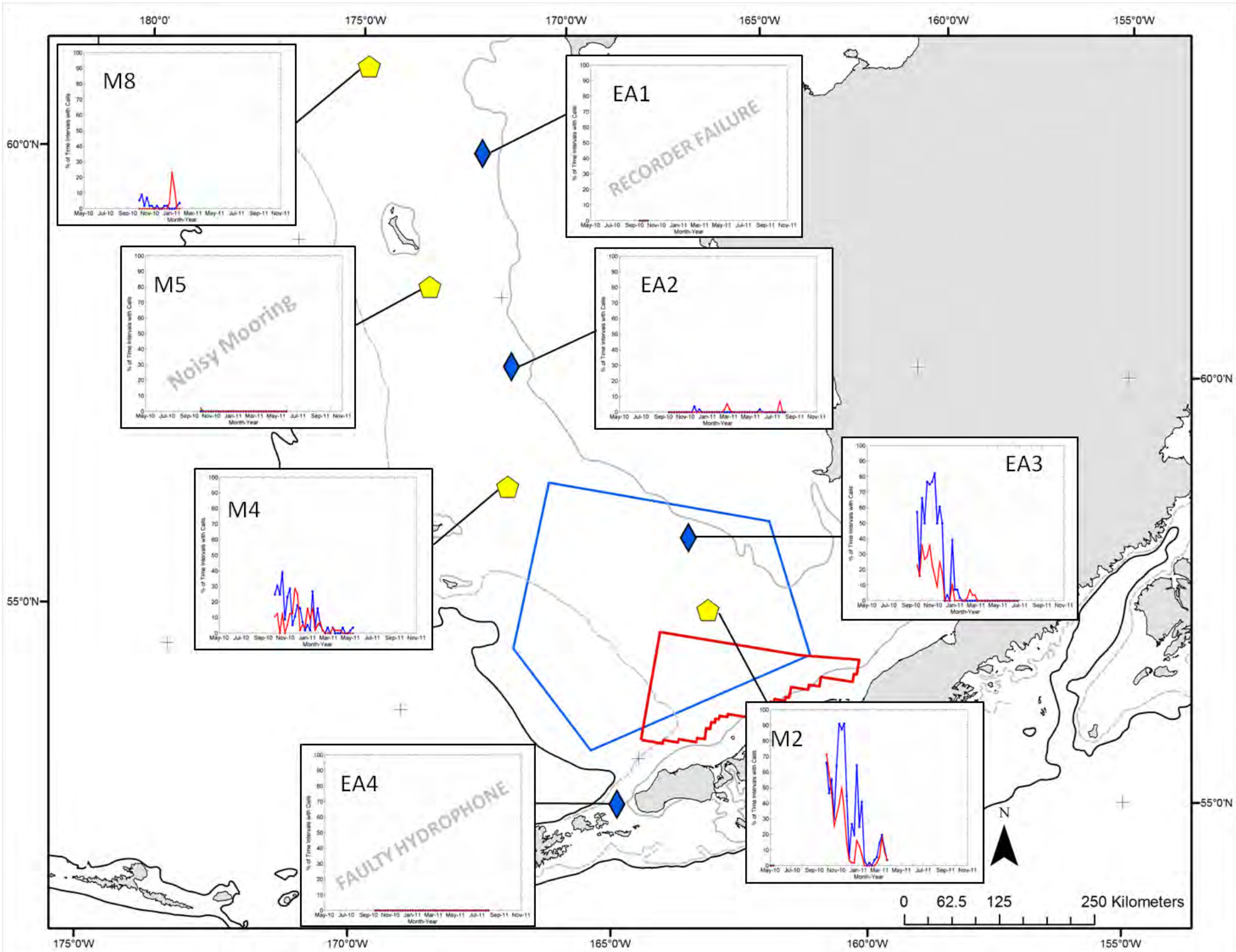


Figure 41: Results from 2010-2011 EAR and AURAL recorders superimposed on map of mooring locations. See Figures 39 and 40 for larger versions of the AURAL and EAR data plots, respectively. Blue pentagon = RWCH, red polygon = NAB lease area, yellow pentagons = PMEL moorings, blue diamonds = EAR moorings. On inset seasonal calling figures: blue = gunshot calls, red = upsweeps. Note: results are for all gunshot and upsweep calls, not necessarily specific to right whales. See text for explanation.

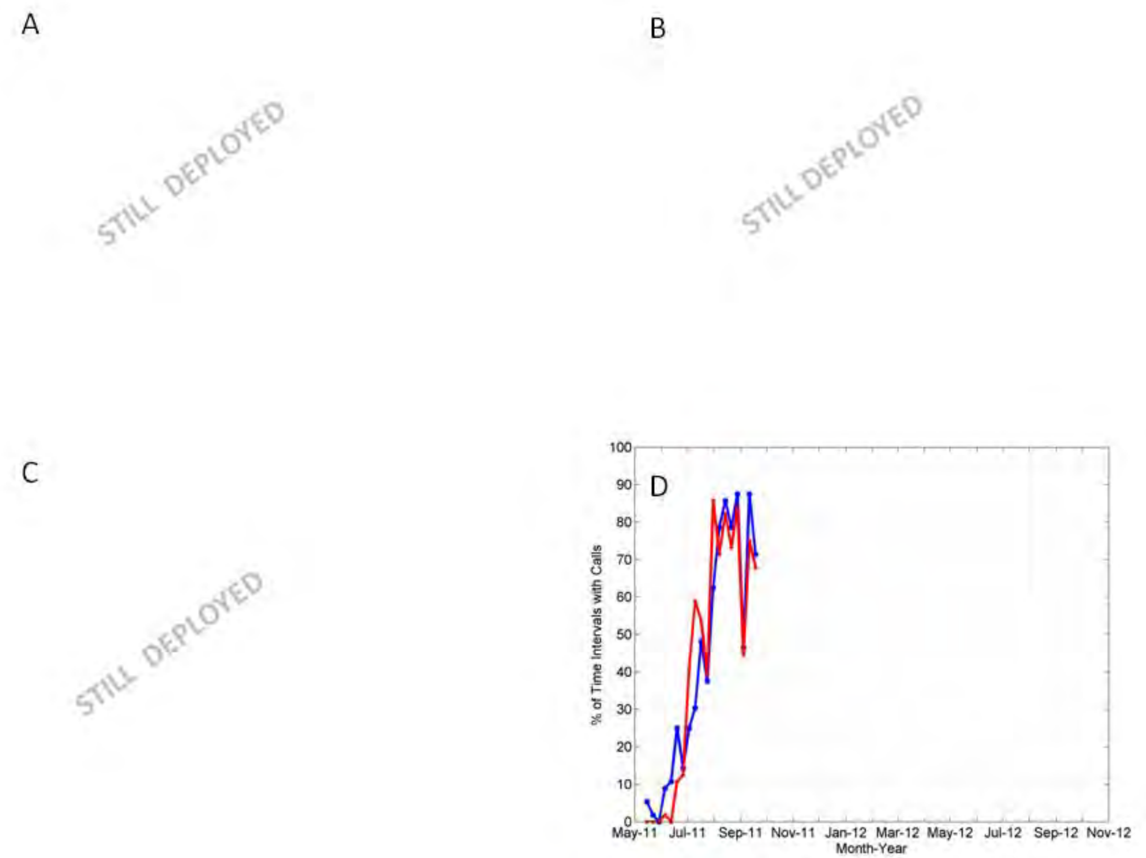


Figure 42: Right whale seasonal call distribution of gunshot (blue) and upsweep (red) calls on PMEL moorings 2011: A) M8 B) M5 C) M4 D) M2. Except for the first deployment of M2 in 2011, all recorders are still at sea, awaiting retrieval in 2012. Note: results are for all gunshot and upsweep calls, not necessarily specific to right whales. See text for explanation.

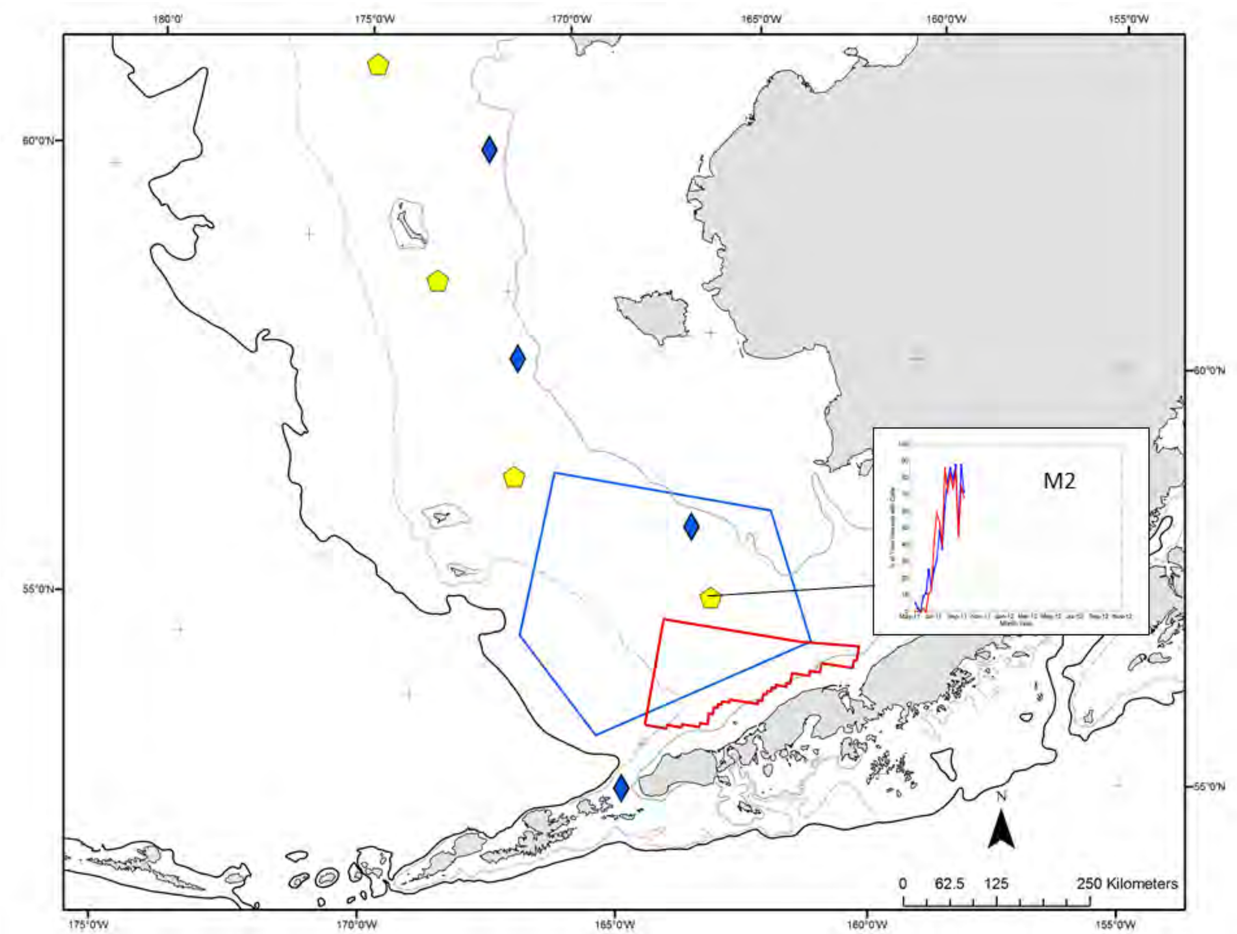


Figure 43: Results from 2011 AURAL recorders superimposed on map of mooring locations. See Figure 42 for larger versions of the AURAL data plot. Except for the first deployment of M2 in 2011, all recorders are still at sea, awaiting retrieval in 2012. Blue pentagon = RWCH, red polygon = NAB lease area, yellow pentagons = PMEL moorings, blue diamonds = EAR moorings. On inset seasonal calling figure: blue = gunshot calls, red = upsweeps. Note: results are for all gunshot and upsweep calls, not necessarily specific to right whales. See text for explanation.

Near-real-time auto-detection buoy

See Appendix B (pg 119) for full Cornell report which contains the results from this deployment.

DISCUSSION

The present study is the first to provide a description of the fine-scale distribution and movements of NPRWs in their feeding grounds in the SEBS. Wade *et al* (2006) deployed a satellite tag on one NPRW in the SEBS in the summer of 2004. This whale was monitored for 40 days and stayed primarily on the SEBS shelf and outer shelf. However, the duty cycle of the tag was set to transmit locations only on every 3rd day, in order to preserve battery life (Wade *et al.* 2006) Therefore, a fine-scale description of that animals movements was not possible. The small number of individuals tagged precludes more sophisticated statistical analysis.

One interesting finding of the present study is that right whales do not seem to venture into the inner shelf in the SEBS (waters shallower than 50m). It is still unclear why there is a marked preference for the middle shelf domain, but preliminary results indicate that this may be related to the presence of oceanographic features of importance to the right whale's prey. Baumgartner *et al.* (2009) showed that right whales were associated with a subsurface front in the SEBS during oceanographic studies conducted in the summer of 2008. Waters deeper than 50m were colder, higher in salinity and presented higher phytoplankton and zooplankton biomasses.

Human Impact and Management Implications

Current threats to NPRWs in the SEBS are poorly known, but given the small population size (~30 individuals, Wade *et al.*, 2010) any possible human activity (e.g. shipping, fishing, oil exploration) likely represents some risk to recovery. It has been suspected that the behavior of right whales may make them more vulnerable to ship strikes than any other large whale species (IWC, 2001). In fact, collision with vessels is, together with entanglement in fishing gear, the main source of mortality among North Atlantic right whales in the eastern coast of the US (IWC, 2001). The results presented here indicate that the summer range of the species partially overlaps with shipping lanes and some heavily fished areas (e.g. Nuka Research and Planning Group, 2005) and therefore increasing human activities in the SEBS will likely expose NPRW to greater threats. Therefore, further development of such activities (e.g. oil and gas exploration and increased shipping in the Bering Sea and Bering Strait) needs to be carefully planned.

Findings of this study have important implications for management. For example, the NMFS designated areas within the Gulf of Alaska and Bering Sea as Critical Habitat under the US Endangered Species Act (NMFS, 2006). The proposed boundaries in the SEBS (Figure 1) were developed based upon modern (post-1980s) summer records and are believed to reasonably represent the area in which NPRW's prey concentrations are most likely to occur. However, the designation was made on sparse information collected during studies that were conducted from the late fall to early spring. NMFS (2006) noted that further review of Critical Habitat should be conducted in the future, but this required additional data on distribution, habitat use, and movements.

The results of this study show that whales monitored via satellite telemetry remained inside the NPRW Critical Habitat in the Bering Sea (Figures 18-19). This has provided additional evidence that the Critical Habitat encompasses an important range of the population during their feeding season. Analysis of sonobuoy recordings from the 2008-2011 summer field surveys revealed a high site fidelity in the northeastern portion of the Critical Habitat as well (Figures 29-30). Furthermore, long-term recorders located throughout the BS shelf not only confirm this northeastern site fidelity within the Critical Habitat, but have expanded seasonal presence to encompass the months of July through January.

Results presented here are also relevant to further decisions with regard to future exploration of oil and gas in the SEBS. In fact, NPRW satellite telemetry was conducted in association with a large-scale study of the distribution, abundance and habitat use of the species in the SEBS. This large-scale study was prompted by the need for better data to assess the potential impact of oil and gas development in the NAB lease sales area. The whales tracked during the present study largely remained to the north of this area, with only one individual (PTT 87636.09) making an incursion within the NAB for a period of 2 days. Movements of this individual therefore indicate that the NAB area is occasionally used by right whales during their feeding season. Long-term recorders deployed in the NAB lease area in 2008 and 2009 show that right whales are present from at least September through January in the western portion of the lease area (Figures 34 and 37). Usage of this area may vary according to environmental variables suggesting the need for a longer-term evaluation.

Finally, the continued loss of sea ice in the Arctic brings with it the certainty that shipping through the Northwest Passage and Northern Sea Route will increase dramatically in future years. The potential for impact on right whales in the Bering Sea through increased noise and collision risk cannot be overestimated.

Humpback Whale Telemetry

This study was also the first to provide a description of the fine-scale distribution and movements of North Pacific humpback whales in their feeding grounds in the eastern Aleutian Islands. The results largely support the findings of historical and current studies showing that humpbacks congregate in shallow, highly productive coastal areas in the North Pacific and Bering Sea. Satellite telemetry from this study makes it evident that individual whales are making independent decisions about fine-scale movement and that these decisions can lead to long-distance travel within a feeding season. The significant individual variation in movement shown here is difficult to predict or describe and could impact conservation and management strategies.

While specific information about threats to NPHWs is not available for all areas of their range, anthropogenic injury or mortality are comparatively well documented in US waters. Entanglement, a major source of mortality in the North Atlantic population (Johnson *et al.* 2005; Northridge, 1991; Glass *et al.*, 2009), has been observed in Alaskan waters (Angliss, 2008), and a review of SPLASH photographs found that over 20% of NPHWs had rope entanglement scars (Calambokidis *et al.*, 2008) range-wide; the number jumps to 78% entanglement scars in SEAK (Nielson, 2009). Ship strikes are increasing in Alaskan waters (Gabriele *et al.*, 2007) and involve a wide range of vessels. Impacts on humpbacks in the Eastern Aleutian Ialsnds (EAIs) and Bering Sea will likely increase with the influx of human activity from newly ope ned oil and gas lease areas in the Chukchi and Beaufort Seas.

That humpbacks are a multinational species, both within and between seasons, and travel thousands of kilometers a year, should underscore the need for cooperation between North Pacific coastal nations in creating effective research and management strategies that mitigate the threats to this species throughout all stages of its life cycle. Future tagging studies on the feeding grounds need to incorporate real-time oceanographic and prey data sampling in order to further our understanding of humpback foraging strategy. Satellite tags that incorporate depth sensors should also be implemented to help describe dive patterns. Additionally, focal follows of tagged whales, or periodic resighting documentation, would help further shed light on certain aspects of their individual behavior and the long term affects of satellite tagging.

PROJECT SUMMARY

- Twelve individual right whales were seen and photographed. Four were biopsied.
- The first abundance estimates for the NPRW were calculated using prior biopsy-based genotype results and current photo-ID mark-recapture data (Wade *et al.*, 2011). The current population estimate is approximately 30 animals, making the eastern NPRW the most critically endangered large whale for which an abundance estimate exists.
- Satellite transmitters were deployed in 4 individual right whales. This study provides the first description of fine-scale movements of NPRWs in their feeding grounds in the Bering Sea and indicates that movements were restricted to a relatively small region between 56^o-58^{o}N and 163^o-167^{o}W (= area of ~26,400 km^2).
- The data indicate that right whales do not seem to venture into the inner shelf in the SEBS (waters shallower than 50m). It is still unclear why there is a marked preference for the middle shelf domain, but preliminary results suggest that this can be related to the presence of oceanographic features of importance to the right whale's prey.
- Although *Pseudocalanus spp*. was a dominant copepod in the area in both years, its small size likely made it secondary as a right whale prey item relative to the larger *Calanus marshallae* and *Calanus glacialis*. No diel vertical migration was observed for these larger copepods; instead, copepods tended to aggregate day or night at the bottom, in the pycnocline, or in the upper mixed layer.
- Focal follows conducted during the 2008-2010 field season of the PRIEST survey have confirmed that Bering Sea right whales make gunshot calls. Data from the long-term recorders have shown that this call type occurs a greater percentage of time than the upsweep call which has been the main call type used in past analyses (Mellinger *et al*., 2004; Munger *et al*., 2008).
- Recorders deployed in 2009 detected a pulse of right whale calls in Umnak and a low, albeit consistent number of right whale calls in Unimak Pass. If the assumption is made that right whales winter south of the Aleutians, the Umnak pulse may be indicative of right whales returning to the Bering Sea via Umnak Pass in July. Unimak Pass may be an alternative pass used more regularly by right whales during their movement in and out of the Bering. Further analysis and a larger sample size would be needed for confirmation; however, in 1964 a soviet whaling scout vessel recorded 4 right whales transiting Unimak pass in the month of January (Ivashchenko and Clapham, 2012).
- Analysis of sonobuoy recordings from the 2008-2011 summer field surveys revealed a high site fidelity in the northeastern portion of the Critical Habitat. Long-term recorders have confirmed this fidelity, extending the known site fidelity from July to January in the RWCH near the M2 mooring site.
- In all years, there is a decrease in both the percentage of time intervals with gunshot calls and a decrease in the correlation between gunshot and upsweep calling trends from south to north on all long-term recorders. It is highly likely that this may be due to influx of bowhead whales into the areas

surrounding M8 and M5 in the winter. Right whale gunshot and upsweep calling trends follow a very similar pattern, whereas bowhead calls do not appear to follow this trend. This gunshot/upsweep correlation combined with the context of the calls and correlation with ice coverage maps might be used to confidently discriminate between

- Following the timing of peak calling on the various long-term recorders may provide some insight into right whale movements in the Bering Sea. For example, 2010 data show a possible movement of the whale(s) from EA3 south to M2; a westward shift from EA1 to EA2 can be seen on the 2008 recorder data.
- This study demonstrated that 1) a small number of NPRWs can produce thousands of calls over tens of hours (~36,000 calls in 67 hours), 2) call rates vary by call type, 3) individual callers produce bouts of calls, and 4) patterns in individual calling behavior may facilitate inferences about call function.
- Current analyses have revealed multiple instances of repetitive call patterning of the gunshot call by NPRW. This is one of the first documented examples of call patterning in the NPRW.
- Results demonstrate that incorporating acoustic sampling into aerial visual surveys provides an effective strategy for increasing detections of this critically endangered species.
- The first high- to low-latitude match of a NPRW between Hawaii and the Bering Sea was discovered during the creation of the NMML NPRW catalog. While this is not definitive proof of a yearly migration, it does show that at least some of the population undertakes longer migrations during some years.
- Eight humpback whales were tagged with PTT-only satellite transmitters near Unalaska Bay (~53^{o}55'N, 166^{o}32'W). This study provides evidence that while humpback whales aggregate in areas of predictable prey abundance (e.g. to the north of Unalaska/Unimak Islands), some individuals perform relatively long trips, presumably to explore other potential feeding grounds.
- From analysis of the long-term passive acoustic recorders (Appendix C) it is clear that fin whales spend a great deal of time calling in the Bering Sea, especially in and around the RWCH, along the 50m isobaths, and through Unimak Pass. However, although there are these areas with higher call concentrations, comparison of the duration and timing of fin whale calling peaks among years suggests that fin whale movements within the Bering Sea are highly variable.
- Although not part of the BOEM agreement, data on right whale catches by the USSR have been analyzed and provided important new information on the distribution and biology of right whales in the North Pacific (Ivashchenko and Clapham, 2012). This analysis has revealed that the USSR killed more right whales than previously thought, and has also provided new information on the distribution and biological characteristics of the population.

PUBLICATIONS AND PRESENTATIONS

Baumgartner, M.F., Esch, H.C. and Zerbini, A.N. 2009. Association between North Pacific right whales and a subsurface front in the southeastern Bering Sea. 18th Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, Quebec City, Canada, October 2009.

Berchok, C.L., Morse, L.J., Clapham, P.J., Klinck, H., Klinck, K., Mellinger, D.K., Ljungblad, D., Moore, S.E., Scattorin, F., and J.L. Keating. 2009. Right whale gunshot calls in the southeastern Bering Sea. The 157th meeting of the Acoustical Society of America, 18-22 May, 2009, Portland, OR.

Berchok, C.L., Keating, J.L., Crance, J.L., Klinck, H., Klinck, K., Ljungblad, D., Moore, S., Morse, L., Scattorin, F., and Clapham, P.J. 2009. Right whale gunshot calls detected during the 2008 North Pacific right whale survey cruise. 18th Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, Quebec City, Canada, October 2009.

Berchok, C. L., Crance, J. L., Clapham, P. J., Lammers, M., and Au, W.W.L. 2010. Passive acoustic monitoring in the North Aleutian Basin lease area. Alaska Marine Science Symposium, 18-22 January 2010, Anchorage, AK.

Berchok, C.L., Crance, J.L., and Rone, B. 2010. North Pacific right whale survey: Acoustics. Sonobuoy conference at the Naval Air Station, Whidbey Island, 26 May 2010, Oak Harbor, WA.

Berchok, C. L. 2011. Passive Acoustics. Oral presentation at the 2011 Arctic Stakeholder Open-Water Workshop. March 7-9, 2011. Anchorage, AK *[Portion of talk included results of RW project]*.

Clapham, P., Zerbini, A.N., Kennedy, A., Rone, B. and Berchock, C. 2009. Update on North Pacific right whale research. Paper SC/61/BRG16 presented to the IWC Scientific Committee, Funchal, Madeira, Portugal, June 2009. 9pp.

Clapham, P. J., Ivashchenko, Y. V., Zerbini, A. N., Kennedy, A. S., Rone, B. K., and Brownell Jr, R. L. On the edge: the tragedy of the eastern North Pacific right whale. Oral presentation at the 19th Biennial Conference of the Society for Marine Mammalogy, 28 Nov – 02 Dec, 2011, Tampa, FL

Crance, J. L., Berchok, C. L., Clapham, P. J., Hager, J., Keating, J., Klinck, H., Klinck K., Kusel, E., Ljungblad, D.K., and Scattorin, F. 2010. Short-term trends in the distribution patterns of cetaceans in the southeastern Bering Sea. Alaska Marine Science Symposium, 18-22 January 2010, Anchorage, A.

Crance, J.L., Berchok, C.L., Clapham, P.J., Lammers, M., Au, W.W.L., Mellinger, D.K., and Nieukirk, S. 2010. Right whale distribution in the Bering Sea revisited: a fresh look.

The 159th meeting of the Acoustical Society of America, 19-23 April, 2010, Baltimore, MD.

Crance, J.L., Berchok, C.L., and Clapham, P.J. 2011. New call type produced by the North Pacific right whale, *Eubalaena japonica*. The 162nd meeting of the Acoustical Society of America, 31 Oct – 4 Nov, 2011, San Diego, CA.

Delarue, J., Mellinger, D.K., Stafford, K.M., and Berchok, C.L. 2010. Where do the Chukchi Sea fin whales come from? Looking for answers in the structure of songs recorded in the Bering Sea and Western N. Pacific. The 159th meeting of the Acoustical Society of America, 19-23 April, 2010, Baltimore, MD.

Esch, H. C., Baumgartner, M., Berchok, C. L. and Zerbini, A. 2010. Fine-scale temporal variability of North Pacific right whale call production. Alaska Marine Science Symposium, 18-22 January 2010, Anchorage, AK.

Friday, N. A., Zerbini, A. N., Waite, J. M., Kennedy, A. S., Rone, B. K., Clapham, P. J. and Moore, S. E. 2008. Baleen whale broad-scale distribution. BSIERP Project B-66. Poster presentation at the BEST-BSIERP PI meeting; 14-16 October, 2008.

Girdwood, AK.Friday, N.; Zerbini, A.N.; Waite, J.M.; Kennedy, A.; Rone, B.; Clapham, P. and Moore, S.E. 2009. Cetacean distribution in the Bering Sea in the spring and summer 2008. Alaska Marine Science Symposium, January, 2009, Anchorage, AK.

Ivashchenko, Y.V. and Clapham, P.J. 2012. Soviet catches of bowhead (*Balaena mysticetus*) and right whales (*Eubalaena japonica)* in the North Pacific and Okhotsk Sea. Endangered Species Research (in review).

Ivashchenko, Y. V., Clapham, P. J. and Brownell Jr., R. L. 2011. Soviet illegal whaling: the Devil and the details. Marine Fisheries Review. 73(3):1-19.

Kennedy, A., Zerbini, A., Rone, B., and Clapham, P. 2010. Eastern North Pacific right whales; They do exist! Alaska Marine Science Symposium, 17-22 January 2010, Anchorage, AK.

Kennedy, A. S., Salden, D. R. and Clapham, P. J. 2011. First high- to low-latitude match of an eastern North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*). Marine Mammal Science. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2011.00539.x

Kennedy, A.S., Zerbini, A.N., Vasquez, O., Gandilhon, N., Clapham, P.J., Geyer, Y. 2011. Individual variation in movements of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) from two populations satellite-tracked in the Bering Sea and the West Indies. 19th Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, 28 Nov – 2 Dec 2011, Tampa, FL.

Rone, B. K., Berchok, C. L. and Clapham, P. J. 2010. Aerial sonobuoys: A tool for increasing detectability of the endangered North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the southeastern Bering Sea. Alaska Marine Science Symposium, 18-22 January 2010, Anchorage, AK.

Rone, B. K., Zerbini, A. N., Kennedy, A. S. and Clapham, P. J. 2010. Aerial surveys in the southeastern Bering Sea: occurrence of the endangered North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) and other marine mammals during the summers of 2008 and 2009. Alaska Marine Science Symposium, 18-22 January 2010, Anchorage, AK.

Rone, B. K. 2010. Right whales: surviving the times? Guest speaker at the American Cetacean Society conference, November 12-14, 2010, Monterey, CA.

Rone, B. K. 2011. Status of North Pacific right whales. North Pacific Fishery Management Council meeting, March 29, 2011, Anchorage, AK.

Rone, B. K., Berchok, C. L., Crance, J. L. and Clapham, P. J. 2011. Aerial acoustics: a tool for increasing detections of the critically endangered North Pacific right whale. 19th Biennial Conference of the Society for Marine Mammalogy, 28 Nov – 02 Dec, 2011, Tampa, FL.

Rone, B. K., Berchok, C. L, Crance, J. L., Clapham, P. J. 2012. Using air-deployed passive sonobuoys to detect and locate critically endangered North Pacific right whales. Marine Mammal Science, *in press*.

Stafford, K.M., D.K. Mellinger, P. Stabeno, S.L. Nieukirk, S. Heimlich and S.E. Moore. 2009. Analysis of acoustic and oceanographic data from the Bering Sea June 2006-May 2007. Alaska Marine Science Symposium, January 2009, Anchorage, AK.

Wade, P. 2010. The eastern North Pacific right whale: first estimates of abundance for the Bering Sea, and recent observations of right whales and their potential zooplankton prey in the Gulf of Alaska. Alaska Marine Science Symposium, 17-22 January, 2010, Anchorage, AK.

Wade, P., Kennedy, A., LeDuc, R., Barlow, J., Clapham, P. J., Caretta, J., Shelden, K., Perryman, W., Pitman, R., Rone, B., Salinas, J. C., and Zerbini, A. 2009. First abundance estimates for eastern North Pacific right whales, *Eubalaena japonica*, using mark-recapture methods applied to both genetic and photo-identification data. 18th Biennial

Conference of the Society for Marine Mammals, 12-16 October 2009, Quebec City, Canada.

Wade, P., A. De Robertis, K. Hough, R. Booth, A. Kennedy, R. LeDuc, L. Munger, J. Napp, K. Shelden, S. Rankin, O. Vasquez and C. Wilson. 2011. Rare detections of North Pacific right whales in the Gulf of Alaska, with observations of their potential prey. *Endangered Species Research* 13**:** 99-109.

Wade, P., A. Kennedy, R. LeDuc, J. Barlow, J. Carretta, K. Shelden, W. Perryman, R. Pittman, K. Robertson, B. Rone, J. C. Salinas, A. Zerbini, R. L. Brownell, JR and P. Clapham. 2011. The World's Smallest Whale Population? *Biology Letters* 7: 83-85.

Zerbini, A., Clapham, P. , Kennedy, A., and Geyer, I. 2011. Individual Variation in Movements of Humpback Whales (Megaptera novaeangliae) Satellite-tracked in the Bering Sea During Summer. Alaska Marine Science Symposium, 17-21 January 2011, Anchorage, AK.

Zerbini, A.N., Clapham, P.J., Berchock, C., Kennedy, A., Rone, B. and Baumgartner, M. 2008. North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) research in the Bering Sea. Minerals Management Service 11th Information Transfer Meeting, October 2008, Anchorage, AK.

Zerbini, A.N.; Clapham, P; Berchok, C.; Kennedy, A. and Rone, B. 2009. Occurrence of the endangered North Pacific right whale (Eubalaena japonica) in the Bering Sea in 2008. Alaska Marine Science Symposium, January 2009, Anchorage, AK.

Zerbini, A.N. 2009. Humpback and right whale tagging. Cetacean Tag Design Workshop, Office of Naval Research, March 2009, Arlington, VA.

Zerbini, A.N., Kennedy, A.S., Rone, B.K., Berchok, C., Clapham, P.J. and Moore, S.E. 2009. Occurrence of the critically endangered North Pacific right whale (Eubalaena japonica) in the Bering Sea. 18th Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, 12-16 October 2009, Quebec City, Canada.

Zerbini, A.N., Kennedy, A.S., Rone, B.K., Berchok, C., and Clapham, P.J. 2010. Habitat use of North Pacific right whales in the Bering Sea during Summer as Revealed by Sighting and Telemetry Data. Alaska Marine Science Symposium, January 2010, Anchorage, AK.

Zerbini, A.N. 2010. Implantable tags for humpback and right whales. Meeting on Large Whale Tagging, February 2010, Moss Landing Marine Laboratory, Moss Landing, CA.

UPCOMING PUBLICATIONS

Movements and habitat use of the endangered North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the Bering Sea from satellite telemetry
Alexandre N. Zerbini, Mark Baumgartner, Amy S. Kennedy, Phillip J. Clapham, Paul R. Wade, Brenda K. Rone

The North Pacific right whale (NPRW) was severely depleted by whaling in the past two centuries. The current size of the eastern Bering Sea (BS) population is estimated at about 30 individuals, making this one of the most critically endangered mammal populations in the world. Historical data indicate that right whales were abundant and widely distributed in the BS in summer and early autumn, but habitat use, movements, and migratory routes and destinations are still poorly known for this population. In the summer 2008 and 2009 SPOT5 satellite transmitters were deployed in 4 individuals. Whales were tracked for an average of 40 days (range=30-58) and provided information on the distribution and movements of NPRWs between July and October. These whales travelled a total of 4075 km, with an average of 1018 km/whale (range = 195-1818 km). This study provides the first description of fine-scale movements of NPRWs in their feeding grounds in the Bering Sea and indicates that movements were restricted to a relatively small region between 56o-58oN and 163o-167oW (=area of ~26,400 km2). This region represents an important habitat for this endangered population, which may be particularly vulnerable to environment and human-related changes that could affect prey distribution and abundance in the SEBS.

Individual variation in movements of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) satellite-tracked in the Bering Sea during summer
Amy S. Kennedy, Alexandre N. Zerbini, Phillip J. Clapham, Brenda Rone, and Ygor Geyer

Humpback whales occur in various locations in feeding grounds in the Bering Sea, where their movements and habitat use are poorly understood. In the summers of 2007-2010, eight humpback whales were tagged with PTT-only satellite transmitters near Unalaska Bay (~53^{o}55’N, 166^{o}32’W). One tag transmitted intermittently for 3 days and is not considered in this study. Individual whales were tracked for an average of 28 days (range = 7-67 days) and showed substantial variation in movements. Three individuals remained within 50km of their tagging locations for as many as 14 days. Two whales explored presumed feeding areas within 60 km from shore, along the Bering Sea side of Unalaska Bay and Unimak Pass. Two whales moved west; one made a trip to the Island of Four Mountains and returned to the northern side of Umnak Islands and a second whale moved through Umnak Pass and explored feeding areas on both the Bering and Pacific sides of Umnak Island. One individual left Unalaska Bay three days after tagging and moved ~1500km (in 12 days) along the outer Bering Sea shelf to the southern Chukotka, Russia. After 4 days, this individual moved east across the Bering Sea basin to Navarin Canyon (60^{o}30’N, 179^{o}20’W), where it remained until transmissions ceased. This study provides evidence that while humpback whales aggregate in areas of predictable prey abundance (e.g. to the north of Unalaska/Unimak Islands), some individuals perform relatively long trips, presumably to explore other possible feeding grounds. Movement patterns may be individually variable, but may also be influenced by seasonal or inter-annual productivity and prey abundance.

Foraging ecology and habitat of North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*)
Mark Baumgartner

The eastern stock of North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) numbers fewer than 50 animals, and is arguably the most critically endangered large whale species. Whaling records indicate that right whales were once abundant throughout the eastern North Pacific and Bering Sea during the summer months. While the importance of other historic habitats in the eastern North Pacific remains unresolved, modern sightings of right whales confirm that the southeastern Bering Sea remains a Critical Habitat for North Pacific right whales. During the summers of 2008 and 2009, WHOI participated in collaborative research with the NOAA National Marine Mammal Laboratory to study the distribution, behavior, and ecology of the North Pacific right whale in the southeastern Bering Sea. Research included (1) zooplankton sampling, (2) attachment of short-term tags to right whales, (3) diel vertical migration studies of right whale prey, and (4) adaptive cross-shelf oceanographic transects. Although *Pseudocalanus* spp. was a dominant copepod in the area in both years, its small size likely made it subordinate as a right whale prey item to the larger *Calanus marshallae* and *Calanus glacialis*. No diel vertical migration was observed for these larger copepods; instead, copepods tended to aggregate day or night at the bottom, in the pycnocline, or in the upper mixed layer. Cross-shelf oceanographic transects as well as larger-scale oceanographic data from the BASIS program suggest that right whales remain in the middle shelf domain of the Bering Sea shelf. Plans to test this hypothesis using the satellite tagging data and BASIS oceanographic data will be discussed.

New information on the distribution and biology of North Pacific right whales from Soviet whaling catches in the Gulf of Alaska

Yulia V. Ivashchenko and Phillip J. Clapham

North Pacific (NP) right whales were reduced to low levels by historical whaling. The USSR illegally killed right whales in the NP and Okhotsk Sea (OS), but published information on these catches lacked detail. Here, we provide revised catch totals, as well as new information on the distribution and other details of these catches. Right whale catches were made in 1962-68 in the eastern NP and in 1967/68 in the OS. Our best estimate of total right whale catches is 661, consisting of 529 for the eastern NP (compared to the previously published figure of 373) and 132 for the OS (cf a previous figure of 126). Catches were distributed in the Bering Sea (BS, 115), eastern Aleutian Islands (28), Gulf of Alaska (GoA, 366), OS (132) and other areas (20). Detailed information on catches of 112 right whales taken in May/June 1963 shows a broad distribution in offshore waters of the GoA, consistent with 19th century historical whaling records. Other major areas in which right whales were caught include south of Kodiak Island, western Bristol Bay (southeastern BS), and the central OS off eastern Sakhalin Island. The catches of right whales primarily involved large mature animals, thus greatly inhibiting recovery of the populations concerned.

North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) call production: fine-scale patterns and probability of detection

H. Carter Esch

While broad-scale passive acoustic monitoring is currently the most effective tool for monitoring North Pacific right whale (NPRW) occurrence, the difficulty in locating and studying this rare species using traditional approaches (i.e., visual surveys, tagging, focal follows) has resulted in gaps in our basic knowledge of NPRW calling behavior. In addition, recent efforts to estimate NPRW abundance using acoustic cue counting techniques rely on knowledge of individual call rates and the probability of acoustically detecting a particular call. The goals of the current study are to 1) quantify NPRW call rates (overall and individual) and bout lengths (periods of repetitive calling by an individual), 2) describe fine-scale patterns in calling behavior, 3) assess caller interactions (i.e., call exchange, convergence or divergence of callers, and 4) develop a stochastic model of the probability of detecting NPRW calls. We focus here on NPRW calling behavior in the southeast Bering Sea during the late summer because

NPRWs are known to regularly occur in this region at this time of year. While the results presented here may not necessarily be extrapolated to other contexts (i.e., wintertime calling behavior), this study demonstrates that 1) a small number of NPRWs can produce thousands of calls over tens of hours (~36,000 calls in 67 hours), 2) call rates vary by call type, 3) individual callers produce bouts of calls, and 4) patterns in individual calling behavior may facilitate inferences about call function. Probability of detection modeling is ongoing.

North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) make gunshot calls in the Bering Sea
Catherine Berchok, Jessica Crance, Jennifer Keating, Phil Clapham

In 2007, NMML began conducting a multi-year study of the distribution, abundance, and habitat use of North Pacific right whales (NPRW) (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the North Aleutian Basin and southeastern Bering Sea using aerial and vessel surveys. Passive acoustic monitoring, using directional sonobuoy methods to locate calling whales, were included in these surveys. Prior to our study, the other calls described for the NPRW were frequency-modulated tonal calls (McDonald and Moore, 2002). However, during the 2008 survey, recordings of gunshot calls (broadband impulses) were made in the presence of right whales. This call type was attributed to the NPRW through correlation between surface/dive times recorded during focal follows and the times when gunshot calls were detected on the real-time sonobuoy recordings, and with cross-fixes to the calling animals made using the directional information from the sonobuoys. Although this call type has already been attributed to North Atlantic and Southern populations of right whales, this is the first time it has been attributed to the NPRW population. In addition, even though previous work in the Bering Sea focused on detections of the right whale upsweep call, our findings suggest that the gunshot call is much more ubiquitous and should be included in all analyses to obtain a better picture of the spatio-temporal distribution of the NPRW.

Spatio-temporal distribution of fin whales on the Bering Sea shelf
Jessica Thompson, Catherine Berchok

This paper will be a summary of the long-term distribution of fin whales on the Bering Shelf. We are about half-way done with our analysis of 22 long-term passive acoustic recorders deployed along the Bering Shelf from 2006-2012. Preliminary analyses (see Appendix C) have shown that fin whales spend a great deal of time calling in the Bering Sea, especially in and around the RWCH, along the 50m isobaths, and through Unimak Pass. However, although there are these areas with higher call concentrations, comparison of the duration and timing of fin whale calling peaks among years suggests that fin whale movements within the Bering Sea can be highly variable. Our analyses will attempt to identify and describe these variable movements to better understand fin whale habitat use.

North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) passive acoustics: Seasonal and spatial occurrence in the Bering Sea
Catherine Berchok, Jessica Crance

Passive acoustics is one of the most effective means of studying large scale movements and distribution of large whales. We have combined long-term moored passive acoustic recorders with short-term sonobuoy deployments during summer field surveys to study the spatio-temporal distribution of the North Pacific right whale (NPRW), arguably one of the most endangered large whale populations. Since 2006, multiple passive acoustic recorders have been deployed year-round in the Bering Sea. Current results show a near year-round presence of NPRW in the Critical Habitat, with a sharp increase in July, a peak in August/September, and a sharp decrease in early January. Gunshot calls were detected in the north Bering Sea over winter; however, because other species have been noted to produce gunshot-like sounds (e.g. bowhead and humpback whales), these detections need further scrutiny before they can be attributed to NPRW. A combination of techniques will be used to distinguish between species including correlation with ice coverage maps, correlation with other known calls from the repertoire of each species, and detailed call characteristics analysis. After determining which of the calls are attributable to the NPRW, the overall long-term spatio-temporal distribution of the NPRW along the Bering Sea shelf will be presented and compared with oceanographic and ice-cover data from those areas.

Stereotyped repetitive gunshot call patterning by North Pacific right whales in the southeastern Bering Sea

Jessica Crance and Catherine Berchok

During the 2010 Bering Sea portion of the CHAOZ cruise, an unusual call pattern was detected on sonobuoys that was later determined to be an unusual gunshot call pattern. This consists of 18-24 gunshot calls, followed by a downsweep from 250-100 Hz (Figure 42). The gunshots calls are propagating in such a way that the 650 Hz band is emphasized. This same pattern was later discovered on our long-term moored recorders as well, in both 2009 and 2010. Furthermore, additional gunshot patterns have been detected on the long-term recorders. In addition to the 650 Hz pattern, two other patterns have been fully analyzed. One consists of a series of low frequency (<300 Hz) pulses followed by a gunshot progression (Figure 43). The third pattern analyzed consists of 7-8 gunshots increasing in amplitude with a consistent inter-call interval (ICI) (Figure 44). Other gunshot patterns, including a repetitive double-single-double pattern, are currently being analyzed. This is the first documented occurrence of stereotyped, repetitive call patterning in right whales. The possibility that these patterns are individual-specific is also being explored.

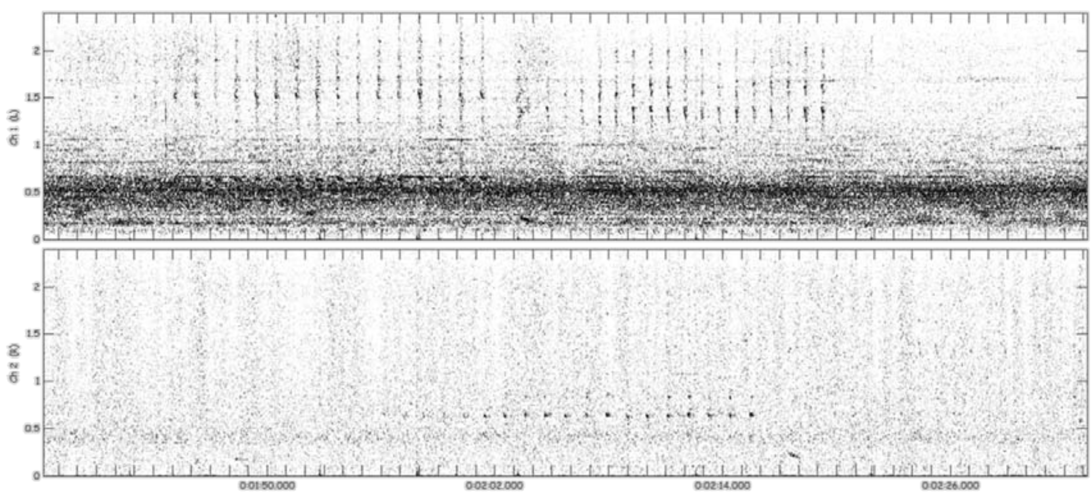


Figure 42: Spectrogram of the first gunshot call pattern consisting of 18-24 gunshots followed by a downsweep from 250-100 Hz. Pattern was recorded on two sonobuoys during the Bering Sea transit leg of the 2010 CHAOZ cruise (clip is from 19 September). The bottom sonobuoy shows the emphasis of the 650 Hz band. Call pattern was also detected on EAR 3 in 2010 as well as the PMEL M2 mooring in 2009.

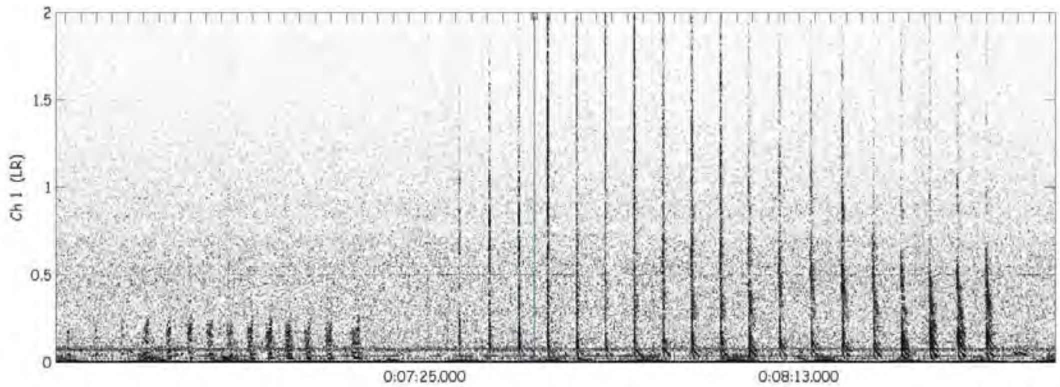


Figure 43. Spectrogram of second gunshot call pattern detected on the 2009 PMEL M2 mooring (clip is from 29 July 09).

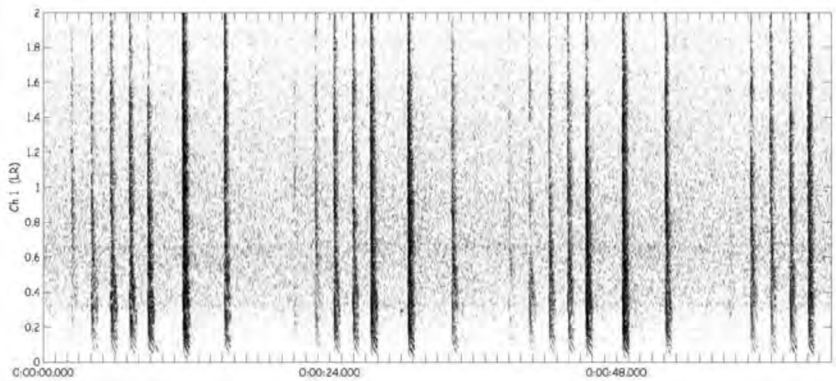


Figure 44: Spectrogram of third gunshot call pattern detected on the 2010 EAR 3 mooring (clip is from 6 Oct 10).

Acoustic detections of fin whales (Balaenoptera physalus) in the northeastern Chukchi Sea, July to October 2007-2010, and possible Bering Sea connection.
Julien Delarue, Bruce Martin, David Hannay, and Catherine Berchok

Fin whales are common throughout the North Pacific region and in particular in the Gulf of Alaska and Bering Sea even though these areas were heavily depleted by decades of whaling. Whalers also took fin whales in the southwestern Chukchi Sea, but only five sightings were reported for the entire Chukchi Sea over the past 30 years. From July to October 2007 to 2010, large-scale arrays consisting of 26-44 bottom-mounted acoustic recorders were deployed in the northeastern Chukchi Sea. Fin whales were detected in all years off Cape Lisburne and Point Lay except in 2008. Large inter-annual variations in the number of acoustic detections may be related to environmental conditions. Calls detected consisted primarily of irregular sequences typically heard during summer months. Stereotyped sequences, called songs, were also recorded at the end of the detection period in 2007 and 2010. Their structure matched that of one of the songs recorded in the Bering Sea, indicating that individuals from one of the stocks summering in the Bering Sea extend their range into the northeastern Chukchi Sea. These detections currently represent the northernmost fin whale records in the North Pacific region.

Occurrence of the critically endangered North Pacific right whale in the Bering Sea.

Brenda K. Rone, Brendan Hurley, Alexandre N. Zerbini, Amy S. Kennedy, and Phillip J. Clapham

We are currently working on a paper looking at distribution and life history of North Pacific right whales. We are examining bathymetry and oceanographic data for correlations to sightings and to provide a detailed description to the habitat where right whales are present during the summer months. The bathymetry relief map was acquired from an ETOPO 1-min grid file (www.ngdc.noaa.gov). Remotely-sensed chlorophyll-*a* (chl-*a*) concentration (mg/m^3) data were derived monthly from MODIS (Aqua, NPP, 0.05 degrees, Global, Science quality (http://coastwatch.pfeg.noaa.gov/coastwatch/CWBrowserWW360.jsp)). A three month composite (July, August, and September) for each year was generated by averaging the monthly pixel values to rectify gaps in data due to cloud cover (Figure 45). Bottom and surface temperatures were explored using point data collected from both the Resource Assessment and Conservation Engineering (RACE) division groundfish surveys and the Bering-Aleutian Salmon International Survey (BASIS) for the Alaska Fisheries Science Center. Interpolation maps using kriging methods were created for temperature data (Figure 46). We are currently working on front analysis and gradients for both chl-a and temperature are being explored using the Cayula-Cornillion edge detection algorithm (1992) in the Marine Geospatial Ecology Toolbox (MGET: http://code.env.duke.edu/projects/mget) for ArcGIS 10 (Figure 2). Right whale distance to the nearest front will be calculated using a Euclidean distance function in ArcGIS 10 (Figure 47). This paper will also describe individual right whale movements, sighting history and genetic information.

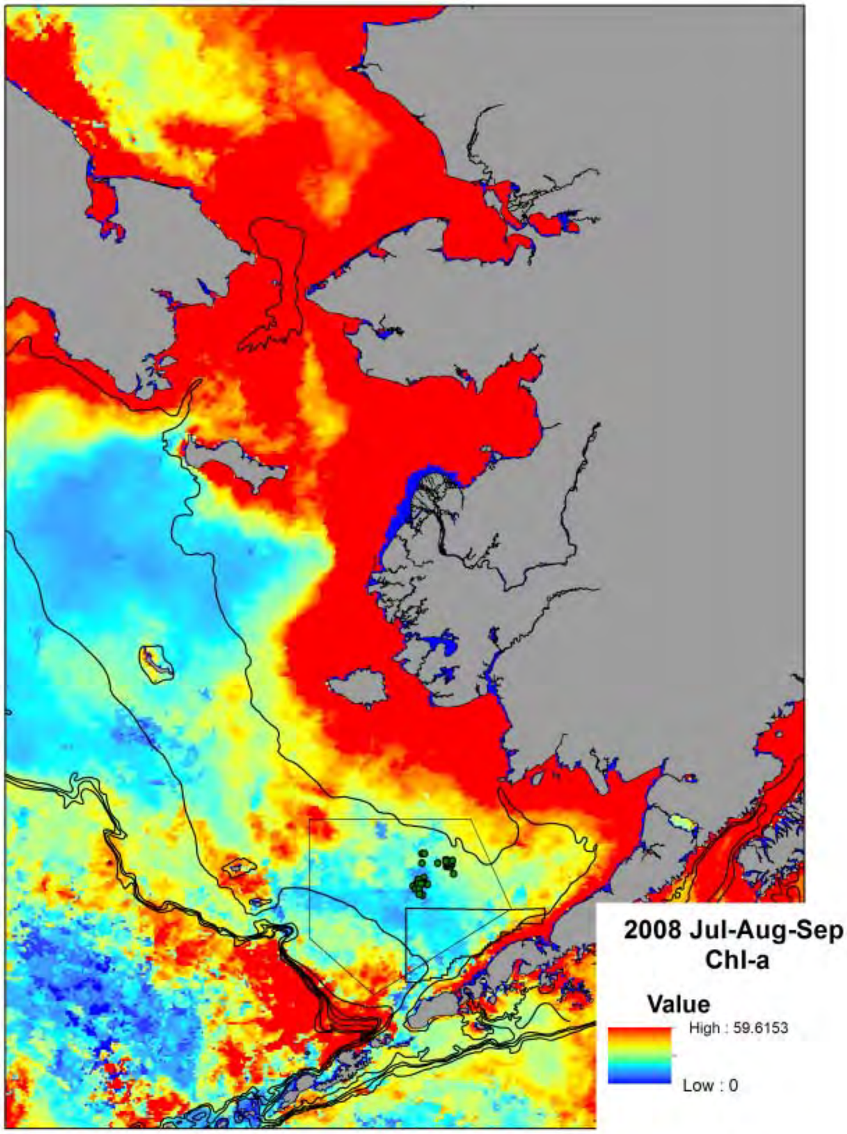


Figure 45. Example of a chlorophyll-*a* three month composite (July-August-September) and right whale sightings for 2008. Note: Each circle represents a sighting event and not unique individual animals.

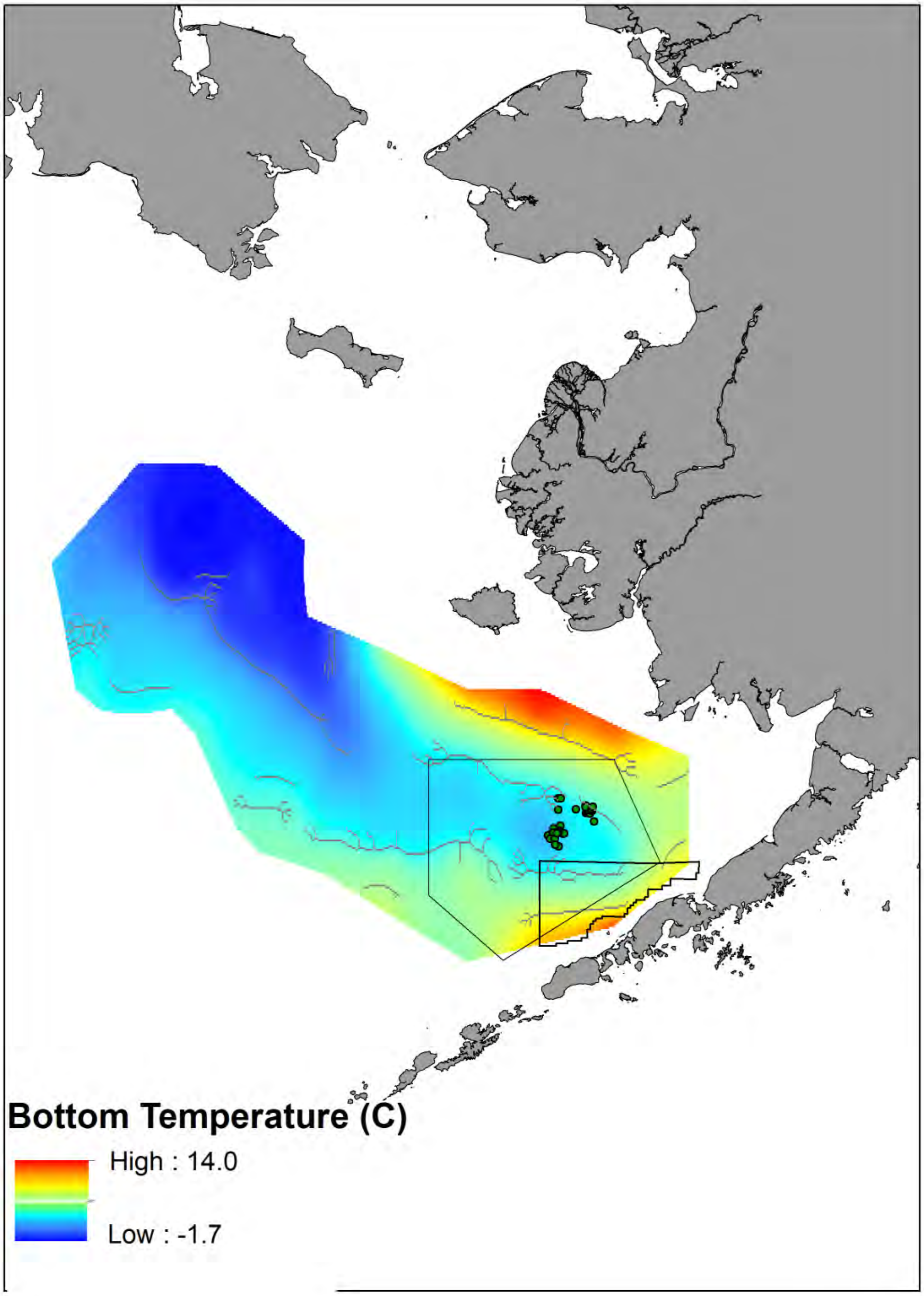


Figure 46. Bottom temperature (˚C) collected from RACE and BASIS surveys in 2008 with associated fronts (black lines) and right whale sightings.

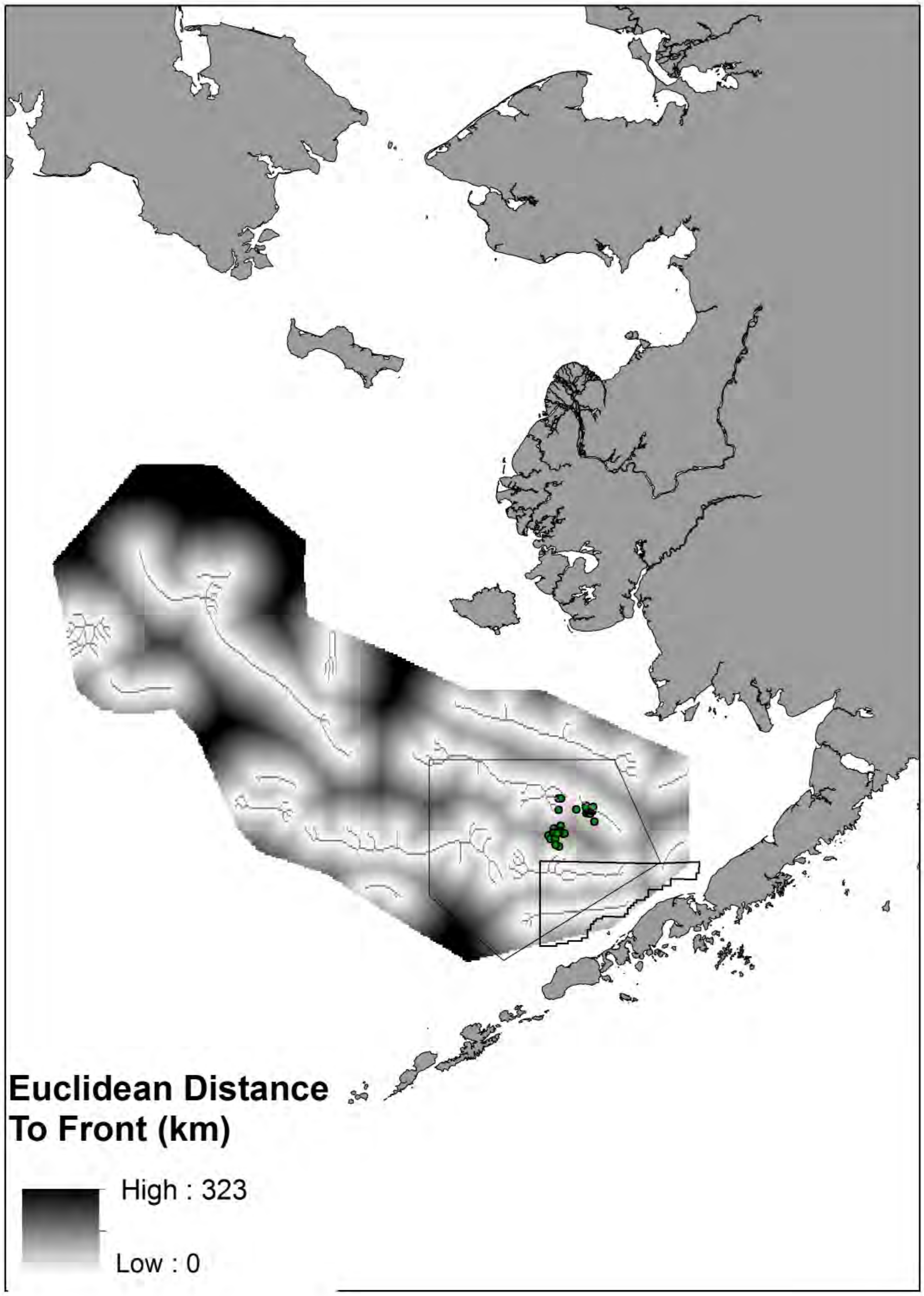


Figure 47. Distance (km) of right whale sightings to bottom temperature fronts (black lines) in 2008.

FUTURE WORK

The passive acoustics data collected during the PRIEST study is also currently being used for several different analyses:

Ellen Garland, a new post-doc from the University of Queensland, Australia, has begun analyzing our long term recorders for the presence of beluga whales. Once initial presence/absence has been established, her analysis will then focus on cataloguing beluga vocalizations, and determining if they have population-specific vocalizations.

Kalyn MacIntyre, a graduate student at the University of Washington, is analyzing these recorders along with numerous others to determine bearded seal spatial and temporal presence throughout the entire Bering, Chukchi, and Beaufort Seas.

Led by Manuel Castellote (NOAA/NMML), Kate Stafford (APL/UW), and Julien Delarue (JASCO Research), a concentrated standardized effort by a number of acousticians is underway to use population differences in fin whale singing to inform North Pacific stock assessments. Our Bering Sea long term moorings from 2009 will be analyzed by Jessica Thompson and provided to this effort.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Funding was provided by NPRB project 720 and by the Bureau of Ocean Energy Management (BOEM) via an Interagency Agreements with the National Marine Mammal Laboratory, Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Assistance with tag deployment was provided by Mikkel Jensen and small boat driving during tagging operations was professionally carried out by Billy Adams, Amy Kennedy, Tony Martinez, Brenda Rone and Suzanne Yin. Advice with development of tagging technology was provided by Mikkel Jensen, Ygor Geyer, Jim North and Robert Wagner. Assistance from the captains and crew of the ships used during the NMML NPRW cruises in the Bering Sea as well as the great effort of the observers and acoustic technicians in finding right whales is greatly appreciated. We greatly appreciate the aerial survey pilots, observers and flight following staff for the long hours and hard work. We would like to thank Jeff Leonhard (Naval Surface Warfare Center, Crane Division), Theresa Yost (Naval Operational Logistics Support Center), Todd Mequet (Applied Logistics Services, Inc), and Capt. Robin Fitch (I&E Director Marine Science, Office of the Assistant Secretary of the Navy), for their continued support in providing us with sonobuoys. We would also like to thank Dr. Phyllis Stabeno and the Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory for allowing us to occupy space on their subsurface moorings.

All research during PRIEST was performed according to regulations and restrictions specified in the existing permits issued by the NMFS to the National Marine Mammal Laboratory (permit #782-1719-09 and 14245).

DEDICATION

We would like to dedicate this report to the memory of Captain Atle Remme, our main captain throughout the PRIEST surveys. His ability to read the whales and maneuver the vessel was second to none. Atle passed away in January 2012; he will be greatly missed.

LITERATURE CITED:

Argos. 1990. User's manual. Service Argos, Inc. Landover, MD, USA.

Baumgartner, M.F. and Mate, B.R. 2005. Summer and Fall Habitat Of North Atlantic Right Whales (*Eubalaena glacialis*) Inferred From Satellite Telemetry. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 62:527-543.

Baumgartner, M.F., Esch, H.C. and Zerbini, A.N. 2009. Association between North Pacific Right Whales and a Subsurface Front In The Southeastern Bering Sea. 18th Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, Quebec City, Canada, October 2009.

Berchok, C., Keating, J., Crance, J., Klinck, H., Klinck, K., Ljungblad, D., Moore, S., Morse, L., Scattorin, F. and Clapham, P.J. 2009. Right Whale Gunshot Calls Detected During the 2008 North Pacific Right Whale Survey. Book of Abstracts. 18th Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals, Quebec City, Canada, 12-16 October 2009. p. 31.

Brownell, R.L.J., Clapham, P.J., Miyashita, T., and Kasuya, T. 2001. Conservation Status of North Pacific Right Whales. In: Best PB, Bannister JL, Brownell RLJ, Donovan GP (eds). International Whaling Commission, Cambridge, UK, p 269-286.

Calambokidis J, Falcone EA, Quinn TJ, Burdin AMand others. 2008 Splash: Structure of populations, levels of abundance and status of humpback whales in the North Pacific. Unpublished report submitted by Cascadia Research Collective to USDOC, Seattle, WA under contract AB133F-03-RP-0078 [available from the author]

Clapham, P.J. (ed). 1999. Predicting Right Whale Distribution: Report of the workshop held on october 1 and 2, 1998, in Woods hole, Massachusetts, Vol. U.S. Department of Commerce, Woods Hole, MA.

Clapham, P.J., Good, C, Quinn, S.E., Reeves, R.R., Scarff, J.E., and Brownell, R.L. Jr. 2004. Distribution of North Pacific Right Whales (*Eubalaena Japonica*) as shown by 19th And 20th Century Whaling Catch And Sighting Records. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 6:1-6.

Cooney, R. and Coyle, K. 1982. Trophic Implications of Cross-Shelf Copepod Distributions in the Southeastern Bering Sea. Marine Biology 70(2): 187-196.

Doroshenko, N.V. 2000. Soviet Whaling For Blue, Gray, Bowhead, and Right Whales in the North Pacific Ocean, 1961-1979. In: Yablokov AV, Zemsky VA (eds). Center for Russian Environmental Policy, Marine Mammal Council, Moscow, p 96-103.

Fadely, B.S., Robson, B.W., Sterling J.T., Greig, A., and Kall, K.A. 2005. Immature Steller Sea Lion (Eumetopias Jubatus) Dive Activity in Relation to Habitat Features of the Eastern Aleutian Islands. Fish. Oceanog. 14 (Suppl. 1): 243-258.

Freitas, C., C. Lydersen, M. A. Fedak And K. M. Kovacs. 2008. A Simple New Algorithm to Filter Marine Mammal Argos Locations. Marine mammal science 24: 315-325.

Friday, N., Zerbini, A., Waite, J., Moore, S., Clapham, P. *In press*. Cetacean distribution and abundance in relation to oceanographic domains on the Eastern Bering Sea shelf in June and July of 2002, 2008, and 2010. Deep Sea Research II.

Gaines, C., M. Hare, S. Beck, and H. Rosenbaum. 2005. Nuclear markers confirm taxonomic status and relationships among highly endangered and closely related right whale species. Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences 272:533-542.

Glass AH, Cole TVN, Garron M, Pace RM, Center NFS. 2009. Mortality and serious injury determinations for baleen whale stocks along the united states eastern seaboard and adjacent canadian maritimes, 2003-2007, Vol. US Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Northeast Fisheries Science Center

Goddard, P.D., Rugh, D.J. 1998. A Group Of Right Whales Seen in the Bering Sea in July 1996. Mar Mammal Sci 14:344-349.

Heide-Jørgensen, M.P., Kleivane, L., Øien, N., Laidre, K.L., and Jensen, M.V. 2001. A New Technique for Deploying Satellite Transmitters on Baleen Whales: Tracking a Blue Whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*) in the North Atlantic. Marine Mammal Science 17: 949-953.

Heide-Jørgensen, M.P., Witting, L., and Jensen, M.V. 2003. Inshore-Offshore Movements of Two Fin Whales (*Balaenoptera Physalus*) Tracked by Satellite off West Greenland. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 5: 241-245.

Heide-Jorgensen, M.P., Laidre, K.L., Jensen, M.V., Dueck, L., and Postma, L.D. 2006. Dissolving Stock Discreteness With Satellite Tracking: Bowhead Whales in Baffin Bay. Marine Mammal Science 22: 34-45.

Ivashchenko, Y.V. & Clapham, P.J. 2012. Soviet catches of bowhead (*Balaena mysticetus*) and right whales (*Eubalaena japonica)* in the North Pacific and Okhotsk Sea. Endangered Species Research (in review).

IWC. 2001. Report of the workshop on the Comprehensive Assessment of Right Whales: A Worldwide Comparison. J. Cetacean Res. Manage. Special Issue 2: 1-35.

Johnson A, Salvador G, Kenney J, Robbins J, Kraus S, Landry S, Clapham P. 2005 Fishing gear involved in entanglements of right and humpback whales. Marine Mammal Science 21:635-645

Kennedy, A.S., Salden, D.R., and Clapham, P.J. 2011. First High-To Low-Latitude Match of an Eastern North Pacific Right Whale (*Eubalaena japonica*). Marine Mammal Science. doi: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2011.00539.x

LeDuc, R.G., Perryman, W.L., Gilpatrick, J.W.J., Hyde, J., Stinchcomb, C., Carretta, J.V., and Brownell, R.L.J. 2001. A Note on Recent Surveys for Right Whales in the Southeastern Bering Sea. In: Best PB, Bannister JL, Brownell RLJ, Donovan GP (eds). International Whaling Commission, Cambridge, UK, p 287-289.

Mate, B.R., Nieukirk, S.L., and Kraus, S.D. 1997. Satellite-Monitored Movements of the Northern Right Whale. Journal of Wildlife Management 61: 1393-1405.

Mate, B.R., Gisiner, R., and Mobley, J. .1998. Local and Migratory Movements of Hawaiian Humpback Whales Tracked by Satellite Telemetry. Canadian Journal of Zoology 76: 863-868.

Mate, B.R., Krutzikowsky, G.K., and Winsor, M.H. 2000. Satellite-Monitored Movements of Radio-Tagged Bowhead Whales in the Beaufort and Chukchi Seas During the Late-Summer Feeding Season and Fall Migration. Canadian Journal of Zoology 78: 1168-1181.

Mellinger, D.K., Stafford, K.M., Moore, S.E., Munger, L., and Fox, C.G. 2004. Detection of North Pacific Right Whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) Calls In The Gulf Of Alaska. Marine Mammal Science 20: 872-879.

Mellinger, D.K., Stafford, K.M., Moore, S.E., Nieukirk, S.L., Heimlich, S.L. and Stabeno, P. 2009. Passive Acoustic Detection of Right, Fin and Humpback Whales in the Eastern Bering Sea. Alaska Marine Science Symposium 2009.

Moore, S. E. 2000. Variability of cetacean distribution and habitat selection in the Alaskan Arctic, autumn 1982-91. Arctic 53:448-460.

Moore, S.E., Waite, J.M., Friday, N.A., and Honkalehto, T. 2002. Cetacean Distribution and Relative Abundance on the Central-Eastern and the Southeastern Bering Sea Shelf with reference to Oceanographic Domains. Progress in Oceanography 55: 249-261.

Munger, L.M., Wiggins, S.M., Moore, S.E., and Hildebrand, J.A. 2008. North Pacific Right Whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) Seasonal and Diel Calling Patterns from Long-Term Acoustic Recordings in the Southeastern Bering Sea, 2000–2006. Marine Mammal Science 24: 795-814.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 1991. Final Recovery Plan for the Northern Right Whale, *Eubalaena glacialis*. U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Office of Protected Resources. 86 pp.

Northridge SP. 1991 An updated world review of interactions between marine mammals and fisheries, Vol. Food & Agriculture Organization of the UN (FAO)

Nuka Research and Planning Group. 2005. Vessel Traffic in the Aleutian Subarea. Report to the Alaska Department of Environmental Conservation. 56pp. Available from: contact@nukaresearch.com

Omura, H. 1986. History of Right Whale Catches in the Waters Around Japan. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 10: 35–41.

Rosenbaum, H. C., Y. Razafindrakoto, J. Vahoavy, and C. Pomilla. 2001. A note on recent sightings of southern right whales (*Eubalaena australis*) along the east coast of Madagascar. Pages 177-180 *in* P. B. Best, J. L. Bannister, R. L. J. Brownell, andG. P. Donovan, editors. International Whaling Commission, Cambridge, UK.

Scarff, J.E. 1986. Historic and Present Distribution of the Right Whale (*Eubalaena Glacialis*) In the Eastern North Pacific South of 50oN and East of 180oW. Rep. Int. Whal. Commn. 10: 43–63.

Scarff, J.E. 2001. Preliminary Estimates Of Whaling-Induced Mortality in the 19th Century North Pacific Right Whale (*Eubalaena japonicus)* Fishery, Adjusting For Struck-But-Lost Whales and Non-American Whaling. In: Best PB, Bannister JL, Brownell RLJ, Donovan GP (eds). International Whaling Commission, Cambridge, UK, p 261-268.

Shelden, K.E.W., Moore, S.E., Waite, J.M., Wade, P.R., and Rugh, D.J. 2005. Historic and Current Habitat Use By North Pacific Right Whales (*Eubalaena Japonica)* In The Bering Sea and Gulf Of Alaska. Mammal Review 35: 129-155.

Townsend C.H. 1935. The distribution of certain whales as shown by logbook records of American whaleships. Zoologica NY 19:1-50.

Tynan, C. T. 1999. Redistributions of cetaceans in the southeast Bering Sea relative to anomalous oceanographic conditions during the 1997 El Niño. Pages 115-117 *in* H. J. Freeland, W. T. Peterson, andA. Tyler, editors. North Pacific Marine Science Organization (PICES), Sydney, BC, Canada.

Tynan, C.T., DeMaster, D.P., and Peterson, W.T. 2001. Endangered Right Whales on the Southeastern Bering Sea Shelf. Science 294: 1894.

Wada, S. 1981. Japanese whaling and whale sightings in the North Pacific 1979 season. Report of the International Whaling Commission 31: 783-792.

Wade, P.R., Heide-Jørgensen, M.P., Shelden, K., Barlow, J. *et al.* 2006. Acoustic Detection and Satellite-Tracking Leads to Rare Concentration of Endangered North Pacific Right Whales. Biology Letters 2: 417-419.

Wade, P.R., Kennedy, A.S., LeDuc, R., Barlow, J. *et al.* 2011. The World's Smallest Whale Population? Biology Letters 7: 83-85.

Waite, J.M., Wynne, K., and Mellinger, D.K. 2003. Documented Sighting of a North Pacific Right Whale in the Gulf Of Alaska and Post-Sighting Acoustic Monitoring. Northwestern Nat 84: 38-43.

Winn, H.E., University of Rhode Island GSoO (eds). 1982. A Characterization of Marine Mammals and Turtles in the Mid- And North Atlantic Areas of the U.S. Outer Continental Shelf: Final Report of the Cetacean And Turtle Assessment Program, Vol. University of Rhode Island, Kingston, RI.

Zerbini, A.N., Andriolo, A., Heide-Jorgensen, M.P., Pizzorno, J.L. *et al.* 2006. Satellite-Monitored Movements of Humpback Whales *Megaptera novaeangliae* in the Southwest Atlantic Ocean. Marine Ecology Progress Series 313: 295-304. 32:146-154.

Appendix A:
Peer Reviewed Papers

Marine Mammal Science

Notes

MARINE MAMMAL SCIENCE, **(*): ***_*** (*** 2011)
2011 by the Society for Marine Mammalogy
Published 2011. This article is a US Government work and is in the public domain in the USA.
DOI: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2011.00539.x

First high- to low-latitude match of an eastern North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*)

AMY S. KENNEDY
National Marine Mammal Laboratory,
Alaska Fisheries Science Center,
National Marine Fisheries Service,
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration,
7600 Sand Point Way N.E.,
Seattle, Washington 98115, U.S.A.
E-mail: amy.kennedy@noaa.gov

DAN R. SALDEN
Hawai'i Whale Research Foundation,
52 Cheshire Drive,
Maryville, Illinois 62062, U.S.A.

PHILLIP J. CLAPHAM
National Marine Mammal Laboratory,
Alaska Fisheries Science Center,
National Marine Fisheries Service,
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration,
7600 Sand Point Way N.E.,
Seattle, Washington 98115, U.S.A.

The eastern population of the North Pacific right whale (NPRW, *Eubalaena japonica*) is the most endangered stock of whales in the world, with an estimated population of only 30 individuals (Wade *et al.* 2011*b*). The extreme rarity of these whales is likely the result of extensive historical whaling in the 19th century (Scarff 2001), followed by large illegal catches by the USSR in the 1960s (Doroshenko 2000, Brownell *et al.* 2001, Clapham *et al.* 2004). Little is known about the distribution, movements, or habitat use of this population, but the scant existing data suggest that it now occupies a greatly reduced range compared to historical times, when right whales were widely distributed across the Gulf of Alaska (GOA) and Bering Sea (BS) (Shelden *et al.* 2005, Shelden and Clapham 2006). The vast majority of eastern NPRW records (and search effort) since 1979 have occurred in the southeastern BS

(Shelden *et al.* 2005); there have been only four sightings of NPRWs in the GOA since 2004 (Wade *et al.* 2011*a*) and no photo-identification or genotype matches between BS and GOA whales have been made (Wade *et al.* 2011*a*).

Data from historical catches and sightings suggest that a general southward movement of the NPRW population occurs in autumn, but there are very few records (approximately 14 sightings between Alaska and Hawaii; Berzin and Rovnin 1966, Josephson *et al.* 2008) of the species anywhere in winter. The wintering destinations of both the eastern and western NPRW populations remain unknown (Scarff 1986, 1991; Clapham *et al.* 2004). Here we present the first documented match of a photographically identified individual NPRW between high- and low-latitude habitats.

Individual right whales are recognized by natural markings such as callosity patterns on their heads or scars on their flukes and body (Kraus *et al.* 1986). In 2008 the National Marine Mammal Laboratory (NMML) began compiling NPRW photographs and sighting data to create a NPRW photo-identification catalog. Currently, the NPRW catalog contains over 2,200 photographs of varying quality taken from dedicated research cruises and other opportunistic sighting events across the Pacific from 1979 to 2010. Photographs are internally matched and individual whales are assigned a number (*e.g.*, NMML #). Date, time, position, platform, and photographer are recorded for each photograph whenever possible. The images are coded for quality from 0 (poorest quality, unreliable for photo-identification) to 3 (highest quality, reliable for photo-identification). Only individuals with left and right or aerial photos of quality 2 or higher (based on the curator's past experience and training with right whale photo-identification) are considered unique individuals. Currently, there are 18 individual NPRWs in the catalog that meet those criteria.

During the creation of the NMML catalog, a match was made between a right whale seen in Hawaii in the spring of 1996 (Salden and Mickelsen 1999) and a whale seen in the BS later that year (Goddard and Rugh 1998) (Fig. 1). On 2 April 1996, a group of researchers conducting a humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) photo-identification study photographed a NPRW (catalog number NMML 9) off the western coast of Maui, Hawaii (20°56.0′N, 156°46.0′W) (Salden and Mickelsen 1999). One hundred and nineteen days later, on 30 July 1996, NMML 9 was photographed 4,111 km from the Hawaii position from a fishing vessel in the southeastern BS (57°35.6′N, 163°20.5′W) (Goddard and Rugh 1998) (Fig. 1). This individual was also photographed in the BS in 2000 and 2008–2010.

Photographs of NMML 9 were matched and confirmed by three independent researchers using standard photo-identification methods (Kraus *et al.* 1986). The match was originally made by comparing callosity patches on the left side of the whale's head, and it was later confirmed with positive fluke matches between the 1996 Hawaii sighting and a 2008 BS sighting. High-quality callosity photographs of this same individual taken during resightings in 2008 and 2009 helped to further confirm the 1996 match.

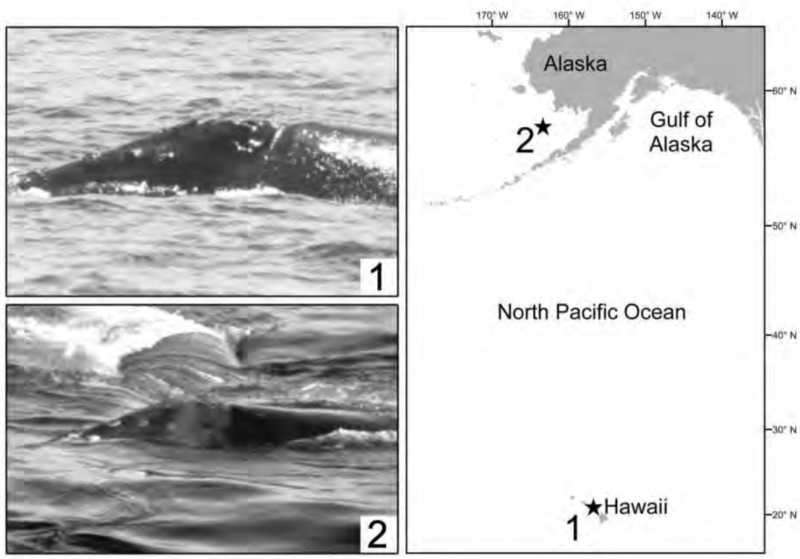


Figure 1. North Pacific right whale (catalog number NMML9) seen off Hawaii on 2 April 1996 (1) and 4,111 km to the north on 30 July 1996 in the Bering Sea (2).

Historical and contemporary records have generated several hypotheses about the location of possible NPRW wintering and calving grounds. While the vast majority of existing data concern NPRWs seen or caught in high latitudes, seasonal variation in abundance suggests movements to possible mating/calving grounds in lower latitudes in the winter, which would be consistent with the migratory patterns of other right whale species (Scarff 1986, 1991; Clapham *et al*. 2004). However, unlike North Atlantic (*Eubalaena glacialis*) and southern (*Eubalaena australis*) right whales (Scammon [1874] 1968, Townsend 1935, Gilmore 1969, Payne 1986, Winn *et al*. 1986), there is little evidence that NPRWs in the eastern North Pacific use coastal waters in lower latitudes as calving grounds (Scarff 1986).

In addition to Hawaii, since 1900 there have been occasional NPRW sightings ($n = 14$) reported off California and Baja California, Mexico, as well as four sightings in mid-latitudes off Washington State (Brownell *et al*. 2001). However, given the intensity of historical whaling activity and modern observation effort in these locations, it is hard to believe that the existence of a major nearshore right whale concentration would not have been detected (Clapham *et al*. 2004). Alternative hypotheses, that NPRWs mate or calve in remote offshore low-latitude wintering grounds (Scarff 1986), or near the Ryukyu Islands to the south of Japan (Omura 1986), are largely speculative as they lack reliable supporting evidence. Berzin and Rovnin (1966) note that in January of 1964 a Soviet catcher reported a single right whale at 40°N, 157°W, approximately halfway between the Alaska Peninsula and

Hawaii; however, while this rare mid-winter sighting is of considerable interest, its significance with regard to a specific migratory destination (if any) cannot be assessed.

In particular, the idea that right whales migrate far offshore was based upon purported sightings from 19th century whaling ships summarized in the Maury charts (Maury 1851), yet the species identification in these records have since been shown to be largely in error (Josephson *et al.* 2008) and no such offshore wintering area has been found for either of the other two right whale species (*E. glacialis* and *E. australis*).

Analysis of the Maury abstracts, which have been shown to be more reliable than the Maury charts (Josephson *et al.* 2008), revealed sightings of 13 NPRWs in a 5° square (delimited by 30°–35°N and 180°–175°E) between February and April of 1844 and 1845 (Josephson *et al.* 2008). The Maury abstracts show no NPRW sightings or takes near Hawaii despite numerous trips to the archipelago by whalers in the mid-1800s, yet later historical sightings of right whales near Hawaii led Gilmore (1978) and Townsend (1935) to speculate that the islands represent a potential breeding ground for the species. In addition to the 1996 Maui sighting included here, Townsend (1935) reported right whale sightings about 1,000 nmi north of Maui in May and October. One individual NPRW was recorded off Hawaii on 25 March and again on 10 April 1979 (Herman *et al.* 1980, Rowntree *et al.* 1980). The 16 d residence of this particular animal suggested to some (Herman *et al.* 1980) that the Hawaiian Archipelago represents a migration terminus for this species, yet this seems unlikely given the intensive research effort in the area and the extremely small number of NPRW sightings. That Lahaina and other ports in Hawaii were commonly visited by 19th century whaling vessels, with no record of the then-commercially valuable right whales in the area, adds to the belief that Hawaii was never a major migratory destination for this species.

Although the high- to low-latitude match reported here confirms long-held beliefs that right whales at least occasionally travel across the North Pacific between Hawaii and the BS, it is still premature to call the present record definitive proof of an annual migration. Regardless of whether the Hawaiian Archipelago represents (or ever represented) a NPRW breeding ground, this match indicates that it is a potential habitat for the species. Whether right whales occur in more offshore waters of this region, where search effort has been very low, is unknown. It is conceivable that an as-yet unidentified wintering area exists in offshore waters closer to the coast, but there is no indication of this from present data. Further research involving photo-identification, acoustics, satellite tracking, and genetics is needed to shed more light on the existence and location of the NPRW breeding grounds in the North Pacific Ocean.

Acknowledgments

We thank Brenda Rone and Nancy Friday for confirming the match after initial discovery by A. S. Kennedy. We greatly appreciate reviews by Janice Waite, Alex Zerbini, and Brenda Rone. Thanks to Jill Michelson, who assisted with the Maui sighting. We thank everyone who contributed photos and time to the NMML NPRW catalog, particularly the SWFSC and Phil Hamilton and Marilyn Marx from the New England Aquarium. Finally, Jim Scarff and Randall Reeves provided helpful comments on the manuscript. The findings and conclusions in this paper are those of the authors and do not necessarily represent the views of the National Marine Fisheries Service.

LITERATURE CITED

Berzin, A. A., and A. A. Rovnin. 1966. The distribution and migrations of whales in the northeastern part of the Pacific, Chukchee and Bering Seas. Pages 103–136 *in* K. I. Panin, ed. [In Russian.] Izvestiya TINRO Volume 58:179–207. Translated by Bureau of Commercial Fisheries, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Seattle, WA. Soviet research on marine mammals of the Far East.

Brownell, R. L. J., P. J. Clapham, T. Miyashita and T. Kasuya. 2001. Conservation status of North Pacific right whales. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management (Special Issue) 2:269–286.

Clapham, P. J., C. Good, S. E. Quinn, R. R. Reeves, J. E. Scarff and R. L. Brownell, Jr. 2004. Distribution of North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) as shown by 19th and 20th century whaling catch and sighting records. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 6:1–6.

Doroshenko, N. V. 2000. Soviet whaling for blue, gray, bowhead, and right whales in the North Pacific Ocean, 1961–1979. Pages 96–103 *in* A. V. Yablokov and V. A. Zemsky, eds. Soviet whaling data (1949–1979). Center for Russian Environmental Policy, Marine Mammal Council, Moscow, Russia.

Gilmore, R. M. 1969. Populations, distribution and behavior of whales in western South Atlantic. Antarctic Journal of the United States 4:307–308.

Gilmore, R. M. 1978. Right whale. Pages 62–69 *in* D. Haley, ed. Marine mammals of eastern North Pacific and arctic waters. Pacific Research Press, Seattle, WA.

Goddard, P. D., and D. J. Rugh. 1998. A group of right whales seen in the Bering Sea in July 1996. Marine Mammal Science 14:344–349.

Herman L. M., C. S. Baker, P. H. Forestell and R. C. Antinoja. 1980. Right whale (*Balaena glacialis*) sightings near Hawaii: A clue to the wintering grounds? Marine Ecology Progress Series 2:271–275.

Josephson, E., T. D. Smith and R. R. Reeves. 2008. Historical distribution of right whales in the North Pacific. Fish and Fisheries 9:155–168.

Kraus, S. D., K. E. Moore, C. A. Price, M. J. Crone, W. A. Watkins, H. E. Winn and J. H. Prescott. 1986. The use of photographs to identify individual North Atlantic right whales (*Eubalaena glacialis*). Report of the International Whaling Commission (Special Issue 10):145–151.

Maury, M. F. 1851. Whale chart. Series F. Nautical chart H0 Misc. No. 8514. National Observatory, Bureau of Ordinance and Hydrographics, Washington, DC.

Omura, H. 1986. History of right whale catches in the waters around Japan. Report of the International Whaling Commission (Special Issue 10):35–41.

Payne, R. 1986. Long term behavioral studies of the southern right whale (*Eubalaena australis*). Report of the International Whaling Commission (Special Issue 10):161–167.

Rowntree V., J. Darling, G. Silber and M. Ferrari. 1980. Rare sighting of a right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in Hawaii. Canadian Journal of Zoology 58:309–312.

Salden, D. R., and J. Mickelsen. 1999. Rare sighting of a North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in Hawai'i. Pacific Science 53:341–345.

Scammon, C. M. (1874) 1968. The marine mammals of the north-western coast of North America described and illustrated together with an account of the American whale-fishery, Facsimile of the 1st edition, with an introduction by Victor B. Scheffer. Dover Publications, New York, NY.

Scarff, J. E. 1986. Historic and present distribution of the right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in the eastern North Pacific south of 50°N and east of 180°W. Report of the International Whaling Commission (Special Issue 10):43–65.

Scarff, J. E. 1991. Historic distribution and abundance of the right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in the North Pacific, Bering Sea, Sea of Okhotsk and Sea of Japan from the Maury whale charts. Report of the International Whaling Commission 41:467–489.

Scarff, J. E. 2001. Preliminary estimates of whaling-induced mortality in the 19th century North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonicus*) fishery, adjusting for struck-but-lost whales and non-American whaling. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management (Special Issue) 2:261–268.

Shelden, K. E. W., and P. J. Clapham. 2006. Habitat requirements and extinction risks of eastern North Pacific right whales. AFSC Processed Report 2006–06. U.S. Department of Commerce, Seattle, WA. 52 pp.

Shelden, K. E. W., S. E. Moore, J. M. Waite, P. R. Wade and D. J. Rugh. 2005. Historic and current habitat use by North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the Bering Sea and Gulf of Alaska. Mammal Review 35:129–155.

Townsend, C. 1935. The distribution of certain whales as shown by logbook records of American whaleships. Zoologica 19:1–50.

Wade, P., A. De Robertis, K. Hough, *et al*. 2011*a*. Rare detections of North Pacific right whales in the Gulf of Alaska, with observations of their potential prey. Endangered Species Research 13:99–109.

Wade, P., A. Kennedy, R. LeDuc, *et al*. 2011*b*. The world's smallest whale population? Biology Letters 7:83–85.

Winn, H. E., C. A. Price and P. W. Sorensen. 1986. The distribution biology of the right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in the western North Atlantic. Report to the International Whaling Commission (Special Issue 10):129–138.

Received: 25 May 2011
Accepted: 18 August 2011

Vol. 13: 99–109, 2011
doi: 10.3354/esr00324

ENDANGERED SPECIES RESEARCH
Endang Species Res

Published online January 27

OPEN ACCESS

Rare detections of North Pacific right whales in the Gulf of Alaska, with observations of their potential prey

P. R. Wade[1,*], A. De Robertis[1], K. R. Hough[1], R. Booth[2], A. Kennedy[1], R. G. LeDuc[3], L. Munger[4], J. Napp[1], K. E. W. Shelden[1], S. Rankin[3], O. Vasquez[1], C. Wilson[1]

[1]Alaska Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, Washington 98115, USA

[2]Center for Conservation Biology, Department of Biology, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington 98195, USA

[3]Southwest Fisheries Science Center, National Marine Fisheries Service, 3333 N. Torrey Pines Ct, La Jolla, California 92037, USA

[4]Scripps Institution of Oceanography, La Jolla, California 92037, USA

ABSTRACT: The North Pacific right whale *Eubalaena japonica* was heavily exploited throughout the Gulf of Alaska by both historical whaling and 1960s illegal Soviet catches. It is now extremely rare in this region (2 sightings between 1966 and 2003 and passive acoustic detections on 6 days out of 80 months of recordings at 7 locations). From 2004 to 2006, 4 sightings of right whales occurred in the Barnabus Trough region on Albatross Bank, south of Kodiak Island, Alaska, USA. Sightings of right whales occurred at locations within the trough with the highest density of zooplankton, as measured by active acoustic backscatter. Net trawls through a high-density demersal layer (~150 to 175 m) revealed large numbers of euphausiids and oil-rich C5-stage copepods. Photo-identification and genotyping of 2 whales failed to reveal a match to Bering Sea right whales. Fecal hormone metabolite analysis from 1 whale estimated levels consistent with an immature male, indicating either recent reproduction in the Gulf of Alaska or movements between the Bering Sea and the Gulf of Alaska. Large numbers of historic catches of right whales occurred in pelagic waters of the Gulf of Alaska, but there have been few recent detections in deep water. Given that there is no other location in the Gulf of Alaska where right whales have been repeatedly seen post-exploitation, the Barnabus Trough/Albatross Bank area represents important habitat for the relict population of North Pacific right whales in the Gulf of Alaska, and a portion of this area was designated as critical habitat under the US Endangered Species Act in 2006.

KEY WORDS: North Pacific right whale · *Eubalaena japonica* · Prey · Gulf of Alaska · Kodiak Island · Whaling

INTRODUCTION

Thousands of North Pacific right whales *Eubalaena japonica* were killed in the Gulf of Alaska and Bering Sea during intensive commercial whaling in the 1800s (Scarff 2001). Sightings, primarily from whaling vessels, in the 1950s indicated that a small population of right whales persisted in the eastern North Pacific (Clapham et al. 2004, Shelden et al. 2005, our Fig. 1a). However, illegal takes of 372 right whales by Soviet commercial whalers in the 1960s reduced the population to a precariously low level (Doroshenko 2000, Brownell et al. 2001). Since then, sightings of right whales have been rare in the eastern North Pacific (Brownell et al. 2001, Clapham et al. 2004, Shelden et al. 2005). Small numbers have been regularly detected in the southeastern Bering Sea since their re-discovery on the central shelf in 1996 (Goddard & Rugh 1998),

*Email: paul.wade@noaa.gov

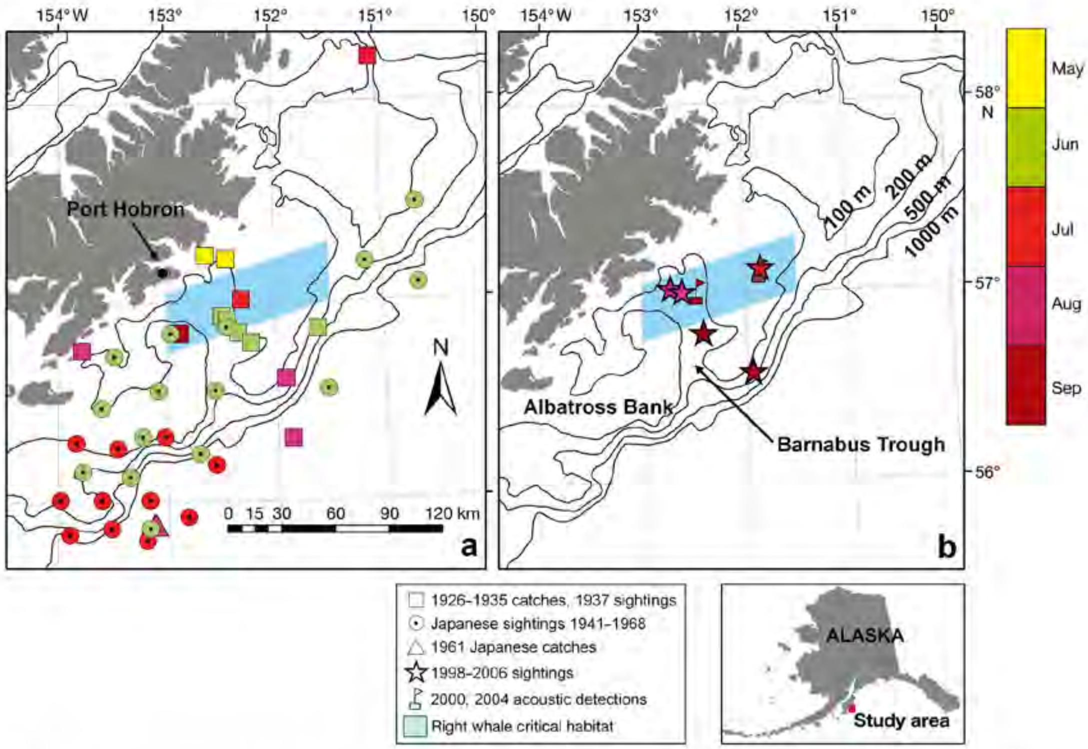


Fig. 1. *Eubalaena japonica*. Locations of right whales in the vicinity of Kodiak Island, Alaska (USA). Bathymetry lines are shown. (a) Historic sightings and catches from 1926 to 1968. (b) Recent detections since 1998, including 4 sightings (2004 to 2006) and 1 passive acoustic detection (2004) first reported in the present study, as well as a 1998 visual detection (Waite et al. 2003) and a 2000 passive acoustic detection (Mellinger et al. 2004). For the locations: type of symbol represents the source and color represents the month (see key). The shaded blue area represents right whale critical habitat designated under the US Endangered Species Act in 2006

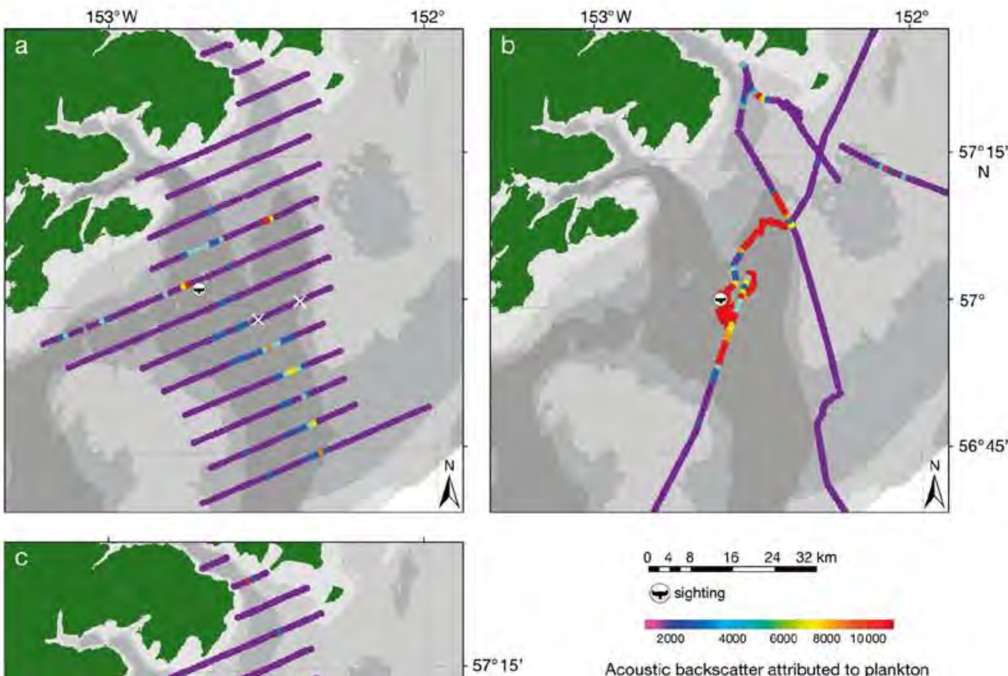
with the largest number (19 individual whales) identified in the Bering Sea in 2004 (Wade et al. 2006). A recent study estimated that there are 31 right whales (95% confidence limits: 23 to 54) in the Bering Sea (Wade et al. 2010).

Sightings of right whales have been even rarer in the Gulf of Alaska, even though the majority of catches in the 1800s came from this region (Townsend 1935, Scarff 1991, 2001). From the 1960s through 2002, only 2 sightings of right whales occurred in the Gulf of Alaska: an opportunistic sighting in March 1979 near Yakutat Bay in the eastern Gulf (Shelden et al. 2005) and a sighting during an aerial survey for harbor porpoise in July 1998 south of Kodiak Island, Alaska, USA (Waite et al. 2003). Both sightings occurred in shelf waters less than 100 m deep. Here we describe 3 additional visual sightings of North Pacific right whales from National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) ship surveys in the Gulf of Alaska from 2004 to 2006, as well as 1 passive acoustic detection. We also describe an opportunistic sighting from a commercial fishing vessel in 2006. This triples the number of right whale sightings in the Gulf of Alaska over the last 40 yr from 2 to 6. All of the visual sightings were in the vicinity of Albatross Bank on the south side of Kodiak Island. As an initial investigation of habitat use, active acoustic backscatter and zooplankton data from the 2004 to 2006 ship surveys were examined to describe the macrozooplankton prey field in the vicinity of 3 of the right whale encounters.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Surveys. In 2004 and 2006, active acoustic fish surveys were conducted from the NOAA ship 'Miller Freeman.' The survey area was designed to cover Barnabus Trough, a canyon that cuts through the Albatross Bank area on the southeastern side of Kodiak Island (Fig. 1b). The surveys were conducted using a fine-scale parallel line pattern with the lines spaced 3 nautical miles (n miles; 5.6 km) apart (Fig. 2a,c). A single, experienced marine mammal observer scanned for whales by eye from either the flying bridge (during good weather) or the bridge (during relatively poor weather). When possible, species identification was confirmed with 25-power binoculars.

Additionally, broad-scale surveys for humpback whales *Megaptera novaeangliae* were conducted in the Gulf of Alaska as part of the Structure of Populations, Levels of Abundance, and Status of Humpback Whales (SPLASH) project in 2004 (on the NOAA ship 'McArthur II') and in 2005 (on the NOAA ship 'Oscar Dyson'). In both years, transects cut across Albatross Bank, an area of relatively high humpback whale density. On each survey, teams of 3 marine mammal



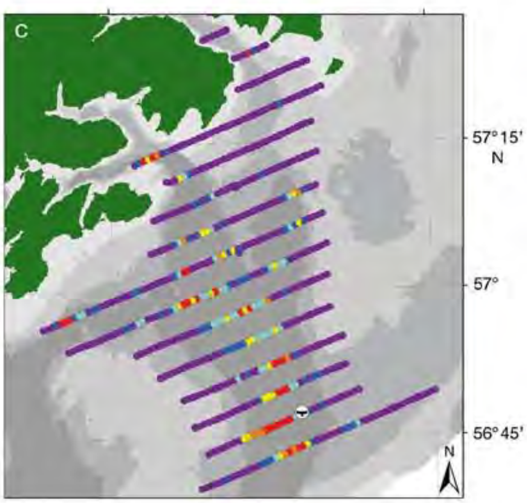


Fig. 2. Active acoustic backscatter attributed to plankton, integrated at 120 kHz from 12 m below the sea surface to 0.5 m off the sea floor (see 'Materials and methods: Active acoustic backscatter and Methot tows' for details), and locations of concurrent sightings of right whales (represented by the cartoon flukes). The colors represent the nautical area scattering coefficient (s_A, m^2 n mile^{-2}), which is a linear measure of acoustic backscatter from plankton. Bathymetry is depicted in grayscale and represents 50 m contours. (a) 2004, with positions of 2 Methot trawls (×), (b) 2005, (c) 2006. Note that the Methot trawl occurred at the time and location of the right whale sighting. For location of study area see Fig. 1

observers scanned for whales using 25-power binoculars. On the 2004 'McArthur II' survey, Navy surplus sonobuoys were opportunistically deployed in regions suspected to contain blue whales *Balaenoptera musculus* and/or right whales, providing acoustic monitoring of right whale vocalizations. Directional frequency and ranging (DIFAR) sonobuoys were used to triangulate the positions of calling whales. When weather permitted, rigid-hulled inflatable skiffs were deployed for close approaches to whales to collect photographs, biopsy samples, and, where possible, fecal samples. Genetic analyses were conducted using methods described by LeDuc et al. (2001). Fecal hormone metabolite analysis was conducted using methods developed for North Atlantic right whales *Eubalaena glacialis* (Rolland et al. 2005).

Active acoustic backscatter and Methot tows. Active acoustic fish and zooplankton surveys were being conducted from the NOAA ships 'Miller Freeman' (in 2004 and 2006) and 'Oscar Dyson' (in 2005) at the time of the right whale encounters. Active acoustic backscatter data were collected on both ships at a vessel speed of ~12 knots during daylight hours with calibrated Simrad EK60 echosounders operating at 18 and 120 kHz. Backscatter data in the vicinity of the right whale sightings on Albatross Bank and Barnabus Trough were used to assess the biomass of potential right whale prey. Transducers on both ships were located on retractable centerboards, and estimates of backscatter were from 12 m below the surface to 0.5 m off the sea floor.

Much of the backscatter in this area is from fish (Wilson et al. 2003), which are unlikely to be potential prey for right whales (e.g. Baumgartner & Mate 2003, Gregr & Coyle 2009). To exclude backscatter from fish and produce a backscatter index representative of right whale prey (planktonic organisms such as copepods and euphausiids), a dual-frequency technique was used. The basis for the technique is that active acoustic backscatter at 18 and 120 kHz is strongly frequency dependent for planktonic organisms such as copepods and euphausiids, but generally exhibits much less frequency dependence in fish (e.g. Gauthier & Horne 2004, Lavery et al. 2007). Although it is difficult to distinguish individual species or taxa with active acoustics, fish and macrozooplankton can be distinguished in many cases due to the strong frequency dependence of plankton (e.g. Miyashita et al. 1998, De Robertis et al. 2010).

Volume backscatter was averaged into 5 ping wide by 5 m deep cells. Cells in which the volume backscattering was at least 12 decibels (dB) higher at 120 kHz relative to 18 kHz (i.e. >15.8-fold higher at 120 kHz) and in which a signal to noise ratio >10 dB was observed (cf. De Robertis & Higginbottom 2007) were retained for further analysis. This procedure removed fish from the echograms but retained a diffuse scattering layer attributed to planktonic organisms. The nautical area scattering coefficient (s_A, m^2 n mile^{-2}), which is a linear measure of the backscatter strength (MacLennan et al. 2002), was integrated at 120 kHz throughout the water column every 0.5 n mile (0.93 km) along the vessel track, and plotted on a map of the area.

The scattering layers attributed to planktonic organisms were opportunistically sampled in Barnabus Trough (n = 10 hauls in 2004, n = 0 in 2005, n = 3 in 2006) with a 5.2 m^2 frame trawl (Methot 1986) equipped with 2 × 3 mm oval mesh and 1 mm mesh in the filtering cod end. In 2004 on the 'Miller Freeman,' no trawls were conducted in the immediate vicinity of the right whale sighting, although we report the composition from the 2 trawls closest to the right whale sighting. Net tows could not be conducted during the 2005 survey on the 'Oscar Dyson.' In 2006, a trawl was conducted from the 'Miller Freeman' at the time and location where a right whale was encountered.

RESULTS

Right whales were visually detected in Barnabus Trough in 2004, 2005, and 2006 (Fig. 1b). Right whale calls were passive acoustically detected in Barnabus Trough in 2004. An opportunistic sighting of a right whale from a commercial fishing vessel just at the shelf break in Barnabus Trough was also reported in 2006. Given the rarity of sightings in the Gulf of Alaska, further details on these encounters are presented here.

2004 sighting

On 16 August 2004, a right whale was visually detected (by K. R. Hough) from the 'Miller Freeman' at 13:32 h (all times in Pacific Daylight Time, PDT) at a position of 57° 01.68' N, 152° 43.80' W (Fig. 1b). Water depth was ~170 m. The ship had just passed through a large concentration of humpback whales (minimum of 32 ind.) when 1 right whale was observed near 2 additional humpbacks. The fisheries active acoustic survey briefly broke effort to obtain photographs of the right whale; however, the whale was not observed again due to the high humpback concentration and limited availability of dedicated search time.

2004 passive acoustic detection with sonobuoy

On 28 September 2004, right whale calls were heard intermittently from the 'McArthur II' (by S. Rankin and

L. Munger) for ~9 h (from 11:38 to 20:57 h) using passive acoustic hydrophones. Two sonobuoys were used to estimate bearings to the calls at 14:18 h and calculate a good position for the right whale calls (as per McDonald & Moore 2002) at 57° 0.60′ N, 152° 27.84′ W in Barnabus Trough (Fig. 1b). Marine mammal observers searched visually for right whales in the vicinity, but only humpbacks were seen. Sighting conditions were poor. During the same cruise, sonobuoys were deployed at 20 other locations throughout the Gulf of Alaska, both on and off the shelf, without detecting right whale sounds at any other location.

2005 sighting

On 6 August 2005, the 'Oscar Dyson' was conducting a whale survey transect across Albatross Bank. Two skiffs were deployed in the morning amidst a large aggregation of humpback whales. In the afternoon, while photographing humpback whales, a single right whale was detected from 1 of the skiffs (by O. Vasquez) at 14:16 h and at 57° 0.61′ N, 152° 37.02′ W in Barnabas Trough (Fig. 1b). The bottom depth was ~162 m. Weather conditions were good (Beaufort 1). Data collected included full photographs of both sides of the whale, a biopsy tissue sample, and a fecal sample. The right whale was within 250 to 500 m of 10 to 20 humpback whales, as well as 2 fin whales *Balaenoptera physalus*.

The whale was easy to approach for photographs and biopsy sampling and a total of 1 hr 20 min was spent observing it. During that time, the animal swam at ~5 kn (9.3 km h^{-1}), averaging dives of ~7 min in length (range from ~2 to 9 min). No evidence of feeding at the surface (i.e. surface skimming with head out of the water) was seen, but the presence of a fecal sample indicated recent feeding. The 'Oscar Dyson' followed the track of the whale to active acoustically map prey fields.

The whale was genetically identified as a male. The mtDNA haplotype of the whale occurs in 2 out of 19 whales sampled in the Bering Sea from 1997 to 2004, but microsatellite DNA genotyping analysis confirmed that this was a different whale than any of the whales sampled in the Bering Sea (LeDuc et al. 2001, Wade et al. 2010, R. G. LeDuc unpubl. data). Nor did the whale match any of the previously sampled whales as a potential parent–offspring relationship.

The fecal sample appeared to consist mostly of broken pieces of zooplankton carapaces; however, none were large enough to allow identification of species. Fecal hormone values were 20 ng g^{-1} estrogen, 4743 ng g^{-1} androgens (testosterone and metabolites), and 890 ng g^{-1} progesterone. Based on measured values in North Atlantic right whales (Rolland et al. 2005), these values are consistent with an immature male: the relatively low estrogen and high testosterone values are consistent with values from males, but the testosterone value is well below that of adult males and in the middle of the range seen for juvenile males (≤9 yr of age). Corticosterone was 26 ng g^{-1}, a value again consistent with an immature male, and much lower than measured in calves and yearlings or than that measured in 1 North Atlantic right whale suffering stress as a result of entanglement and injury (Hunt et al. 2006). This suggests the whale was an immature male between the ages of 2 and 9 yr, and that it was not under the kind of stress observed in an injured whale.

2006 sighting

On 1 September 2006, a right whale was detected from the 'Miller Freeman' (by K. R. Hough) at 10:26 h at a position of 56° 47.46′ N and 152° 24.96′ W during Beaufort 3 sea conditions. The ship broke from the active acoustic survey transect line and approached the right whale for photographs and video recording. Good quality photographs were taken of the right side of the head and body and of the flukes, and a video recording of several surfacings was made. No evidence of feeding at the surface was seen. The whale slowed and made some variable movements when approached. The ship continued to collect active acoustic data while approaching the whale for photographs. The bottom depth associated with the active acoustic data collected near the whale was ~177 m. A Methot net trawl was conducted in the vicinity of the initial location of the whale. Observations of the whale were ended at 11:34 h and 56° 46.75′ N and 152° 25.61′ W.

2006 opportunistic sighting

On 24 September 2006, the FV 'Trailblazer' was fishing for halibut near the shelf break on Albatross Bank, near Barnabus Trough. Personnel on the vessel saw a whale illuminated by the vessel's lights at 23:45 h at a position of 56° 34.9′ N and 151° 56.5′ W (W. Baker pers. comm.; Fig. 1b). Water depth was ~188 m. A clear view of the whale was seen as it sounded: the flukes were reported to be triangular and all-black, and different from other species known to the fishermen (i.e. humpback and gray whales *Eschrichtius robustus*). They identified the species as a right whale. Our confidence in the accuracy of the identification of the flukes is relatively high, given that they immediately referred to a photographic identification guide (designed by NOAA and the Marine Conservation Alliance) distributed to Alaska fishermen to help them distinguish right whales from humpback and gray whales.

Photo-identification results

Each of the 4 visual sightings was of a single whale, but identification photographs were taken during only 2 of the sightings: both right- and left-side identification photographs were taken for the whale from 2005, and only right-side photographs were available for the whale sighted in 2006. These whales were different individuals, and neither matched any individuals in the North Pacific photo-identification catalogue (A. Kennedy unpubl. data). This includes 16 right-side identifications and 15 left-side identifications from photographs taken in the Bering Sea between 1996 and 2004 (note that some of those individuals have identifications from both sides), and 1 right-side identification from California in 1990 (see http://articles.latimes.com/1990-05-18/local/me-354_1_blue-whale, photographed by Karen LeFever) and 1 left-side identification from Hawaii in 1996 (Salden & Mickelsen 1999). Additionally, neither of the identified whales from Kodiak is thought to be the same individual reported in 1998 (Waite et al. 2003) because there were no visible lip callosities in the aerial photograph of the whale seen in 1998, whereas the whales seen in 2005 and 2006 both had prominent lip callosities (A. Kennedy unpubl. data). Therefore, at least 3 ind. have been documented from the Kodiak region over the time period 1998 to 2006.

Active acoustic backscatter and zooplankton data

In 2004, the majority of Barnabus Trough had a relatively low density of zooplankton backscatter, similar to that recorded in the shallower locations on Albatross Bank (Fig. 2a). Higher densities were found in a few locations at the northern end and along the southeastern edge of the trough. The right whale was seen adjacent to one of only 2 locations with very high zooplankton backscatter.

The echogram of 120 kHz backscatter in the vicinity of the right whale location in 2004 showed a strong layer of demersal backscatter and fairly strong near-surface backscatter (Fig. 3a). Methot trawl catches

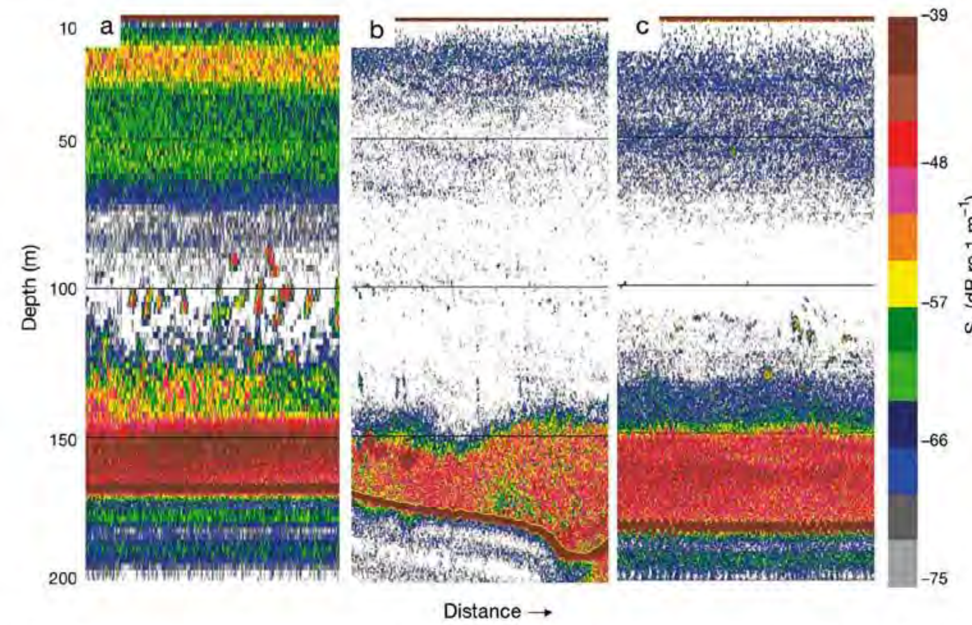


Fig. 3. Echograms of 120 kHz backscatter observed in the vicinity of right whale sightings in (a) 2004, (b) 2005, and (c) 2006. The colors represent S_V, a logarithmic measure of the active acoustic backscatter strength (see MacLennan et al. 2002 for a definition). The strongest backscatter at ~175 m in all 3 panels is from the seafloor. Acoustic backscatter from dense aggregations of near-bottom zooplankton is evident within ~50 m of the bottom at each sighting location

through the near-bottom layer in other nearby locations in Barnabus Trough showed they were dominated by adult euphausiids primarily of 2 species, *Thysanoessa spinifera* and *T. inermis*. In the tow (Stn 79) on the eastern flank of the trough (139 m water depth), *T. inermis* juveniles (mean total length = 12.1 mm) comprised over 96% of the catch numerically, and the larger *T. spinifera* (mean total length = 22.4 mm) made up ca. 2% of the catch. Large calanoid copepods were conspicuously absent from the sample. At the tow (Stn 48) closer to the axis of the trough (161 m water depth), the prey field was somewhat different. Again, *T. inermis* comprised the majority of the individuals (>75%). However, their size distribution was bimodal, with a longer median length than at Stn 79 (22 mm). Large calanoid copepods (C5) *Neocalanus cristatus* comprised ca. 3% of the catch. The hauls were not taken in the same location as the right whale, and the hauls did not target the near-bottom layer.

In 2005, very high densities of zooplankton backscatter were observed at the northern end of Barnabus Trough where the right whale was seen (Fig. 2b). The area immediately around the right whale was an extensive area of the highest density backscatter signal. Zooplankton backscatter was lower in the shallower areas of Albatross Bank. In the vicinity of the right whale, the bottom depth was ~162 m, and 3 major layers were seen. A prominent sound-scattering layer was present near the bottom in all cases (Fig. 3b). This layer was much stronger at 120 kHz than at 18 kHz, which is consistent with backscattering from large-bodied zooplankton such as copepods and euphausiids (De Robertis et al. 2010). A layer of pelagic fish (juvenile pollock *Theragra chalcogramma* or capelin *Mallotus villosus*: identifications are based on trawls during the 2004 and 2006 surveys, C. Wilson unpubl.) was seen between ~75 and 140 m. A near-surface layer of unknown composition (but suspected to be a mixture of jellyfish, fish, and macrozooplankton) was visible at all frequencies to a depth of ~55 m.

In 2006, the majority of Barnabus Trough had relatively high densities of zooplankton backscatter, particularly in the middle of the trough (Fig. 3c). The highest densities were found in a number of locations both at the northwestern and southern ends of the trough. The right whale was seen at the edge of what was the largest measured patch of the highest density zooplankton backscatter at the southern end of the trough.

The active acoustic data collected as the ship approached the right whale in 2006 were similar to the data from 2005. In the vicinity of the whale, the bottom depth was ~177 m and, again, 3 scattering layers were seen. A near-surface layer visible at all frequencies to a depth of ~55 m was likely composed of jellyfish, fish, and macrozooplankton. A fairly low backscatter layer of juvenile pollock was observed at mid-depth, and a third very dense layer was observed near the bottom (Fig. 3c). Based on the frequency response (i.e. the ratio of backscattering at different frequencies), this near-bottom layer was likely euphausiids or macrozooplankton. The backscatter values for this layer were very high, and values for this particular part of the transect were among the highest observed. Barnabus Trough generally has much higher backscatter at 120 kHz than other areas of the Gulf of Alaska shelf (A. De Robertis unpubl. data), and net tows through these layers usually result in samples dominated by euphausiids.

The Methot trawl conducted near the whale targeted this layer, fishing at about 10 m off bottom in the strong demersal layer (e.g. Fig. 3c). This sample contained a mixture of euphausiids and late-stage calanoid copepods. The euphausiid component consisted of juvenile *Thysanoessa inermis* (mean total length = 13.9 mm, 22% by number) and larger *T. spinifera* (mean total length = 26.3 mm, 7% by number) which were full of depot lipids. The sample also had high numbers of copepods (59% by number) that were presumably in a diapause state. The copepod assemblage was 26% *Neocalanus cristatus* (C5), 14% *N. flemingeri* (C5), 10% *N. plumchrus* (C5), and 10% *Calanus marshallae* (C5). All copepods appeared rich in depot lipids. Chaetognaths were another abundant taxon (9%), but probably did not contribute to either the active acoustic returns or the whale diet.

DISCUSSION

We report 4 visual sightings of right whales south of Kodiak Island from 2004 to 2006, which triples (from 2 to 6) the total number of visual sightings of right whales seen in the Gulf of Alaska since the 1960s. All of these recent sightings were observed in association with dense zooplankton layers in Barnabus Trough. This suggests that Barnabus Trough is an important feeding habitat for right whales in the Gulf of Alaska.

Current distribution and abundance

Including the detections reported here, all of the right whales found since 1998 have occurred in shelf waters adjacent to Kodiak Island except for a passive acoustic detection from a single deep-water recorder (discussed below). In contrast, 19th century whaling records suggest that the great majority of catches occurred in pelagic waters of the Gulf of Alaska (Townsend 1935, Shelden et al. 2005). In the early 20th century, whalers at the Port Hobron shore station reported 13 right whale catches or sightings near Kodiak Island from 1924 to 1937 (Reeves et al. 1985, Brueggeman et al. 1986, Shelden et al. 2005). All of the whales except one were in shelf waters, and 8 of the 13 were located in the Barnabus Trough area (Fig. 1a), although this may be due to the Port Hobron station being located on Sitkalidak Island near Barnabus Trough and to the limited searching range of shore-based whaling vessels. Catches occurred from June through September (n = 11), with 2 unsuccessful chases reported in May. North Pacific right whales are thought to migrate to lower latitudes in winter, although their migratory destinations are not well known (Clapham et al. 2004). Consistent with this migration, passive acoustic recorders on the Bering Sea shelf have detected right whale calls only from May to November (Munger et al. 2008).

In the early 1960s, 3 right whales were taken in August south of Kodiak Island during Japanese scientific research cruises, and sightings from 1941 to 1968 occurred in May (n = 3), June (n = 43), July (n = 30), and August (n = 1) in slope and oceanic waters east and west of the island (Shelden et al. 2005). Soviet whalers killed 251 right whales between 1963 and 1966 in pelagic waters southwest of Kodiak Island (Doroshenko 2000). These whales were near seamounts that are 500 to 1000 m below the surface in areas where the seafloor is 5000 to 6000 m deep (Shelden et al. 2005). The biologist on board one of the whaling ships reported that the Soviet whalers used 2 whaling ships, each of which deployed ~20 catcher vessels to search for whales, and that every right whale seen during the period 1963 to 1966 was killed (N. Doroshenko pers. comm.). The yearly catches were 141 (1963), 87 (1964), 20 (1965), and 3 (1966; Doroshenko 2000), with essentially identical whaling effort in each year, suggesting that the dramatic decline in catches reflects the severe depletion of the population that occurred. The large number of catcher vessels allowed them to search a broad swath of the ocean, which likely explains why the whalers were able to continue to find the whales even when rare. Additionally, the whales may have been relatively easy to find when rare because the locations of catches described by Doroshenko (2000) indicate that the distribution of the animals was fairly aggregated.

This severe depletion is reflected in the rarity of right whale detections in the Gulf of Alaska today. In recent decades, the only detections of right whales in pelagic waters of the Gulf of Alaska came from passive acoustic recorders. These detections of calls were exceptionally rare; instruments in 7 widespread locations detected right whale calls from only 2 of the locations on only 6 days out of a total of 80 months of recordings (Mellinger et al. 2004), and on only 5 days out of a total of 70 months of recordings from the 5 deep-water stations. The calls were heard at the deep-water station in the Gulf of Alaska ~500 km southwest of Kodiak Island on 5 days in August and September of 2000, but no calls were detected from 4 other instruments deployed in deep water farther east during 2000 and 2001 (Mellinger et al. 2004). Calls classified as 'probable' right whales were detected from an instrument deployed on the shelf at the location of the aerial visual detection on Albatross Bank on 6 September 2000 (Waite et al. 2003), but no calls were detected from 2 instruments deployed at the base of the continental slope off Albatross Bank just northeast of Barnabus Trough (Mellinger et al. 2004, Munger et al. 2008). As mentioned in 'Results: 2004 passive acoustic detection with sonobuoy', 20 sonobuoy deployments in 2004 throughout the Gulf of Alaska resulted in the detection of right whale calls in Barnabus Trough only. The lack of detection of right whales by passive acoustic recorders does not provide indisputable evidence that there were no right whales in the area, as the whales may not always vocalize or their calls may not always be detected by the automatic algorithms used. However, it is interesting to note the contrasting data from the southeastern Bering Sea where similar instruments on the middle shelf (<100 m depth) detected right whale calls on >6 d mo^{-1} in July to October (Munger et al. 2008), despite a population estimated to consist of only 31 ind. (Wade et al. 2010). The lack of detections of right whales in pelagic waters of the Gulf of Alaska may still be partially due to a lack of survey and recording effort in those areas, but the lack of calls in passive acoustic monitoring suggests that right whales are very rare in pelagic waters today. More extensive coverage of shelf and nearshore waters of the Gulf of Alaska during previous ship and airplane surveys for cetaceans (e.g. Dahlheim et al. 2000, Laidre et al. 2000, Zerbini et al. 2006, Hobbs & Waite 2010, Rone et al. 2010) have not detected right whales other than the single detection near Kodiak Island by Waite et al. (2003). Therefore, the Albatross Bank area represents the only location in the Gulf of Alaska where right whales have been repeatedly detected in the last 4 decades.

The whales photo-identified in 2005 and 2006 have not been seen in the Bering Sea. The genotype of the 2005 whale did not match any Bering Sea whales, and it was not a possible offspring match to any other whale. Historic catch and sighting data do not show any marked hiatus in distribution between the Gulf of Alaska and the Bering Sea (Shelden et al. 2005), and to date, there has been no suggestion that different populations occur in each region. However, baleen whales often show strong matrilineal fidelity to feeding areas; these whales may have always used the Gulf of Alaska as a feeding area rather than another location. The whale sampled in 2005 was an immature male, and was therefore born after Gulf of Alaska whales had been severely depleted by illegal Soviet catches in the 1960s. This implies that either some successful reproduction by whales in the Gulf of Alaska, or some exchange with the Bering Sea has occurred that has gone undetected due to the small populations and the small sample sizes involved. Given the evidence from sighting surveys and passive acoustic recorders, there appears to be only a relict number of right whales in the Gulf of Alaska, fewer even than the small number of whales in the Bering Sea (estimated to be 31 whales; Wade et al. 2010). It is likely that surveys in the Barnabus Trough and Albatross Bank area would discover additional whales, but given the rarity of the species there, it would probably not be a large number.

North Pacific right whale prey

North Pacific right whales are thought to feed primarily on large copepods (Gregr & Coyle 2009), and we observed dense aggregations of copepods and euphausiids in Barnabus Trough in summer. Stomach contents of North Pacific right whales in the Gulf of Alaska exist for only 3 right whales caught under scientific permit on 22 August 1961 south of Kodiak Island; these whales had all consumed *Neocalanus plumchrus* (*Calanus plumchrus*: Omura et al. 1969). This was most likely a mixture of *N. plumchrus* and *N. flemingerii*, as the latter species had not yet been described or distinguished from the former. North Atlantic right whales target areas where dense aggregations of copepods are found above 200 m (Baumgartner & Mate 2003). This may also be the case for North Pacific right whales. All 4 species of copepods captured in the near bottom layer in 2006 were likely in or entering diapause, an overwintering strategy used by calanoid copepods, as all of these species typically complete their annual feeding in spring and early summer and then migrate to depths of 400 to 2000 m (Miller & Clemons 1988, Gregr & Coyle 2009). *Neocalanus* spp. generally overwinter at much greater depths across the basin (Miller & Clemons 1988, Miller & Nielsen 1988, Mackas et al. 1998) or in deep depressions over the shelf (e.g. Prince William Sound). Dense layers of overwintering *Calanus* have been observed at the sill depths of deep basins in the California Current (Osgood & Checkley 1997) and around other bathymetric features in the Northwest Atlantic (Baumgartner & Mate 2003). It is probable that both the euphausiids and copepods have become trapped in the troughs by the interaction of their diel or ontogenetic migrations and the circulation (Koslow & Ota 1981, Mackas & Coyle 2005).

The active acoustic backscatter data showed a dense near-bottom layer in all 3 years, and the right whales were found near the highest zooplankton backscatter. The dense near-bottom layers (~175 m in each case) were at a depth at which North Atlantic right whales are capable of foraging (Baumgartner & Mate 2003), suggesting that the whales could be targeting the near-bottom layer. The 1 Methot trawl (in 2006) that occurred at the time and location of a right whale sighting had high densities of copepods and euphausiids, whereas other Methot trawls in Barnabus Trough did not contain many copepods. Euphausiids are typically abundant in Barnabus Trough throughout the summer (A. De Robertis unpubl. data). Although right whales in the western North Atlantic appear to specialize on copepods, there is limited evidence that right whales may also eat euphausiids or similar-sized decapod larvae, and Gregr & Coyle (2009) noted that their diet may be primarily a function of what they can efficiently capture and filter through their baleen, with prey preference secondary. Omura (1958) reported stomach contents of a right whale in the western North Pacific as containing primarily *Calanus plumchrus* (*Neocalanus plumchrus* + *N. flemingerii*), but also some *Euphausia pacifica*, although the *E. pacifica* may have been incidentally consumed with the primary prey (copepods). A North Pacific right whale caught by whalers from a British Columbia shore station in 1954 had stomach contents reported to be krill (Nichol et al. 2002). Collett (1909) reported euphausiids half an inch (1.27 cm) long in a North Atlantic right whale, and in southern right whales there are reports of stomach contents consisting of *E. superba* (Matthews 1938, Hamner et al. 1988) and the pelagic postlarvae of the crab *Munida gregaria* (Matthews 1932), which are relatively large. Therefore, we cannot rule out that euphausiids may also be a prey of North Pacific right whales in Barnabus Trough.

Exceptionally dense near-bottom layers of copepods may be available to right whales beginning in late spring or mid-summer, and continuing until midwinter depending on the median time of population diapause for the different species (e.g. Miller & Clemons 1988, Osgood & Frost 1994). Gregr & Coyle (2009) noted that lipid-rich copepods are likely available to right whales in offshore surface waters of the Gulf of Alaska in spring and early summer, but suggested that foraging in late summer and fall (after the copepods begin to enter diapause) is likely to be primarily on the shelf or at the shelf-edge where diapausing copepods may be trapped and unable to migrate down to their maximum diapause depths. Historical locations of right whales on Albatross Bank occurred in all summer months (Fig. 1a). Possible explanations include: interannual variability in the time that copepods leave the surface waters and enter diapause, and flexible feeding strategies by the whales (foraging on both surface and deep concentrations of copepods as well as other suitable prey items). There may also have been other prey-concentrating mechanisms active early in the summer, such as the interaction between diel vertical migration and trough circulation (e.g. Koslow & Ota 1981, Allen et al. 2001). It remains to be determined whether right whales currently use this area only in late summer, or whether their presence has simply gone undetected at other times.

Critical habitat

The US National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) designated critical habitat (as defined under the US Endangered Species Act) for right whales in the North Pacific within the Gulf of Alaska and southeastern Bering Sea in July 2006 (NMFS 2006; Fig. 1b). This decision, in part, came from a determination that 'primary constituent elements' of habitat for the North Pacific right whale are species of large zooplankton in areas where right whales are known or believed to feed. It also came from a determination that there are likely critical threshold densities of zooplankton below which right whale feeding does not occur (e.g. Baumgartner & Mate 2003), and in the absence of data which describe these densities, recent sightings of right whales (through 2005) were used as a proxy for the existence of suitably dense zooplankton patches. Given that there is no other location in the Gulf of Alaska where right whales have been seen repeatedly, it is clear that the Barnabus Trough/Albatross Bank area represents important habitat for North Pacific right whales in the Gulf of Alaska. Historically, sightings occurred throughout the Barnabus Trough/Albatross Bank area, and both sightings in 2006 were at the southern end of Barnabus Trough (Fig. 1). Further research on the oceanography in this area, particularly on mechanisms that create dense patches of zooplankton, should be undertaken to better describe this important habitat for North Pacific right whales.

Acknowledgements. We thank S. Wasser for assistance with the analysis of fecal hormone levels, R.M. Rolland for help in interpreting the fecal hormone levels, and C. Baier for analysis of the Methot samples. We thank B. Rone, K. Hannan, Y. V. Ivashchenko, E. Lyman, and H. Vukelic for field assistance during the 2005 sighting, W. Baker for providing information on the 2006 opportunistic sighting, and P. Clapham, K. Stafford, and 2 anonymous reviewers for helpful reviews of the manuscript. Reference to trade names does not imply endorsement by NMFS, NOAA.

LITERATURE CITED

Allen SE, Vinderinho C, Thomson RE, Foreman MGG, Mackas DL (2001) Physical and biological processes over a submarine canyon during an upwelling event. Can J Fish Aquat Sci 58:671–684

Baumgartner MF, Mate BR (2003) Summertime foraging ecology of North Atlantic right whales. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 264: 123–135

Brownell RL Jr, Clapham PJ, Miyashita T, Kasuya T (2001) Conservation status of North Pacific right whales. J Cetacean Res Manag (Spec Issue 2):269–286

Brueggeman JJ, Newby T, Grotefendt RA (1986) Catch records of twenty North Pacific right whales from two Alaska whaling stations, 1917–39. Arctic 39:43–46

Clapham P, Good C, Quinn S, Reeves RR, Scarff JE, Brownell RL Jr (2004) Distribution of North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) as shown by 19th and 20th century whaling catch and sighting records. J Cetacean Res Manag 6:1–6

Collett R (1909) A few notes on the whale *Balaena glacialis* and its capture in recent years in the North Atlantic by Norwegian whalers. Proc Zool Soc Lond 1909:91–98

Dahlheim M, York A, Towell R, Waite J, Breiwick J (2000) Harbor porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) abundance in Alaska: Bristol Bay to southeast Alaska, 1991–1993. Mar Mamm Sci 16:28–45

De Robertis A, Higginbottom I (2007) A post-processing technique to estimate the signal-to-noise ratio and remove echosounder background noise. ICES J Mar Sci 64: 1282–1291

De Robertis A, Mckelvey D, Ressler PH (2010) Development and application of empirical multi-frequency methods for backscatter classification. Can J Fish Aquat Sci 67: 1459–1474

Doroshenko NV (2000) Soviet whaling for blue, gray, bowhead and right whales in the North Pacific Ocean, 1961–1979. In: Yablokov AV, Zemsky VA (eds) Soviet whaling data (1949–1979). Center for Russian Environmental Policy, Moscow, p 96–103

Gauthier S, Horne JK (2004) Acoustic characteristics of forage fish species in the Gulf of Alaska and Bering Sea. Can J Fish Aquat Sci 61:1839–1850

Goddard PD, Rugh DJ (1998) A group of right whales seen in the Bering Sea in July 1996. Mar Mamm Sci 14:344–349

Gregr EJ, Coyle KO (2009) The biogeography of the North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*). Prog Oceanogr 80:188–198

Hamner WM, Stone GS, Obst BS (1988) Behavior of southern right whales, *Eubalaena australis*, feeding on Antarctic krill, *Euphausia superba*. Fish Bull 86:143–150

Hobbs RC, Waite JM (2010) Abundance of harbor porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*) in three Alaskan regions, corrected for observer errors due to perception bias and species misidentification, and corrected for animals submerged from view. Fish Bull 108:251–267

Hunt KE, Rolland RM, Kraus SD, Wasser SK (2006) Analysis of fecal glucocorticoids in the North Atlantic right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*). Gen Comp Endocrinol 148:260–272

Koslow JA, Ota A (1981) The ecology of vertical migration in three common zooplankters in the La Jolla Bight, April–August 1967. Biol Oceanogr 1:107–134

Laidre K, Shelden K, Rugh D, Mahoney B (2000) Beluga, *Delphinapterus leucas*, distribution and survey effort in the Gulf of Alaska. Mar Fish Rev 62:27–36

Lavery AC, Wiebe PH, Stanton TK, Lawson GL, Benfield MC, Copely N (2007) Determining dominant scatterers of

sound in mixed zooplankton populations. J Acoust Soc Am 122:3304–3326
LeDuc RG, Perryman WL, Gilpatrick JW Jr, Hyde J, Stinchcomb C, Carretta JV, Brownell RL Jr (2001) A note on recent surveys for right whales in the southeastern Bering Sea. J Cetacean Res Manag (Spec Issue 2):287–289
Mackas DL, Coyle KO (2005) Shelf-offshore exchange processes, and their effects on mesozooplankton biomass and community composition patterns in the northeast Pacific. Deep-Sea Res II 52:707–725
Mackas DL, Goldblatt R, Lewis AG (1998) Interdecadal variation in the developmental timing of *Neocalanus plumchrus* populations at Ocean Station P in the subarctic North Pacific. Can J Fish Aquat Sci 55:1878–1893
MacLennan DN, Fernandes PG, Dalen J (2002) A consistent approach to definitions and symbols in fisheries acoustics. ICES J Mar Sci 59:365–369
Matthews LH (1932) Lobster krill. Discov Rep 5:467–484
Matthews LH (1938) Notes on the southern right whale, *Eubalaena australis*. Discov Rep 17:169–182
McDonald MA, Moore SE (2002) Calls recorded from North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the eastern Bering Sea. J Cetacean Res Manag 4:261–266
Mellinger DK, Stafford KM, Moore SE, Munger L, Fox CG (2004) Detection of North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) calls in the Gulf of Alaska. Mar Mamm Sci 20:872–879
Methot RD (1986) Frame trawl for sampling pelagic juvenile fish. Calif Coop Ocean Fish Invest Rep 27:267–278
Miller CB, Clemons MJ (1988) Revised life history analysis for large grazing copepods in the subarctic Pacific Ocean. Prog Oceanogr 20:293–313
Miller CB, Nielsen RD (1988) Development and growth of large, calanid copepods in the Ocean Subarctic Pacific, May 1984. Prog Oceanogr 20:275–292
Miyashita K, Aoki I, Seno K, Taki K, Ogishima T (1998) Acoustic identification of isada krill, *Euphausia pacifica* Hansen, off the Sanriku coast, north-eastern Japan. Fish Oceanogr 6:266–271
Munger L, Wiggins SM, Moore SE, Hildebrand JA (2008) North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) seasonal and diel calling patterns from long-term acoustic recordings in the southeastern Bering Sea, 2000–2006. Mar Mamm Sci 24:795–814
Nichol LM, Gregr EJ, Flinn RD, Ford JKB, Gurney R, Michaluk L, Peacock A (2002) British Columbia commercial whaling catch data 1908 to 1967: a detailed description of the B.C. historic whaling database. Can Tech Rep Fish Aquat Sci 2371. Nanaimo, BC
NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service) (2006) Endangered and threatened species; revision of critical habitat for the northern right whale in the Pacific Ocean. Fed Regist 71:38277–38296. Available at: www.fakr.noaa.gov/frules/71fr38277.pdf
Omura H (1958) North Pacific right whale. Sci Rep Whales Res Inst Tokyo 13:1–52

Editorial responsibility: Sascha Hooker, St. Andrews, UK

Omura H, Ohsumi S, Nemoto R, Nasu K, Kasuya T (1969) Black right whales in the North Pacific. Sci Rep Whales Res Inst Tokyo 21:1–78
Osgood KE, Checkley DM Jr (1997) Seasonal variations in a deep aggregation of *Calanus pacificus* in the Santa Barbara Basin. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 148:59–69
Osgood KE, Frost BW (1994) Comparative life histories of three species of planktonic calanoid copepods in Dabob Bay, Washington. Mar Biol 118:627–636
Reeves RR, Leatherwood S, Karl SA, Yohe ER (1985) Whaling results at Akutan (1912–39) and Port Hobron (1926–37), Alaska. Rep Int Whal Comm 35:441–457
Rolland RM, Hunt KE, Kraus SD, Wasser SK (2005) Assessing reproductive status of right whales (*Eubalaena glacialis*) using fecal hormone metabolites. Gen Comp Endocrinol 142:308–317
Rone BK, Douglas AB, Zerbini AN, Morse L, Martinez A, Clapham PJ, Calambokidis J (2010) Results from the April 2009 Gulf of Alaska transect survey (GOALS) in the Navy training exercise area. NOAA Tech Memo NMFS-AFSC-209. National Marine Fisheries Service, Seattle, WA
Salden DR, Mickelsen J (1999) Rare sighting of a North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in Hawai'i. Pac Sci 53:341–345
Scarff JE (1991) Historic distribution and abundance of the right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in the North Pacific, Bering Sea, Sea of Okhotsk and Sea of Japan from the Maury Whale Charts. Rep Int Whal Comm 41:467–489
Scarff JE (2001) Preliminary estimates of whaling-induced mortality in the 19th century North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) fishery, adjusting for struck-but-lost whales and non-American whaling. J Cetacean Res Manag (Spec Issue 2):261–268
Shelden KEW, Moore SE, Waite JM, Wade PR, Rugh DJ (2005) Historic and current habitat use by North Pacific right whales, *Eubalaena japonica*, in the Bering Sea and Gulf of Alaska. Mammal Rev 35:129–155
Townsend CH (1935) The distribution of certain whales as shown by logbook records of American whaleships. Zoologica 19:1–50
Wade PR, Heide-Jorgensen MP, Shelden KEW, Barlow J and others (2006) Acoustic detection and satellite-tracking leads to discovery of rare concentration of endangered North Pacific right whales. Biol Lett 2:417–419
Wade PR, Kennedy A, LeDuc RG, Barlow J and others (2011) The world's smallest whale population? Biol Lett. 7:83–85
Waite JW, Wynne K, Mellinger DK (2003) Documented sighting of a North Pacific right whale in the Gulf of Alaska and post-sighting acoustic monitoring. Northwest Nat 84:38–43
Wilson CD, Hollowed AB, Shima M, Walline P, Stienessen S (2003) Interactions between commercial fishing and walleye pollock. Alsk Fish Res Bull 10:61–77
Zerbini AN, Waite JM, Wade PR (2006) Abundance and distribution of fin, humpback and minke whales from the Kenai Fjords to the central Aleutian Islands, Alaska: summer 2001–2003. Deep-Sea Res I 53:1772–1790

Submitted: August 13, 2010; Accepted: November 12, 2010
Proofs received from author(s): January 13, 2011

biology
letters

The world's smallest whale population?

Paul R. Wade, Amy Kennedy, Rick LeDuc, Jay Barlow, Jim Carretta, Kim Shelden, Wayne Perryman, Robert Pitman, Kelly Robertson, Brenda Rone, Juan Carlos Salinas, Alexandre Zerbini, Robert L. Brownell, Jr and Phillip J. Clapham

Biol. Lett. published online 30 June 2010
doi: 10.1098/rsbl.2010.0477

biology letters

Biol. Lett.
doi:10.1098/rsbl.2010.0477
Published online

Conservation biology

The world's smallest whale population?

Paul R. Wade[1,*], Amy Kennedy[1], Rick LeDuc[2], Jay Barlow[2], Jim Carretta[2], Kim Shelden[1], Wayne Perryman[2], Robert Pitman[2], Kelly Robertson[2], Brenda Rone[1], Juan Carlos Salinas[2], Alexandre Zerbini[1], Robert L. Brownell Jr[3] and Phillip J. Clapham[1]

[1]*Alaska Fisheries Science Center, 7600 Sand Point Way Northeast, Seattle, WA 98115, USA*
[2]*Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 3333 North Torrey Pines Court, La Jolla, CA 92037, USA*
[3]*Southwest Fisheries Science Center, 1352 Lighthouse Avenue, Pacific Grove, CA 93950, USA*
**Author for correspondence (paul.wade@noaa.gov).*

The North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) was heavily exploited by both nineteenth century whaling and recent (1960s) illegal Soviet catches. Today, the species remains extremely rare especially in the eastern North Pacific. Here, we use photographic and genotype data to calculate the first mark–recapture estimates of abundance for right whales in the Bering Sea and Aleutian Islands. The estimates were very similar: photographic = 31 (95% CL 23–54), genotyping = 28 (95% CL 24–42). We also estimated the population contains eight females (95% CL 7–18) and 20 males (95% CL 17–37). Although these estimates may relate to a Bering Sea subpopulation, other data suggest that the total eastern North Pacific population is unlikely to be much larger. Its precarious status today—the world's smallest whale population for which an abundance estimate exists—is a direct consequence of uncontrolled and illegal whaling, and highlights the past failure of international management to prevent such abuses.

Keywords: North Pacific; right whale; *Eubalaena japonica*; abundance; mark–recapture; Bering Sea

1. INTRODUCTION

The first whalers to arrive in the Gulf of Alaska in the mid-1800s spoke in hyperbolic terms of the number of right whales they saw. While the historic abundance is uncertain, there is no doubt that North Pacific right whales were then abundant throughout much of the North Pacific from North America to the Okhotsk Sea and Japan. Intensive nineteenth-century whaling, primarily by American whalers, may have killed more than 23 000 whales and drastically reduced these populations by the 1850s (Scarff 2001; Clapham *et al.* 2004).

Despite international protection agreed in 1949, in the 1960s, the USSR killed 372 right whales in the Gulf of Alaska and Bering Sea (Doroshenko 2000). These catches, which were part of a massive 30 year campaign of illegal whaling by the USSR (Clapham & Ivashchenko 2009; Yablokov 1994), decimated what was probably a small but slowly increasing eastern population (Brownell *et al.* 2001). Right whales have since been so rare in the eastern North Pacific that single sightings have been published.

Right whales were 're-discovered' in the eastern Bering Sea in 1996 (Goddard & Rugh 1998). Since then, NOAA surveys conducted in 1997–2008 have encountered small numbers of right whales in the Bering Sea and Aleutian Islands, and have collected identification photographs and biopsy tissue samples (figure 1). All encounters have been on the southeastern Bering Sea shelf, with the exception of one whale seen south of Unimak Pass in the Aleutian Islands in September 2004. A sufficient sample size of identified individuals has now been accumulated from both genetic and photographic methods to allow mark–recapture analysis methods to be applied to both datasets.

We present here the first abundance estimates for eastern North Pacific right whales. These remarkably low estimates underscore the precarious status of this population, which ranks among the smallest and most endangered in the world. They also highlight the grim legacy of uncontrolled nineteenth-century whaling and the failure of twentieth-century regulations and management to prevent overexploitation from illegal whaling.

2. MATERIAL AND METHODS

(a) *Photo-identification methods*

Identification photographs of North Pacific right whales were taken from vessels (oblique photos) and from airplanes (overhead photos). Aerial surveys occurred in 1998–2001 and in 2008. The 1998–2000 aerial surveys were documented in LeDuc *et al.* (2001), and surveys using identical methods were conducted in 2001 (by the Southwest Fisheries Science Center) and in 2008 (by the National Marine Mammal Laboratory (NMML)).

Oblique identification photographs were taken on surveys in 1999 (LeDuc *et al.* 2001), in 2004 (Wade *et al.* 2006), and in 2008. NMML conducted right whale ship surveys in the Bering Sea in 2005 and 2007, but did not detect any right whales in those years. Right whales were also photographed during a right whale survey in 2002 (LeDuc 2004) but only one quality 2/3 photograph was obtained of the right side of one individual. Additional information available from all photographs (e.g. partial views of the left side of the animals from head-on shots) suggests that three individuals identified from right-side only photographs were indeed different individuals. However, as noted below, right-side identifications were excluded from this study to preclude the occurrence in our analysis of a single whale as two individuals.

All photographs were evaluated for photo quality (focus, exposure, view of the whale) on a scale of 0–3. The analysis was restricted to quality 2/3 (good and excellent) photographs, which are sufficient to allow matching between an aerial photograph and an oblique view of one side of the head. Photographs of both the left and the right side of the head were not always obtained in each ship encounter. As more left-side oblique identifications were available, a total sighting history was created using only aerial and left-side identifications, resulting in photographs being available for the analysis for the years 1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2004 and 2008 (electronic supplementary material, table S1). In the time-dependent models, capture probability was fixed to zero in the years for which no quality 2/3 identifications were available.

(b) *Genetic-identification methods*

Biopsy tissue samples were obtained on surveys conducted in 1997, 1999 (LeDuc *et al.* 2001), 2002 (LeDuc 2004) and 2004 (Wade *et al.* 2006; electronic supplementary material, table S1). Photographs and biopsy samples of North Pacific right whales have not been linked in every case in the field. Therefore, there is not necessarily any direct correspondence between photo and genetic identifications in the same year.

Electronic supplementary material is available at http://dx.doi.org/10.1098/rsbl.2010.0477 or via http://rsbl.royalsocietypublishing.org.

Received 21 May 2010
Accepted 7 June 2010

FirstCite e-publishing

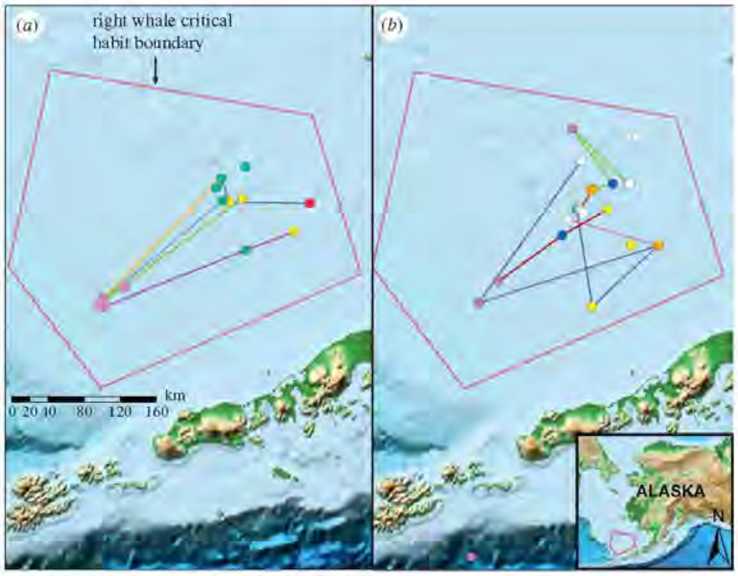


Figure 1. Locations in the Bering Sea and Aleutian Islands of eastern North Pacific right whales individually identified (*a*) through genetics or (*b*) through photographs. Lines connect sightings of the same individual in different years. The pentagon shows the critical habitat established by NOAA in 2007. (*a*) Red, 1997; yellow, 1999; green, 2002; pink, 2004. (*b*) Green, 1998; dark blue, 2001; yellow, 1999; pink, 2004; orange, 2000; white, 2008.

Forty-three biopsy samples from the Bering Sea were used in the mark–recapture analysis. Methods used for the genotyping of individuals, with minor modifications, are those described in LeDuc *et al.* (2001); details are provided in the electronic supplementary material. Each sample was sexed according to the methods described in Fain & LeMay (1995).

(c) *Mark–recapture methods*

The POPAN Jolly–Seber open population model was used for both analyses, using all combinations of both constant and time-dependent capture probability (p), survival (phi), and the probability of entry into the population ($pent$) (Arnason & Schwarz 1995). The sex of each whale was determined from genetic methods, so in the genetic dataset, a sex-specific model was also specified for p, phi and $pent$. Give the apparent differences in the number of males and females (Wade *et al.* 2006), one additional model was specified for capture probability—an additive model between sex and year. Program MARK was used for the analyses selecting the model POPAN (White & Burnham 1999). AICc was used for model selection.

3. RESULTS

Twenty-one individuals were identified from genotyping from the Aleutian Islands and the Bering Sea, comprising 15 males and six females. In aggregate, there were eight matches across years involving five individuals (electronic supplementary material, table S2a). Wade *et al.* (2006) reported 17 individuals (including seven females) identified from genotyping in 2004; that number has been revised here to 16 individuals (including six females) because a typographical error was subsequently discovered that masked a duplicate sample. Eighteen unique individuals were identified from photographs of callosity patterns and scars, with 10 resights across years involving five individuals (electronic supplementary material, table S2b).

The best model for each dataset (as chosen by AICc) was a constant parameter model (unsurprising given the small sample sizes). The full model selection results and parameter estimates are presented in electronic supplementary material, tables S3–S6. As expected, the estimates of survival were imprecise (photographic estimate 0.97 (95% CL 0.09–1.00) and genetic estimate 0.90 (95% CL 0.64–0.98)). The photo-identification estimate of capture probability was 0.35 (95% CL 0.14–0.65) and the genetic estimate was 0.71 (95% CL 0.22–0.95). The best model in the photo-identification analysis had a ΔAICc of 8.7 over the next best model, so only the results of the best model are considered here. The abundance estimate from that model was 31 (95% CL 23–54). In the genetic results, several models had AICc model weights >0.05; abundance was therefore averaged across the top models using AICc weights, resulting in a genetic total estimate of 28 (95% CL 24–42), with an estimated eight females (95% CL 7–18) and 20 males (95% CL 17–37). Abundance estimates were not overly sensitive to the estimated survival rate (electronic supplementary material, table S7), indicating the imprecision of the survival estimate did not greatly affect the results.

4. DISCUSSION

The photographic and genetic abundance estimates reported here are in close agreement, and represent the first such estimates for the eastern North Pacific right whale population. The estimates may relate to a subpopulation with strong site fidelity to the Bering Sea; nonetheless, their small size and the low number of sightings of right whales elsewhere, make it very unlikely that the eastern North Pacific population is much larger than these estimates suggest. Extensive illegal Soviet whaling also occurred in the Gulf of Alaska during the 1960s, but few right whales are currently found there; visual sightings are extremely rare, and acoustic instruments in seven widespread locations detected right whale calls on only 6 days out of a total of 80 months of recordings (Mellinger *et al.* 2004). Only two whales have been photo-identified from the Gulf and neither of these individuals has been seen in the Bering Sea.

The western North Pacific population of right whales is considered isolated from the eastern Pacific population. The western population is also small and at risk of extinction; however, while no reliable published estimate of abundance exists, survey data suggest it is much larger than the eastern population, numbering in the several hundreds or more (Brownell *et al.* 2001). Our abundance estimates strongly support the recent IUCN 'critically endangered' designation for eastern North Pacific right whales (defined as less than 50 mature individuals). This is the smallest whale population in the world for which an abundance estimate exists; in comparison, the critically endangered western population of grey whale (*Eschrichtius robustus*) is estimated to be approximately 100 (Bradford *et al.* 2008). Eastern North Pacific right whales may be on par with other relict (but unestimated) populations decimated by whaling for which there is a similar rarity of sightings, such as bowhead whales (*Balaena mysticetus*) near Svalbard, right whales (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in the eastern North Atlantic or right whales (*Eubalaena australis*) in Chile and Peru. The long-term persistence of the population is in doubt given the exceptionally small number of females. The sex ratio observed here (approx. 2 : 1 males to females) is more encouraging than the greater skew reported in LeDuc *et al.* (2001), but the paucity of females is still a major cause for concern. Other species of right whales are highly vulnerable to ship collisions, and these whales cross a major Trans-Pacific shipping lane when travelling to and from the Bering Sea; their probability of ship-strike mortalities may increase with the likely future opening of an ice-free Northwest Passage. A plan needs to be developed to reduce or mitigate current and future threats to these whales from ship strikes, disturbance from seismic activities and entanglement in fishing gear.

Had no further catches occurred, eastern North Pacific right whales would have been recovering from nineteenth- and early twentieth-century whaling, though the population would probably still have been severely depleted. Their precarious status today (only tens of animals) is a sad legacy of the massive campaign of illegal whaling conducted by the USSR in the 1960s. Their situation presents us with a grim reminder that international fisheries and whaling agreements are largely worthless if unaccompanied by stringent international monitoring and regulation of catches (Clapham & Ivashchenko 2009).

We thank the US Minerals Management Service for partial funding of this work, the observers, photographers and crew of all the surveys, P. Hamilton and M. Marx for help with the photo-ID catalogue, J. Laake for help with the analyses and G. Duker, V. Papastavru and three anonymous referees for thoughtful reviews of the manuscript. This research was conducted under NMFS permits 782–1719 and 774–1714.

Arnason, A. N. & Schwarz, C. J. 1995 POPAN-4: enhancements to a system for the analysis of mark–recapture data from open populations. *J. Appl. Stat.* **22**, 785–800.

Bradford, A., Weller, D. W., Wade, P. R., Burdin, A. M. & Brownell Jr, R. L. 2008 Population abundance and growth rate of western gray whales *Eschrichtius robustus*. *Endangered Species Res.* **6**, 1–14. (doi:10.3354/esr00106)

Brownell Jr, R. L., Clapham, P. J., Miyashita, T. & Kasuya, T. 2001 Conservation status of North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*). *J. Cetacean Res. Manage.* **2**, 269–286.

Clapham, P. J. & Ivashchenko, Y. V. 2009 A whale of a deception. *Mar. Fish. Rev* 71, 44–52.

Clapham, P., Good, C., Quinn, S., Reeves, R. R., Scarff, J. E. & Brownell Jr, R. L. 2004 Distribution of North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) as shown by 19th and 20th century whaling catch and sighting records. *J. Cetacean Res. Manage.* **6**, 1–6.

Doroshenko, N. V. 2000 Soviet Whaling Data (1949–1979), pp. 96–103. Moscow: Center for Russian Environmental Policy.

Fain, S. R. & LeMay, J. P. 1995 Gender identification of humans and mammalian wildlife species from PCR amplified sex-linked genes. *Proc. Am. Acad. Forensic Sci.* **1**, 34.

Goddard, P. D. & Rugh, D. J. 1998 A group of right whales seen in the Bering Sea in July 1996. *Mar. Mamm. Sci.* **14**, 344–349. (doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.1998.tb00725.x)

LeDuc, R. G. 2004. Report of the results of the 2002 survey for North Pacific right whales. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC-357.

LeDuc, R. G., Perryman, W. L., Gilpatrick Jr, J. W., Hyde, J., Stinchcomb, C., Carretta, J. V. & Brownell Jr, R. L. 2001 A note on recent surveys for right whales in the southeastern Bering Sea. *J. Cetacean Res. Manage.* **Special Issue 2**, 287–289.

Mellinger, D. K., Stafford, K. M., Moore, S. E., Munger, L. & Fox, C. G. 2004 Detection of North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) calls in the Gulf of Alaska. *Mar. Mamm. Sci.* **20**, 872–879. (doi:10.1111/j.1748-7692.2004.tb01198.x)

Scarff, J. E. 2001 Preliminary estimates of whaling-induced mortality in the 19th century North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonicus*) fishery, adjusting for struck-but-lost whales and non-American whaling. *J. Cetacean Res. Manage.* **Special Issue 2**, 261–268.

Wade, P. R., Heide-Jorgensen, M. P., Barlow, J., Caretta, J., Durban, J., LeDuc, R., Munger, L., Rankin, S. & Sauter, A. 2006 Acoustic detection and satellite tracking leads to discovery of rare concentration of endangered North Pacific right whales. *Biol. Lett.* **2**, 417–419. (doi:10.1098/rsbl.2006.0460)

White, G. C. & Burnham, K. P. 1999 Program MARK: Survival estimation from populations of marked animals. *Bird Study* **46**(Suppl.), 120–138.

Yablokov, A. V. 1994 Validity of whaling data. *Nature* **367**, 108. (doi:10.1038/367108a0)

mms_573 mmsxml-als-v2.cls (1994/07/13 v1.2u Standard LaTeX document class) 4-18-2012 5:58

aptara	MMS	mms_573	Dispatch: 4-18-2012	CE: N/A
	Journal	MSP No.	No. of pages: 11	PE: Clara

Notes

MARINE MAMMAL SCIENCE, 00(0): 1–11 (2012)

DOI: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2012.00573.x

Using air-deployed passive sonobuoys to detect and locate critically endangered North Pacific right whales

BRENDA K. RONE,[1] CATHERINE L. BERCHOK, JESSICA L. CRANCE, PHILLIP J. CLAPHAM,
National Marine Mammal Laboratory, Alaska Fisheries Science Center, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, Washington 98115, U.S.A.

The North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*, NPRW) is arguably the most endangered large whale in the world. Whaling records indicate that right whales were once abundant throughout the eastern North Pacific and Bering Sea over the continental shelf, slope, and abyssal plain during the summer months (Clapham *et al.* 2004, Shelden *et al.* 2005). Recent mark-recapture estimates of abundance from both photographic and genotype data collected during dedicated cruises and opportunistic sightings in the southeastern Bering Sea (SEBS) indicate an eastern North Pacific population of approximately 30 individuals, with an estimated eight females (Wade *et al.* 2011*b*). Although this may relate to a subpopulation, the paucity of sightings elsewhere indicates the entire eastern population is not likely much larger (Wade *et al.* 2011*a*, *b*). Marques *et al.* (2011) obtained comparable abundance results from passive acoustic studies and proposed these animals may belong to a subpopulation of the western stock, but there are insufficient data to support this hypothesis at this time. Such low numbers are in part a result of extensive historical whaling in the 19th century. Brownell *et al.* (2001) suggested that the population was growing by 1960, but large illegal catches by Soviet whalers totaling 529 animals[2] during the 1960s in the Gulf of Alaska and Bering Sea likely crippled recovery. Today, they are a remnant of their former population with a presumably restricted summertime range (Clapham *et al.* 2004). Although the eastern NPRW is listed as critically endangered (Reilly *et al.* 2008), current recovery efforts for this species are impeded by major

[1]Corresponding author (e-mail: brenda.rone@noaa.gov).

[2]Ivashchenko, Y. V., and P. J. Clapham. Soviet catches of bowhead (*Balaena mysticetus*) and right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the North Pacific and Okhotsk Sea. Unpublished manuscript, NOAA Fisheries, AFSC/National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sandpoint Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115, March 2012. This is an update to the estimated 372 animals in Doroshenko (2000).

mms_573 mmsxml-als-v2.cls (1994/07/13 v1.2u Standard LaTeX document class) 4-18-2012 5:58

aptara	MMS	mms_573	Dispatch: 4-18-2012	CE: N/A
	Journal	MSP No.	No. of pages: 11	PE: Clara

Notes

MARINE MAMMAL SCIENCE, 00(0): 1–11 (2012)

DOI: 10.1111/j.1748-7692.2012.00573.x

Using air-deployed passive sonobuoys to detect and locate critically endangered North Pacific right whales

Brenda K. Rone,[1] Catherine L. Berchok, Jessica L. Crance, Phillip J. Clapham,
National Marine Mammal Laboratory, Alaska Fisheries Science Center, 7600 Sand Point Way NE, Seattle, Washington 98115, U.S.A.

The North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*, NPRW) is arguably the most endangered large whale in the world. Whaling records indicate that right whales were once abundant throughout the eastern North Pacific and Bering Sea over the continental shelf, slope, and abyssal plain during the summer months (Clapham *et al.* 2004, Shelden *et al.* 2005). Recent mark-recapture estimates of abundance from both photographic and genotype data collected during dedicated cruises and opportunistic sightings in the southeastern Bering Sea (SEBS) indicate an eastern North Pacific population of approximately 30 individuals, with an estimated eight females (Wade *et al.* 2011*b*). Although this may relate to a subpopulation, the paucity of sightings elsewhere indicates the entire eastern population is not likely much larger (Wade *et al.* 2011*a*, *b*). Marques *et al.* (2011) obtained comparable abundance results from passive acoustic studies and proposed these animals may belong to a subpopulation of the western stock, but there are insufficient data to support this hypothesis at this time. Such low numbers are in part a result of extensive historical whaling in the 19th century. Brownell *et al.* (2001) suggested that the population was growing by 1960, but large illegal catches by Soviet whalers totaling 529 animals[2] during the 1960s in the Gulf of Alaska and Bering Sea likely crippled recovery. Today, they are a remnant of their former population with a presumably restricted summertime range (Clapham *et al.* 2004). Although the eastern NPRW is listed as critically endangered (Reilly *et al.* 2008), current recovery efforts for this species are impeded by major

[1]Corresponding author (e-mail: brenda.rone@noaa.gov).

[2]Ivashchenko, Y. V., and P. J. Clapham. Soviet catches of bowhead (*Balaena mysticetus*) and right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the North Pacific and Okhotsk Sea. Unpublished manuscript, NOAA Fisheries, AFSC/National Marine Mammal Laboratory, 7600 Sandpoint Way NE, Seattle, WA 98115, March 2012. This is an update to the estimated 372 animals in Doroshenko (2000).

gaps in knowledge regarding their population size, distribution, migration, habitat use, and anthropogenic threats.

Passive acoustic sampling is an effective way to study rare and elusive vocal marine species such as right whales located in environments that are remote and often inhospitable to humans (Waite *et al.* 2003, Mellinger *et al.* 2004, Moore *et al.* 2006, Munger *et al.* 2008). Navy surplus sonobuoys (Holler *et al.* 2008) have proven valuable for marine mammal research (McDonald 2004) and have been used in concurrence with visual surveys to detect and locate large whales from vessels (Norris *et al.* 1999, Swartz *et al.* 2003, Rankin *et al.* 2006, Rankin and Barlow 2007, Stafford *et al.* 2008), as well as, aircraft (Moore *et al.* 1989). Specifically, they have proven effective in detecting and locating individual NPRWs for genetic, photo-identification and satellite tagging operations (McDonald and Moore 2002, Wade *et al.* 2006) during vessel surveys. Although aircraft deployments of sonobuoys to document the presence of cetaceans during aerial surveys have been utilized (Levenson and Leapley 1978, Ljungblad *et al.* 1982, Ljungblad and Moore 1983, Stafford *et al.* 1998, Laurinolli *et al.* 2003), incoming acoustic data to direct the plane to real-time locations have not been explored.

From 2007 to 2010, a multiyear study of NPRWs was conducted in the SEBS within the North Aleutian Basin oil and gas lease area, including federally designated critical habitat for this species (Fig. 1). The goal of this study was to locate NPRWs in order to collect photographs and biopsy samples, deploy satellite transmitter tags, and conduct foraging ecology studies. In this note, we report on the use of sonobuoys deployed from an aircraft in 2009 to successfully detect and locate NPRWs for this study. Acoustic operations provided an effective strategy for identifying areas of right whale presence, maximizing survey resources, and increasing sighting results, particularly during weather conditions that are typically difficult or impossible to locate animals using visual methods alone.

Aerial surveys were conducted from 14 July to 25 August 2009 in an Aero Commander 690A at a target speed of 110 knots and an altitude of 230 m, weather permitting. Prior to sonobuoy deployment, a brief survey of the area was conducted to document animals and vessel traffic to ensure safe deployment. Acoustic equipment was mounted on the back of the starboard observer seat (Fig. 2) to maximize limited available space. Sonobuoy hydrophones were programmed to operate at a depth of 27 m (AN/SSQ-53E; sensitivity: 118 $\pm$ 3dB @ 100 Hz) and 60 m (AN/SSQ-77C; sensitivity: 112 $\pm$ 3dB re 1 uPa @ 100 Hz) for 8 h, although operational time was contingent on radio reception range and aircraft endurance. Because the purpose of this system was to locate NPRWs using cross bearings computed from the Directional Frequency Analysis and Recording (DiFAR) data, not via calculations obtained from propagation modeling, it was unnecessary to calibrate the recording system.

AN/SSQ-53E and AN/SSQ-77C sonobuoys were deployed through the aircraft belly port (Fig. 2). For the 77C sonobuoys, the frequency response was flat ($\pm$3 dB) from 0.8 to 2.4 kHz, with a low frequency roll-off of 6 dB per octave from 10 to 800 Hz and an 18 dB/octave below 10 Hz and above 2.4 kHz, the upper limit of the audio channel. The 53E sonobuoys had a flat ($\pm$3 dB) frequency response from 0.6 to 2.4 kHz, with the same roll-off as the 77C units. The recording system had a gaps in knowledge regarding their population size, distribution, migration, habitat use, and anthropogenic threats.

Passive acoustic sampling is an effective way to study rare and elusive vocal marine species such as right whales located in environments that are remote and often inhospitable to humans (Waite *et al.* 2003, Mellinger *et al.* 2004, Moore *et al.* 2006, Munger *et al.* 2008). Navy surplus sonobuoys (Holler *et al.* 2008) have proven valuable for marine mammal research (McDonald 2004) and have been used in concurrence with visual surveys to detect and locate large whales from vessels (Norris *et al.* 1999, Swartz *et al.* 2003, Rankin *et al.* 2006, Rankin and Barlow 2007, Stafford *et al.* 2008), as well as, aircraft (Moore *et al.* 1989). Specifically, they have proven effective in detecting and locating individual NPRWs for genetic, photo-identification and satellite tagging operations (McDonald and Moore 2002, Wade *et al.* 2006) during vessel surveys. Although aircraft deployments of sonobuoys to document the presence of cetaceans during aerial surveys have been utilized (Levenson and Leapley 1978, Ljungblad *et al.* 1982, Ljungblad and Moore 1983, Stafford *et al.* 1998, Laurinolli *et al.* 2003), incoming acoustic data to direct the plane to real-time locations have not been explored.

From 2007 to 2010, a multiyear study of NPRWs was conducted in the SEBS within the North Aleutian Basin oil and gas lease area, including federally designated critical habitat for this species (Fig. 1). The goal of this study was to locate NPRWs in order to collect photographs and biopsy samples, deploy satellite transmitter tags, and conduct foraging ecology studies. In this note, we report on the use of sonobuoys deployed from an aircraft in 2009 to successfully detect and locate NPRWs for this study. Acoustic operations provided an effective strategy for identifying areas of right whale presence, maximizing survey resources, and increasing sighting results, particularly during weather conditions that are typically difficult or impossible to locate animals using visual methods alone.

Aerial surveys were conducted from 14 July to 25 August 2009 in an Aero Commander 690A at a target speed of 110 knots and an altitude of 230 m, weather permitting. Prior to sonobuoy deployment, a brief survey of the area was conducted to document animals and vessel traffic to ensure safe deployment. Acoustic equipment was mounted on the back of the starboard observer seat (Fig. 2) to maximize limited available space. Sonobuoy hydrophones were programmed to operate at a depth of 27 m (AN/SSQ-53E; sensitivity: 118 ± 3dB @ 100 Hz) and 60 m (AN/SSQ-77C; sensitivity: 112 ± 3dB re 1 uPa @ 100 Hz) for 8 h, although operational time was contingent on radio reception range and aircraft endurance. Because the purpose of this system was to locate NPRWs using cross bearings computed from the Directional Frequency Analysis and Recording (DiFAR) data, not via calculations obtained from propagation modeling, it was unnecessary to calibrate the recording system.

AN/SSQ-53E and AN/SSQ-77C sonobuoys were deployed through the aircraft belly port (Fig. 2). For the 77C sonobuoys, the frequency response was flat (±3 dB) from 0.8 to 2.4 kHz, with a low frequency roll-off of 6 dB per octave from 10 to 800 Hz and an 18 dB/octave below 10 Hz and above 2.4 kHz, the upper limit of the audio channel. The 53E sonobuoys had a flat (±3 dB) frequency response from 0.6 to 2.4 kHz, with the same roll-off as the 77C units. The recording system had a

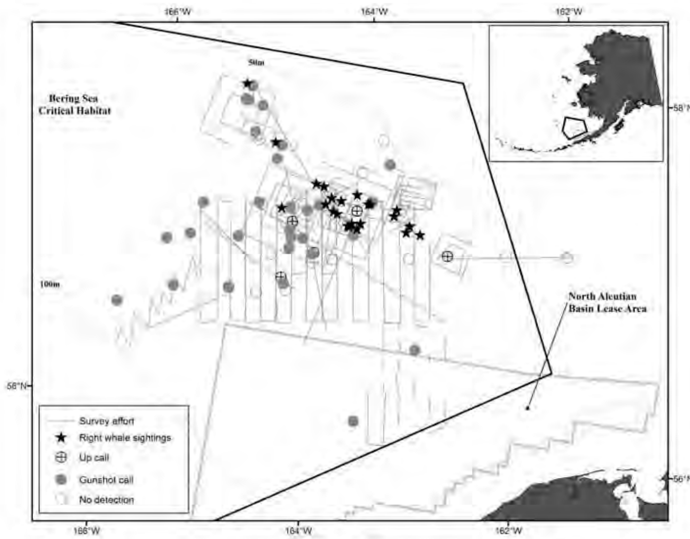


Figure 1. Study area in the southeastern Bering Sea (inset) within the Bering Sea critical habitat and the North Aleutian Basin oil and gas lease area. Represented aerial survey results include trackline, sonobuoy deployments, and North Pacific right whale sightings and acoustic detections from the 2009 aerial survey. Note: stars represent a right whale sighting event and may not represent unique individuals.

sampling rate of 48 kHz and therefore was audio-channel limited in both cases. The frequency range of both the in-field monitoring and in-lab analysis was 0–800 Hz for quick visual detection of the calls.

The acoustic signals were relayed back to the aircraft's VHF radio antenna which fed into a two-way power divider (Advanced Receiver Research, Burlington, CT; frequency range: 0.1–400 MHz). The outputs from the power divider were input into two WiNRADiO G39WSBe receivers[3] (frequency range: 136.0–173.5 MHz, frequency response: 5 Hz–25 kHz [±1 dB], 5 Hz–40 kHz [±2 dB]; Fig. 2; WiNRADiO Communications, Oakleigh, Australia;). The digital output of these receivers was input into the laptop computer *via* USB to allow for control of the receiver and monitoring of the signal using WiNRADiO G39WSB software Version 1.13 (available at http://www.winradio.com). The analog output of these receivers was fed into a Creative Sound Blaster Audigy2 NX model SB0300 soundcard set to sample at 48 kHz. Two windows of Ishmael 2.0 (Mellinger 2001) were used

[3]Reference to trade names does not imply endorsement by the National Marine Fisheries Service, NOAA.

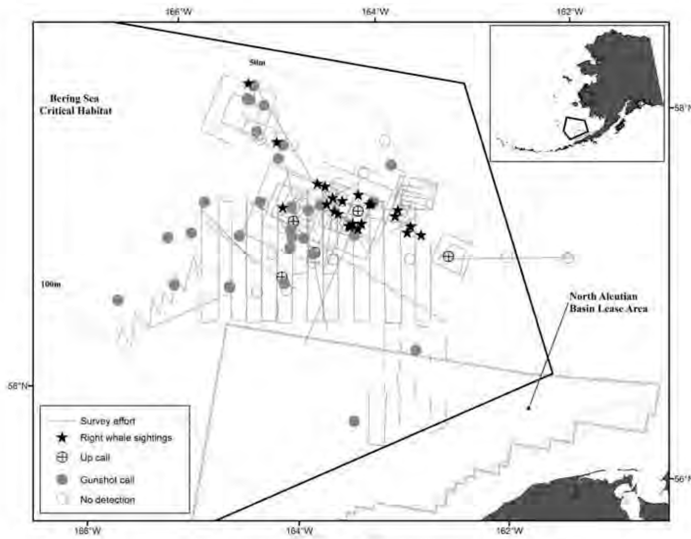


Figure 1. Study area in the southeastern Bering Sea (inset) within the Bering Sea critical habitat and the North Aleutian Basin oil and gas lease area. Represented aerial survey results include trackline, sonobuoy deployments, and North Pacific right whale sightings and acoustic detections from the 2009 aerial survey. Note: stars represent a right whale sighting event and may not represent unique individuals.

sampling rate of 48 kHz and therefore was audio-channel limited in both cases. The frequency range of both the in-field monitoring and in-lab analysis was 0–800 Hz for quick visual detection of the calls.

The acoustic signals were relayed back to the aircraft's VHF radio antenna which fed into a two-way power divider (Advanced Receiver Research, Burlington, CT; frequency range: 0.1–400 MHz). The outputs from the power divider were input into two WiNRADiO G39WSBe receivers[3] (frequency range: 136.0–173.5 MHz, frequency response: 5 Hz–25 kHz [±1 dB], 5 Hz–40 kHz [±2 dB]; Fig. 2; WiNRADiO Communications, Oakleigh, Australia;). The digital output of these receivers was input into the laptop computer *via* USB to allow for control of the receiver and monitoring of the signal using WiNRADiO G39WSB software Version 1.13 (available at http://www.winradio.com). The analog output of these receivers was fed into a Creative Sound Blaster Audigy2 NX model SB0300 soundcard set to sample at 48 kHz. Two windows of Ishmael 2.0 (Mellinger 2001) were used

[3]Reference to trade names does not imply endorsement by the National Marine Fisheries Service, NOAA.

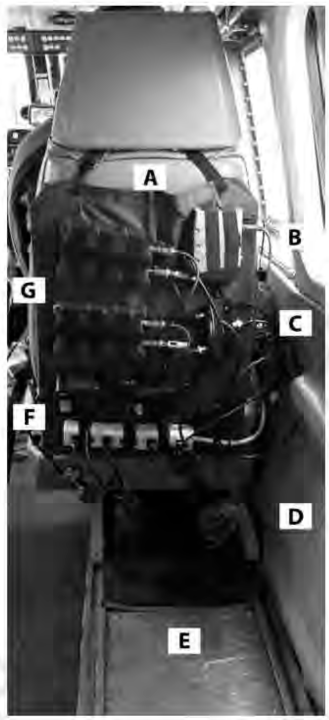


Figure 2. In the aircraft, an acoustic gear harness (A) secured the sound card (B), antenna splitter (C), antenna cable (D), power supplies (F), and two WiNRADiO receivers (G) for safety and to maximize the limited space. Sonobuoys were deployed out the belly port (E).

simultaneously; one to save the acoustic signal in 10 min wave files, and one to monitor the signal for right whale calls and perform the DiFAR bearing computations.

The "gunshot" (Fig. 3) and the "up" calls were two call types considered for in-flight detection of NPRWs. Gunshot calls are short, intense broadband acoustic signals (Parks *et al.* 2005). This call type has been attributed to the North Atlantic (*E. glacialis*, NARW, Parks and Tyack 2005, Parks *et al.* 2005) and southern right whale (*E. australis*, SRW, Clark 1982, described as "underwater slaps"). Presently, this call type has only been documented in males (females cannot be excluded) and is suggested to be a function of reproductive advertisement (Parks *et al.* 2005). The gunshot call was recently confirmed for NPRWs during a simultaneous acoustic and visual focal follow of several individuals (CLB, unpublished data). Call duration

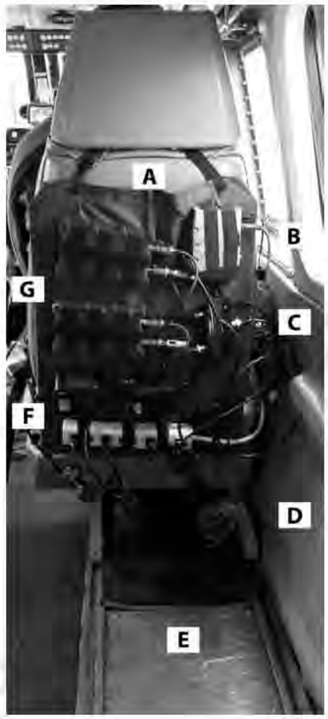


Figure 2. In the aircraft, an acoustic gear harness (A) secured the sound card (B), antenna splitter (C), antenna cable (D), power supplies (F), and two WiNRADiO receivers (G) for safety and to maximize the limited space. Sonobuoys were deployed out the belly port (E).

simultaneously; one to save the acoustic signal in 10 min wave files, and one to monitor the signal for right whale calls and perform the DiFAR bearing computations.

The "gunshot" (Fig. 3) and the "up" calls were two call types considered for in-flight detection of NPRWs. Gunshot calls are short, intense broadband acoustic signals (Parks *et al.* 2005). This call type has been attributed to the North Atlantic (*E. glacialis*, NARW, Parks and Tyack 2005, Parks *et al.* 2005) and southern right whale (*E. australis*, SRW, Clark 1982, described as "underwater slaps"). Presently, this call type has only been documented in males (females cannot be excluded) and is suggested to be a function of reproductive advertisement (Parks *et al.* 2005). The gunshot call was recently confirmed for NPRWs during a simultaneous acoustic and visual focal follow of several individuals (CLB, unpublished data). Call duration

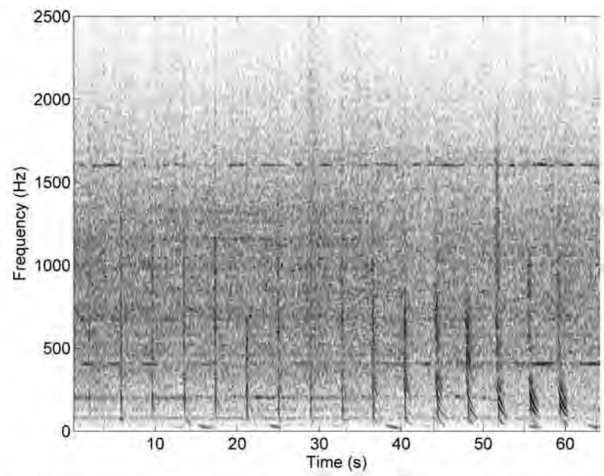


Figure 3. Example of a series of gunshot calls recorded from a North Pacific right whale in the southeastern Bering Sea. The overall duration of this call-type is 0.25–1.25 s with an average frequency range of 100–2,000 Hz. Note: fin whale calls are present along the bottom of the spectrogram. Spectrogram parameters: 1,024-point FFT, 95% overlap, Hamming window with 500 points zero padding. Analyzed with MATLAB at a sampling rate of 4.8 kHz.

ranged from 0.25 to 1.25 s with an average frequency range of 100–2,000 Hz (Fig. 3). Although a few gunshot calls exceeded the upper frequency limit of the system, most had a maximum frequency less than 2.4 kHz. This frequency range differs from NARWs documented at 20 Hz–20 kHz, with the upper range limited by recording equipment (Parks *et al.* 2005). Bowhead whales (*Balaena mysticetus*) produce a gunshot call (Würsig and Clark 1993); however, this species would not inhabit the NPRW's southern range extent during the summer months. Therefore, overlap with NPRWs was not a concern. The up call is a low frequency tonal call with a frequency range of 80–200 Hz and a duration of 0.8–1.5 s for NPRWs (JLC, unpublished data) similar to those reported for both previous research on NPRWs (*e.g.*, McDonald and Moore 2002, Mellinger *et al.* 2004, Munger *et al.* 2008) and NARWs (*e.g.*, Parks and Tyack 2005). The caveat with using this call type is the requisite for additional analysis to distinguish from humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*), which are frequently observed within the same area as NPRWs (Mellinger *et al.* 2004, Munger *et al.* 2005).

Broadband sounds similar to the gunshot have been documented from surface active behaviors such as fluke and pectoral slaps by SRWs (Clark 1982) and NARWs (Parks *et al.* 2005), humpbacks (Thompson *et al.* 1986) and bowhead whales (Würsig and Clark 1993). As previously stated, bowhead whales were not present during this study period. Surface behaviors by humpback and NPRWs can be distinguished

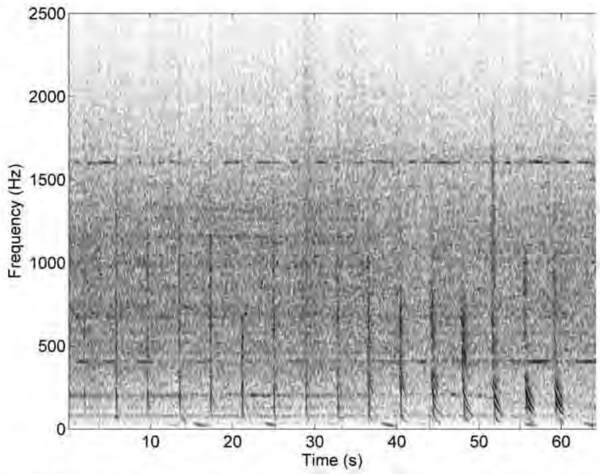


Figure 3. Example of a series of gunshot calls recorded from a North Pacific right whale in the southeastern Bering Sea. The overall duration of this call-type is 0.25–1.25 s with an average frequency range of 100–2,000 Hz. Note: fin whale calls are present along the bottom of the spectrogram. Spectrogram parameters: 1,024-point FFT, 95% overlap, Hamming window with 500 points zero padding. Analyzed with MATLAB at a sampling rate of 4.8 kHz.

ranged from 0.25 to 1.25 s with an average frequency range of 100–2,000 Hz (Fig. 3). Although a few gunshot calls exceeded the upper frequency limit of the system, most had a maximum frequency less than 2.4 kHz. This frequency range differs from NARWs documented at 20 Hz–20 kHz, with the upper range limited by recording equipment (Parks *et al.* 2005). Bowhead whales (*Balaena mysticetus*) produce a gunshot call (Würsig and Clark 1993); however, this species would not inhabit the NPRW's southern range extent during the summer months. Therefore, overlap with NPRWs was not a concern. The up call is a low frequency tonal call with a frequency range of 80–200 Hz and a duration of 0.8–1.5 s for NPRWs (JLC, unpublished data) similar to those reported for both previous research on NPRWs (*e.g.*, McDonald and Moore 2002, Mellinger *et al.* 2004, Munger *et al.* 2008) and NARWs (*e.g.*, Parks and Tyack 2005). The caveat with using this call type is the requisite for additional analysis to distinguish from humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*), which are frequently observed within the same area as NPRWs (Mellinger *et al.* 2004, Munger *et al.* 2005).

Broadband sounds similar to the gunshot have been documented from surface active behaviors such as fluke and pectoral slaps by SRWs (Clark 1982) and NARWs (Parks *et al.* 2005), humpbacks (Thompson *et al.* 1986) and bowhead whales (Würsig and Clark 1993). As previously stated, bowhead whales were not present during this study period. Surface behaviors by humpback and NPRWs can be distinguished

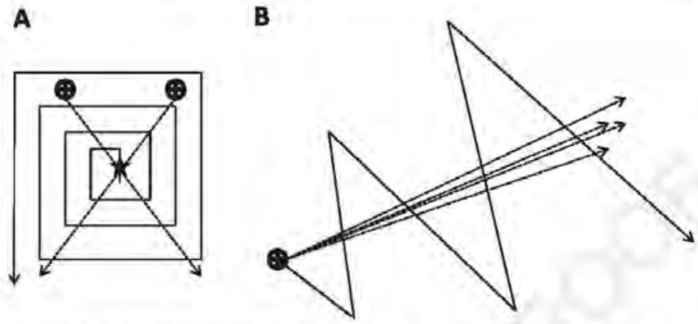


Figure 4. (A) Once consistent bearings (dotted) to gunshot detections of a North Pacific right whale were established from sonobuoys (circle), a crossfix (star) was calculated, and transects (solid) were flown in a fine-scale expanding search pattern around the crossfix, typically at a 9 km spacing. (B) When a crossfix was unattainable but a consistent bearing was established (dotted) from a sonobuoy (circle) to gunshot detections from a North Pacific right whale, transects (solid) were flown in a sawtooth pattern at approximately 45° angles starting from the sonobuoy and surveying out in the direction of the bearing.

from gunshot calls due to the nature of the higher frequency and greater intensity of the acoustic signal (Parks *et al.* 2005).

With these considerations, we assumed that this broadband sound was attributed to NPRWs in the SEBS during summer months. Thus, this call was selected for in-flight detection due to audibility during operations and its distinct nature. When gunshot calls were detected, an additional sonobuoy was deployed to localize the sound source and to calculate a cross bearing using *Ishmael 2.0*. Crossfixes were calculated using custom-made software developed in MATLAB by CLB based on direction finding software created by McDonald (McDonald and Moore 2002) that uses de-multiplexing software by Greeneridge Sciences, Inc. If a solution to the crossfix was obtained, the aircraft surveyed in an expanding search pattern around the calculated position (Fig. 4A). If a crossfix was unattainable, but a consistent bearing to a gunshot call location from one sonobuoy was established, a sawtooth pattern was conducted in the direction of the detection bearing from the sonobuoy (Fig. 4B). Aerial operations continued in the area of acoustic detections until the animals were either located or effort ceased due to aircraft endurance.

Acoustic data were collected from one or two channels depending on the number of sonobuoys deployed each flight. For postsurvey data processing, spectrograms of the recordings were generated and analyzed in 225 s segments using custom designed analysis software in MATLAB. Each segment was manually checked for the presence of the right whale gunshot and up calls with a corresponding yes, no, or maybe. Indeterminate calls were removed and duplicate calls (identified when multiple calls on two buoys shared the same time spacing), were counted as one call. For each segment with confirmed detections, individual calls were tallied for both the gunshot and up calls. Call rates were calculated as calls per minute over the entire

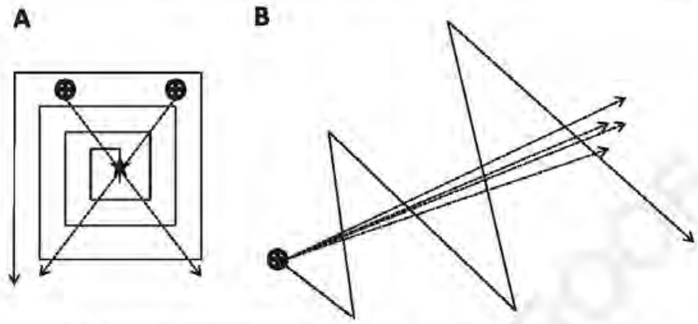


Figure 4. (A) Once consistent bearings (dotted) to gunshot detections of a North Pacific right whale were established from sonobuoys (circle), a crossfix (star) was calculated, and transects (solid) were flown in a fine-scale expanding search pattern around the crossfix, typically at a 9 km spacing. (B) When a crossfix was unattainable but a consistent bearing was established (dotted) from a sonobuoy (circle) to gunshot detections from a North Pacific right whale, transects (solid) were flown in a sawtooth pattern at approximately 45° angles starting from the sonobuoy and surveying out in the direction of the bearing.

from gunshot calls due to the nature of the higher frequency and greater intensity of the acoustic signal (Parks *et al.* 2005).

With these considerations, we assumed that this broadband sound was attributed to NPRWs in the SEBS during summer months. Thus, this call was selected for in-flight detection due to audibility during operations and its distinct nature. When gunshot calls were detected, an additional sonobuoy was deployed to localize the sound source and to calculate a cross bearing using *Ishmael 2.0*. Crossfixes were calculated using custom-made software developed in MATLAB by CLB based on direction finding software created by McDonald (McDonald and Moore 2002) that uses de-multiplexing software by Greeneridge Sciences, Inc. If a solution to the crossfix was obtained, the aircraft surveyed in an expanding search pattern around the calculated position (Fig. 4A). If a crossfix was unattainable, but a consistent bearing to a gunshot call location from one sonobuoy was established, a sawtooth pattern was conducted in the direction of the detection bearing from the sonobuoy (Fig. 4B). Aerial operations continued in the area of acoustic detections until the animals were either located or effort ceased due to aircraft endurance.

Acoustic data were collected from one or two channels depending on the number of sonobuoys deployed each flight. For postsurvey data processing, spectrograms of the recordings were generated and analyzed in 225 s segments using custom designed analysis software in MATLAB. Each segment was manually checked for the presence of the right whale gunshot and up calls with a corresponding yes, no, or maybe. Indeterminate calls were removed and duplicate calls (identified when multiple calls on two buoys shared the same time spacing), were counted as one call. For each segment with confirmed detections, individual calls were tallied for both the gunshot and up calls. Call rates were calculated as calls per minute over the entire

Table 1. Aerial survey effort in 2009 including successful sonobuoy deployments, recordings and visual and acoustic North Pacific right whale detections.

Date	Number NPRW (located acoustically)	Number sonobuoys	Recording time (min)	Total gunshot calls	Gunshot call rate (calls/min)	Total up calls[a]	Up call rate (calls/min)	Sea state
14 July	0	1	105	0	0	0	0	2–3
15 July	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1–2
19 July	0	3	242	0	0	3	0.012	5–6
22 July	0	1	230	28	0.122	0	0	3–4
23 July	0	2	260	0	0	0	0	3
25 July	0	4	380	1	0.003	6	0.016	3–5
31 July[b]	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	2–4
01 August[b,c]	2(2)	4	683	299	0.438	11	0.016	4–5
04 August	0	4	389	51	0.131	8	0.090	3–6
07 August[d]	2(2)	2	343	639	1.86	10	0.029	5–7
08 August	0	3	318	29	0.091	1	0.003	5
12 August	0	3	198	89	0.449	19	0.096	8
14 August	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	3
15 August[b,c]	4(1)	3	466	495	1.06	0	0	1–2
16 August	0	5	176	551	3.13	0	0	6
18 August	0	2	210	19	0.090	2	0.010	4–5
19 August	0	2	372	90	0.242	16	0.043	4–5
22 August	4	2	378	2,232	5.90	0	0	5–6
23 August	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	4
24 August[c]	3(1)	2	278	703	2.53	0	0	2–3
25 August[c]	2(2)	4	356	952	2.67	0	0	7

[a]Up calls were not used for real-time right whale detections for the 2009 survey but are included in analysis to show frequency and utility.
[b]Two flights per day.
[c]Located acoustically using a crossfix.
[d]Located acoustically using a bearing to detections.

recording session for each flight. This rate was calculated to demonstrate utility of call detections within the time constraints of an aerial survey.

During a total of 23 survey flights, there were 54 sonobuoy deployments, of which 47 successfully recorded (Fig. 1); 90 h 13 min of recordings were collected and 36 sonobuoys detected NPRW calls. Right whales were detected visually on 10 flights (9 d; Table 1) comprising 22 visual sightings (27 animals) of seven unique individuals. All encounters were of individual animals except for one sighting of a pair on 25 August (Table 1). In all cases where sonobuoys were deployed and right whales were encountered, gunshot and/or up calls were detected. When gunshot calls were documented and animals were sighted, no surface active behavior was observed, confirming the assumption that this broadband sound was a call type and not a surface sound.

There were acoustic detections documented on 16 flights (15 d; Table 1) including 9 flights without visual encounters. Five of the 22 visual sightings were located by acoustic detections. In the case of four of these sightings (six animals; Table 1), a crossfix was calculated and animals were located using an expanding box search pattern (Fig. 3A) around the position. For the fifth sighting, a crossfix was not established; however, consistent bearings to gunshot call detections were calculated and a sawtooth pattern (Fig. 3B) led to a sighting of two individuals (Table 1). On only 2 d (14 and 23 July; Table 1) were sonobuoys deployed and right whales were not detected visually or acoustically. The mean gunshot call rate was 1.15 calls/min (total gunshots/total min, range = 0.003–5.90; Table 1), calculated from 6,178 gunshot calls. All recordings where NPRWs were sighted visually contained gunshot calls. There was a total of 81 up calls resulting in a mean up call rate of 0.02 calls/min (total up calls/total min, range = 0.003–0.010; Table 1).

Range of radio reception and acoustic detection was examined for aerial sonobuoy performance. Of the 17 sonobuoys for which maximum reception range was recorded, the mean radio reception range was 37 km (range = 17–96 km; median = 35 km). Reception range was likely influenced by the sonobuoy's functioning performance, as well as line of sight, which was affected by variation in aircraft altitude (range = 152–1,524 m), weather conditions (*i.e.*, Beaufort sea state and cloud cover), and the position of the aircraft's receiving antenna to the sonobuoy transmitter. Although there was a broad range in reception, it is likely that increased altitude was a large contributor to long range reception (range = 17 [altitude = 152 m]–96 km [altitude = 2,304 m]). The mean acoustic detection range was 23 km ($n = 8$; range = 4–63 km; median = 13 km), calculated as the distance from each sonobuoy that produced a crossfix and the actual position of the right whale encounter. Similar detection ranges of 19–30 km for right whales have been reported on the SEBS shelf using sonobuoys deployed from a vessel (McDonald and Moore 2002) with comparable results from the 2009 NPRW vessel survey. This acoustic range can be explained by the flat and shallow topography of the shelf which acts as a waveguide for channeling sounds over long distances (Wiggins *et al.* 2004).

Gunshot calls were detected 75 times more frequently than up calls. There were six days with only gunshots detected as compared to one day in which only up calls occurred (Table 1). Previous NPRW studies have not used this gunshot call for detections (McDonald and Moore 2002, Mellinger *et al.* 2001, Munger *et al.* 2008, Marques *et al.* 2011); therefore, no comparison can be made. Although there is a 2:1 male to female ratio for SEBS population (Wade *et al.* 2011*b*), this ratio is not sufficient to account for the disparity in rates of these two call types. The higher calling rate for gunshots in NPRWs likely makes this call the best candidate to obtain an inflight crossfix; however, the documentation of up calls provides an additional opportunity to identify areas of NPRW presence. We conclude that the detection of both calls are complementary and can be used for real-time detection.

Implementing an acoustic component to the aerial survey provided an effective strategy to detect and locate extremely rare right whales. First, nine flights that year would have been aborted or curtailed if the survey had relied on acceptable visual conditions alone (*i.e.*, visibility $\geq$ 4 km and/or Beaufort sea state $\leq$ 5). However, acoustic sampling provided an opportunity to collect data despite unacceptable visual survey conditions, thereby maximizing survey resources. Second, on two of these nine flights, two out of the five acoustically directed sightings (four animals) were located and photo-documented in a Beaufort sea state 7 (Table 1), conditions that were near impossible to detect animals by visual observations alone. Third, right whale gunshot and/or up calls were detected on 9 of 12 d without visual sightings. This information was relayed to the vessel, thereby establishing areas to focus vessel survey effort. Finally, although the aircraft often worked in coordination with the vessel in the same general area to aid in locating right whales and to assist in satellite tagging operations, all five visual sightings located from acoustic detections by the aerial survey were documented independently of the vessel. Thus, the aerial acoustic component was successful in providing additional NPRW sightings for data collection from both survey platforms.

Combining visual and acoustic sampling during aerial surveys can be highly effective for locating rare and elusive species' such as NPRWs. This multidisciplinary approach to aerial surveys provides flexibility for data collection (contingent on the objectives of the study) and is not bound by the constraints of a visual survey (*e.g.*, sea state, low ceiling and daylight hours). Expanding survey effort to include additional areas of importance for NPRWs (*e.g.*, high vessel traffic areas with historical significance south of Kodiak) is essential for the future of this species. In order to create effective conservation and management plans, the implementation of multidisciplinary survey strategies such as this can increase the efficiency and productivity of data collection with minimal additional effort.

Acknowledgments

We would like to thank observers Jeff Foster, Cynthia Christman, and Laura Morse; Clearwater Air and Northern Commanders, including pilots Andrew Harcombe, Aidan Loeher, and William Vaneendak; Jan Bennett and Lark Wuerth (DOI) provided flight following. We are extremely grateful to Jeff Leonard (Naval Surface Warfare Center, Crane Division), Theresa Yost (Naval Operational Logistics Support Center) and Capt. Robin Brake (I&E Director Marine Science, Office of the Assistant Secretary of the Navy) for providing us with newer surplus sonobuoys. We would also like to thank Jeff Leonhard, Charles Kimble (Naval Air Warfare Center, Aircraft Division), and Todd Mequet (Naval Surface Warfare Center, Crane Division) for assistance with sonobuoy literature. Thank you to Amy Kennedy and Alex Zerbini (AFSC), and the scientists, officers, and crew of the vessel survey. We thank Sue Moore (AFSC), Megan Ferguson (AFSC), David Mellinger (OSU), Daryl Boness (MMS), and three anonymous reviewers for their constructive comments to this manuscript. Funding was provided by the Bureau of Ocean Energy Management with project support from Charles Monnett. Research was conducted under NMFS Scientific Permit No. 782–1719. The findings and conclusions in this paper are those of the authors and do not necessarily represent the views of the National Marine Fisheries Service, NOAA.

Literature Cited

Brownell, R. L., Jr., P. J. Clapham, T. Miyashita and T. Kasuya. 2001. Conservation status of North Pacific right whales. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 2:269–286.

Clapham, P., C. Good, S. Quinn, R. R. Reeves, J. E. Scarff and R. L. Brownell Jr. 2004. Distribution of North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) as shown by 19th and 20th century whaling catch and sighting records. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 6:1–6.

Clark, C. W. 1982. The acoustic repertoire of the southern right whale, a quantitative analysis. Animal Behaviour 30:1060–1071.

Doroshenko, N. V. 2000. Soviet whaling for blue, gray, bowhead and right whales in the North Pacific Ocean, 1961–1979. Pages 96–103 *in* A.V. Yablokov, V. A. Zemsky, eds. Soviet whaling data (1949–1979). Center for Russian Environmental Policy, Moscow.

Holler, R. A., A. W. Horbach and J. F. McEachern. 2008. The ears of air ASW: A history of U. S. sonobuoys. Navmar Applied Science Corporation, Warminster, PA.

Laurinolli, M. H., A. E. Hay, F. Desharnais and C. T. Taggart. 2003. Localization of North Atlantic right whale sounds in the Bay of Fundy using a sonobuoy array. Marine Mammal Science 19:708–723.

Levenson, C., and W. T. Leapley. 1978. Distribution of humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in the Caribbean determined by a rapid acoustic method. Journal of Fisheries Research Board of Canada 35:1150–1152.

Ljungblad, D. K., and S. E. Moore. 1983. Killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) chasing gray whales (*Eschrichtius robustus*) in the northern Bering Sea. Arctic 36:361–364.

Ljungblad, D. K., P. O. Thompson and S. E. Moore. 1982. Underwater sounds recorded by migrating bowhead whales, *Balaena mysticetus*, in 1979. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 71:477–482.

Marques, T. A., L. Munger, L. Thomas, S. Wiggins and J. A. Hildebrand. 2011. Estimating North Pacific right whale *Eubalaena japonica* density using passive acoustic cue counting. Endangered Species Research 13:163–172.

McDonald, M. A. 2004. DIFAR hydrophones applied to whale research. Canadian Acoustics 32:155–160.

McDonald, M. A., and S. E. Moore. 2002. Calls recorded from North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the eastern Bering Sea. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 4:261–266.

Mellinger, D. K. 2001. Ishmael 1.0 user's guide. NOAA Technical Memorandum OAR-PMEL-120. U.S. Department of Commerce. 30 pp.

Mellinger, D. K., K. M. Stafford, S. E. Moore, L. Munger and C. G. Fox. 2004. Detection of North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) calls in the Gulf of Alaska. Marine Mammal Science 20:872–879.

Moore, S. E., J. C. Bennett and D. K. Ljungblad. 1989. Use of passive acoustics in conjunction with aerial surveys to monitor the fall bowhead whale (*Balaena mysticetus*) migration. Report of the International Whaling Commission 39:291–295.

Moore, S. E., K. M. Stafford, D. K. Mellinger and J. A. Hildebrand. 2006. Listening for large whales in the offshore waters of Alaska. BioScience 56:49–55.

Munger, L. M., D. K. Mellinger, S. M. Wiggins, S. E. Moore and J. A. Hildebrand. 2005. Performance of spectrogram cross-correlation in detecting right whale calls in long-term recordings from the Bering Sea. Canadian Acoustics 33:25–34.

Munger, L. M., S. M. Wiggins, S. E. Moore and J. A. Hildebrand. 2008. North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) seasonal and diel calling patterns from long-term acoustic recordings in the southeastern Bering Sea, 2000–2006. Marine Mammal Science 24:795–814.

Norris, T. F., M. McDonald and J. Barlow. 1999. Acoustic detections of singing humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) in the eastern North Pacific during their northbound migration. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 106: 506–514.

Parks, S. E., and P. L. Tyack. 2005. Sound production by North Atlantic right whales (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in surface active groups. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 117:3297–3306.

Parks, S. E., P. K. Hamilton, S. D. Kraus and P. L. Tyack. 2005. The gunshot produced by the North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*) and its potential function in reproductive advertisement. Marine Mammal Science 21:458–475.

Rankin, S., and J. Barlow. 2007. Vocalizations of the sei whale *Balaenoptera borealis* off the Hawaiian Islands. Bioacoustics 16:137–145.

Rankin, S., J. Barlow and K. M. Stafford. 2006. Blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*) sightings and recordings south of the Aleutian Islands. Marine Mammal Science 22:708–713.

Reilly, S. B., J. L. Bannister, P. B. Best, *et al*. 2008. *Eubalaena japonica* (Northeast Pacific subpopulation). IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. Version 2010.4. IUCN, Gland, Switzerland.

Shelden, K. E., S. E. Moore, J. M. Waite, P. R. Wade and D. J. Rugh. 2005. Historical and current habitat use by North Pacific right whales *Eubalaena japonica* in the Bering Sea and Gulf of Alaska. Mammal Review 35:129–155.

Stafford, K. M., C. G. Fox and D. S. Clark. 1998. Long-range acoustic detection and localization of blue whale calls in the northeast Pacific Ocean. Journal of the Acoustical Soceity of America 104:3616–3625.

Stafford, K. M., S. E. Moore, K. L. Laidre and M. P. Heide-Jørgensen. 2008. Bowhead whale springtime song of West Greenland. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 124:3315–3323.

Swartz, S. L., T. Cole, M. A. McDonald, *et al*. 2003. Acoustic and visual surveys of humpback whale (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) distribution in the eastern and southeastern Caribbean Sea. Caribbean Journal of Science 39:195–208.

Thompson, P. O., W. C. Cummings and S. J. Ha. 1986. Sounds, source levels, and associated behavior of humpback whales, Southeast Alaska. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 80:735–740.

Wade, P. R, M. P. Heide-Jørgensen, K. Shelden, *et al*. 2006. Acoustic detection and satellite tracking leads to discovery of rare concentration of endangered North Pacific right whales. Biology Letters 2:417–419.

Wade, P. R., A. De Robertis, K. R. Hough, *et al*. 2011*a*. Rare detections of North Pacific right whales in the Gulf of Alaska, with observations of their potential prey. Endangered Species Research 13:99–109.

Wade, P. R., A. Kennedy, R. LeDuc, *et al*. 2011*b*. The world's smallest whale population? Biology Letters 7:83–85.

Waite, J. W., K. Wynne and D. K. Mellinger. 2003. Documented sighting of a North Pacific right whale in the Gulf of Alaska and post-sighting acoustic monitoring. Northwestern Naturalist 84:38–43.

Wiggins, S. M., M. A. McDonald, L. M. Munger, S. E. Moore and J. A. Hildebrand. 2004. Waveguide propagation allows range estimates for North Pacific right whales in the Bering Sea. Canadian Acoustics 32:146–154.

Würsig, B., and C. Clark. 1993. Behavior. Pages 157–199 *in* J. J. Burns, J. J. Montague and C. J. Cowles, eds. The bowhead whale. Special Publication Number 2. The Society for Marine Mammalogy.

Received: 12 October 2011
Accepted: 14 February 2012

\

Appendix B:
Cornell Lab Passive Acoustic Monitoring Summary

TheCornellLab of Ornithology

Bioacoustics Research Program
Technical Report 10-01

Passive Acoustic Monitoring of North Pacific Right Whales in the Bering Sea

July - August 2009

Summary Report
4 October 2010

Prepared for:
National Marine Mammal Laboratory
NOAA/NMFS
7600 Sand Point Way NE
Seattle, WA 98115-6349

Cornell University

Cornell Lab of Ornithology • 159 Sapsucker Woods Road • Ithaca, New York 14850 • 607-254-BIRD • www.birds.cornell.edu
Our mission: To interpret and conserve the earth's biological diversity through research, education, and citizen science focused on birds.

Overview

The aim of this project was to deploy a passive acoustic, automatic detection monitoring buoy for the purpose of demonstrating its ability to detect the occurrence of North Pacific right whales in the vicinity of the system, and to transmit this information to researchers in near-real-time.

The automatic detection buoy was deployed in the Bering Sea (Figure 1). In addition, two archival data collection devices operating simultaneously with the buoy's automatic detection system were deployed: 1) a CompactFlash memory storage card mounted on the automatic detection buoy that collected continuous data through the same hydrophone that was used to collect automatic detection data, and 2) a marine autonomous recording unit deployed near the automatic detection buoy and just above the sea floor.

The objectives for the project were to:

1) Assist in the deployment of one operational automatic detection buoy system suitable for the specific environmental factors present at a strategically chosen location in the Bering Sea;

2) use the automatic detection buoy system to continuously monitor the acoustic data stream, identify potential North Pacific right whale contact calls, and report these detections to a land-based computer system every 12 hours;

3) Use objectives 1 and 2 as a "proof of concept" demonstration for the feasibility of an automatic detection buoy technology for the application of monitoring North Pacific right whales.

Data Collection Methods

Right Whale Automatic Detection Buoy

The right whale automatic detection buoy (AB) system is an anchored surface buoy that acoustically records, detects, and remotely reports the presence of right whale upsweeps (upcalls, or contact calls) (Figure 2; Spaulding et al. 2010). The AB system is designed, fabricated, and maintained by the mooring group at the Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution (WHOI) and is operated by both WHOI and BRP staff. The AB system electronics, on-board detector, and embedded software are designed, fabricated, and maintained by BRP (Figure 3). The right whale contact call algorithm was initially designed by Douglas Gillespie (Gillespie 2004).

The AB is comprised of a foam surface buoy float that is connected to an aluminum mast. The mast connects successively to a flexible hose tether (called a "Gumby"), a sub-surface sphere, a chain, a hydrophone, and a coiled line (called a "line-pack"), which connects the AB to an anchor and pays out as the AB is retrieved (Figure 4). The surface buoy houses an embedded computer, GPS, Iridium satellite phone antenna, and GPS asset tracker (XEOS unit). The Gumby hose system is a flexible tether containing spiraled conductors. It facilitates the de-coupling of surface movement from the hydrophone, resulting in higher signal-to-noise ratio acoustic data than would otherwise be obtained. Prior to deployment a series of audio and transmission checks are performed on the system.

Figure 1. Location of the automatic detection buoy data collection system in the Bering Sea. The location of the automatic detection buoy (Autobuoy) and marine autonomous recording unit (MARU) is indicated by a green circle.

Figure 2. An above-surface view of the automatic detection buoy deployed in the Bering Sea.

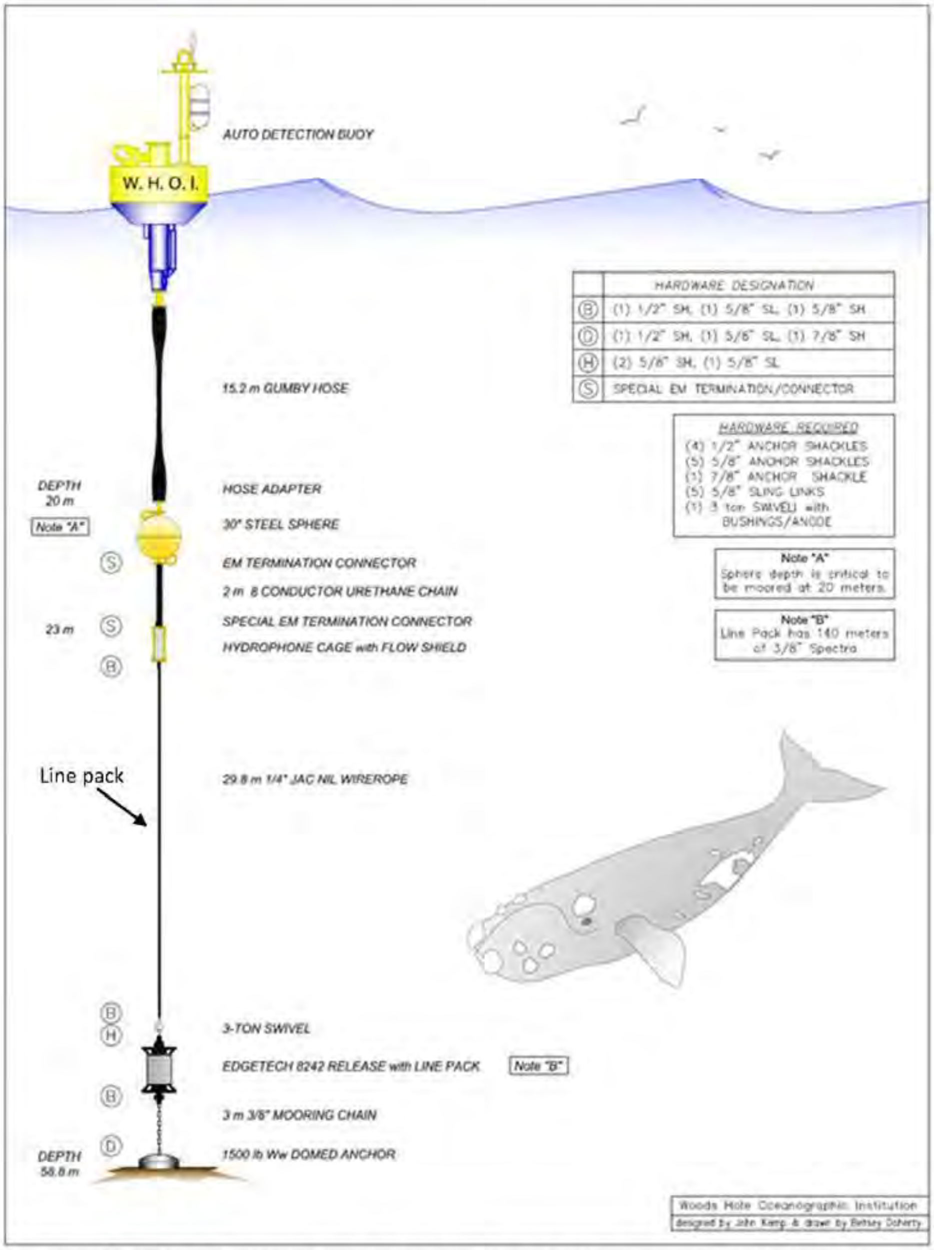


Figure 3. Automatic detection buoy schematic showing both above-water and below-water features. Figure modified from Spaulding et al. (2010).

Once an AB is deployed, both WHOI and BRP regularly monitor the location of the AB using GPS and XEOS to ensure that the unit stays on station. At the end of the deployment, the AB system is recovered by triggering an acoustic release signal (i.e. a series of underwater tones are played to the unit). This release system works in conjunction with the sub-surface sphere and the line-pack to bring the equipment to the surface in preparation for recovery.

The AB detection system processes acoustic data, isolates potential right whale upcalls as "clips," and stores the collected data clips as audio files. These files are rated by the system quantitatively according to a scale from 1 to 10, based on the similarity of the characteristics of each potential upcall to those of known right whale upcalls (Gillespie 2004). The system then uploads the data to a website accessible to BRP analysts at a designated time. Depending on the specific needs of the project, the AB can be dynamically configured to upload data immediately (in near-real time) or to store data for later transmission. For this Bering Sea deployment, the transmission schedule was once per hour.

The primary objective of this AB system was to provide a continuous mechanism for detecting the presence of calling right whales within the area surrounding the AB in near real-time. Right whale acoustic detections were collected by the AB and confirmed by expert analysts at BRP. Based on previously calculated detection ranges of North Pacific right whales (McDonald and Moore 2002), the AB was expected to be effective for detecting whales upcalls out to a range of 5 nautical miles, with the actual detection range primarily restricted by the local background sound level in the right whale contact call frequency band of 50-350 Hz (see Gillespie 2004).

The detection algorithm used on this AB system was designed to detect North Atlantic right whales, whose contact calls are considered to be similar to North Pacific right whale contact calls (McDonald and Moore, 2002). Recent clip score distributions from previous AB deployments (intended to detect North Atlantic right whales) suggest that clips with a rating below 6 were not confirmed by analysts as right whale upcalls (Spaulding et al. 2010). In fact, about 80% of confirmed right whale clips in these distributions were rated as 10. However, we anticipated variations in the Bering Sea right whale upcalls as compared to those from the North Atlantic, which supports choosing a less conservative clip score threshold for transmission. Also, due to the short duration of the deployment, ample power was available to support the detection process on the Bering Sea AB, which meant that we did not need to restrict the number of clip detections. Based on these factors, we set the AB to transmit only clips with a rating of equal to or greater than 6.

CompactFlash Memory Storage Card

In addition to the near-real-time automatic detection system, the AB also employed an on-board CompactFlash memory storage card which collected continuous data from the same hydrophone input stream as that used for collecting acoustic detections. Because of this, a comparison between these two data sources can be used in to accurately evaluate the performance of the automatic detection system. We implemented the new feature of continuous audio storage to CompactFlash in order to improve our understanding of the self-noise characteristics of the buoy and to aid future detector development.

Marine Autonomous Recording Unit

A marine autonomous recording unit (MARU) is a digital audio recording system contained in a positively buoyant 17" glass sphere that is deployed on the ocean seafloor (Figure 4). A MARU can be programmed to record on any desired daily schedule and may be deployed in a remote environment.

The unit is held in place by an anchor. A hydrophone mounted outside the sphere acquires sounds that are recorded and stored in a binary digital audio format on an internal hard disk. At the conclusion of a deployment, the MARU is sent an acoustic command that causes it to release itself from its anchor and float to the surface for recovery. After the recovery, the MARU data are extracted, converted into audio files, and stored on a server for analysis. In contrast to the ABs transmission of data, data recorded by MARUs are accessible only after the devices are retrieved.

The MARU system was calibrated at the U.S. Navy testing facility in Seneca Lake, NY. Based on multiple calibration data points (n=18), the transformation coefficient for a MARU was determined to be -151.2 ± 1.0 dB (re: 1μPa) in the 55 - 585Hz frequency range.

Figure 4. Marine Autonomous Recording Unit (MARU)

Field Deployment and Data Collection

The AB system was located in a region where North Pacific right whales have been both acoustically and visually observed during the month of July (McDonald and Moore 2002).

Field deployment operations were carried out by BRP and WHOI staff aboard the USCG icebreaker Healy. Equipment was loaded onto the vessel and tested at port in Dutch Harbor, Alaska, from 15-19 July 2009. Healy departed from Dutch Harbor on 19 July 2009, and both the automatic detection buoy and MARU systems were deployed in the Bering Sea on 20 July 2009 (Figure 1).

The AB was deployed at 57° 08.640' N latitude, 164° 30.540' W longitude, anchored at a depth of 25 meters. The system was intended to transmit detection data clips to a BRP AB-monitoring website during the month-long deployment period from 20 July through 22 August 2009. However, due to a hardware failure, clips were transmitted only during the first 12-days of the deployment period, from

20-31 July 2009. Detection data clips were transmitted by the AB approximately once per hour, and all available transmitted clips were evaluated every 12 hours by expert analysts to be either true or false detections of right whale contact calls. The on-board CompactFlash card collected continuous data during the same period. The AB detection system collected data at a sampling rate of 2000Hz and the CompactFlash card aboard the AB recorded data at a sampling rate of 8000Hz.

The MARU was deployed at 57° 08.712' N latitude, 164° 30.841' W longitude, at about 70 meters above the sea floor. This location was approximately 300 meters from the AB, a distance that resulted from best efforts to avoid striking the AB with the large deployment vessel (the Healy is 430 feet long) while deploying the MARU as close to the AB as possible. The MARU collected data for 32 complete days and 2 partial days of data during the deployment period (20 July and 22 August) and was programmed to record data at a sampling rate of 2000Hz.

Both the AB and the MARU were recovered by WHOI staff aboard the NOAA research vessel Oscar Dyson on 22 August 2009.

Results

Because this system was intended to be a demonstration buoy, the new feature of continuous audio storage to CompactFlash was implemented in order to improve our understanding of the self-noise characteristics of the buoy and to aid future detector development. However, this feature introduced a bug that caused both the continuous data storage and the real-time detection processes to stop working. As a result, the CompactFlash storage card and the real-time detection system failed after 12 of the 34 days of the AB deployment. This failure was not detected during the deployment because the system's reporting process continued to work (i.e. to "call home"), suggesting that the buoy was functioning normally. A fix for this bug has been developed and is currently being field-tested.

During the active 12-day period of the AB deployment, a total of 263 data clips were transmitted by the AB system. Of these clips, 34 were confirmed as North Pacific right whale calls by BRP expert analysts. During the same period, 159 North Pacific right whale contact calls were found in the AB CompactFlash data, and 147 North Pacific right whale contact calls were found in the MARU data. During the remaining 22 days of MARU data collection, an additional 1498 North Pacific right whale contact calls were found (Figure 5, Tables 1, 2).

Figure 5 shows right whale calling activity over the whole deployment period, at the start of which all three data collection methods were active. The number of North Pacific right whale contact calls found in the MARU data increased significantly following the initial data collection period leading up to 1 August: 147 upcalls were found in the late July period, while 1498 upcalls were found in the remaining 22 days of MARU data, for a total of 1645 upcalls found in the MARU data over the entire deployment (Table 2).

Figure 5 also shows the relationship between the numbers of upcalls found by each data collection method during the period when all three data collection methods were active, and it indicates that discrepancies exist between the numbers of upcalls found by the different methods over the same time period. However, when more than 6 right whale contact calls were found on any specific day in either the MARU or the CompactFlash data, positively confirmed right whale contact calls were also found in the AB data.

Figure 6 shows two instances of the same right whale upcall found by each of the three data collection methods.

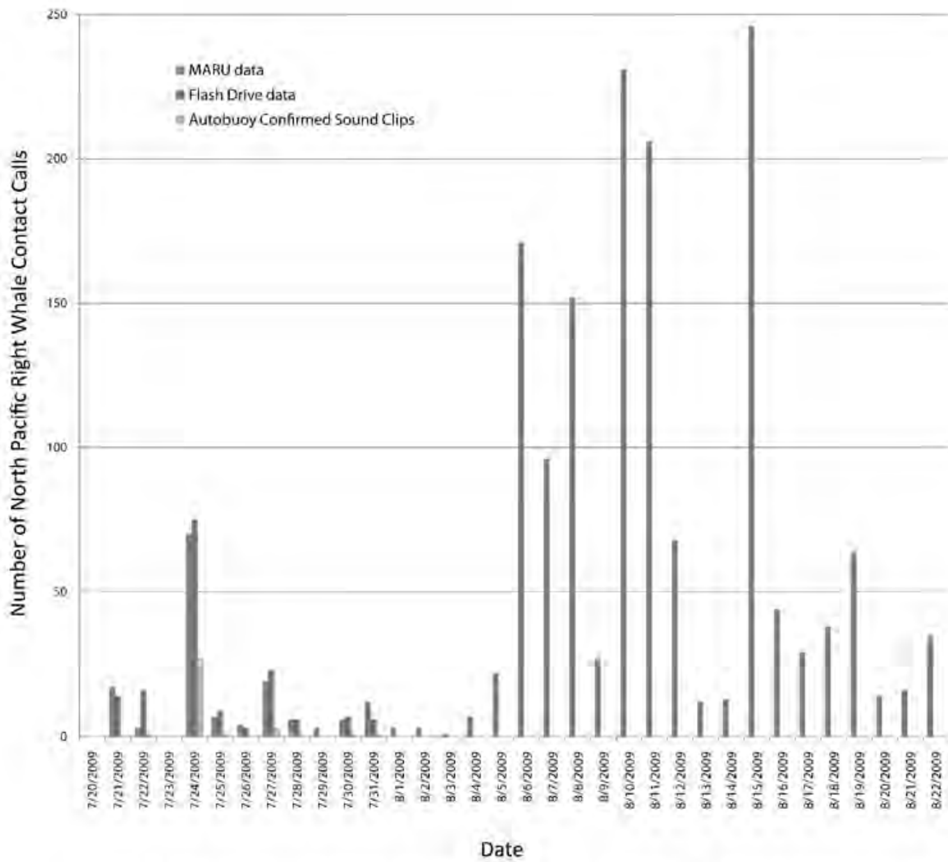


Figure 5. The number of North Pacific right whale contact calls found during the entire deployment period (21 July – 22 August 2009) by the three data collection methods: 1) upcalls found by the AB detection software and confirmed as true detections by expert analysts (green); 2) upcalls found during post-processing by a combination of automatic and manual detection in the AB CompactFlash data (red); and 3) upcalls found during post-processing by a combination of automatic and manual detection in MARU data (blue). The number of upcalls is indicated by a label only for the method that found the largest number of upcalls (Table 1, Table 2).

Table 1. The number of North Pacific right whale upcalls found when all of the three data collection methods were operating.

DATE	MARU	CompactFlash	AB Confirmed Clips	AB False Clips	AB Total Clips
7/20/2009	0	0	0	30	30
7/21/2009	17	14	0	23	23
7/22/2009	3	16	1	18	19
7/23/2009	0	0	0	28	28
7/24/2009	70	75	27	29	56
7/25/2009	7	9	1	19	20
7/26/2009	4	3	0	13	13
7/27/2009	19	23	3	24	27
7/28/2009	6	6	0	32	32
7/29/2009	3	0	0	5	5
7/30/2009	6	7	1	4	5
7/31/2009	12	6	1	4	5
TOTAL	147	159	34	229	263

Table 2. The number of North Pacific right whale upcalls found in the MARU data during the month-long deployment from 20 July – 22 August 2009.

DATE	MARU
7/20/2009	0
7/21/2009	17
7/22/2009	3
7/23/2009	0
7/24/2009	70
7/25/2009	7
7/26/2009	4
7/27/2009	19
7/28/2009	6
7/29/2009	3
7/30/2009	6
7/31/2009	12
8/1/2009	3
8/2/2009	3
8/3/2009	1
8/4/2009	7
8/5/2009	22
8/6/2009	171
8/7/2009	96
8/8/2009	152
8/9/2009	27
8/10/2009	231
8/11/2009	206
8/12/2009	68
8/13/2009	12
8/14/2009	13
8/15/2009	246
8/16/2009	44
8/17/2009	29
8/18/2009	38
8/19/2009	64
8/20/2009	14
8/21/2009	16
8/22/2009	35
TOTAL	1645

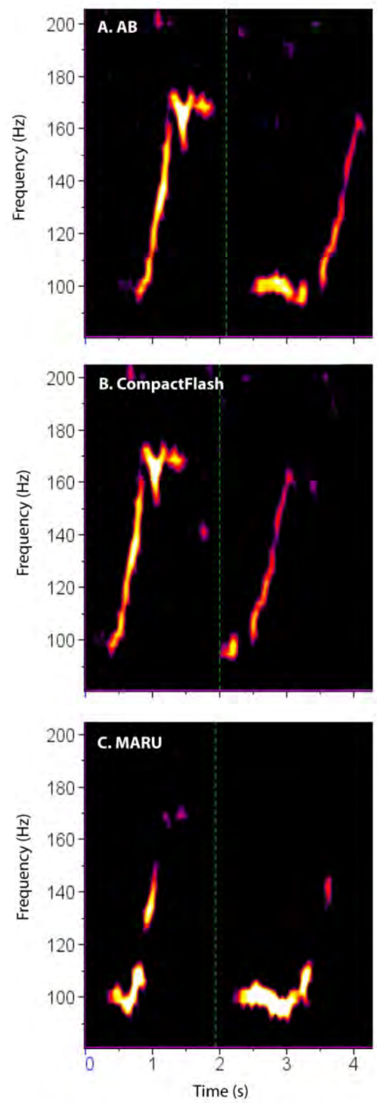


Figure 6. Three spectrograms showing instances of the same two North Pacific right whale contact call upsweeps recorded on 24 July 2009: detected and recorded by the (A) AB; 2) recorded on the (B) AB CompactFlash card; and (C) recorded on the MARU. The vertical dashed line distinguishes the two individual calls in each spectrogram image.

Table 3 and Figure 7 show the distribution of scores assigned by the AB automatic detector software to true and false right whale detection clips. No true right whale detection clips were found with scores below 9 and 10, and more true detections were found with scores of 10 (29 clips) than with scores of 9 (5 clips). Also, there was a decrease in the number of false detection clips found with each successively higher score (6- 10). Additional tests of the AB automatic detection software are underway, however this kind of performance reflects the performance already observed on ABs deployed for the purpose of detecting North Atlantic right whale contact calls (Spaulding et al. 2010), whose contact calls (as mentioned) are considered to be similar to those made by North Pacific right whales (McDonald and Moore 2002).

Table 3. Scores of True and False North Pacific right whale clips detected on the AB.

SCORE	6		7		8		9		10	
TRUE/FALSE	T	F	T	F	T	F	T	F	T	F
7/20/2009	0	12	0	9	0	7	0	1	0	1
7/21/2009	0	11	0	11	0	0	0	1	0	0
7/22/2009	0	11	0	3	0	4	0	0	1	0
7/23/2009	0	10	0	9	0	7	0	2	0	0
7/24/2009	0	16	0	9	0	1	3	2	24	1
7/25/2009	0	9	0	10	0	0	0	0	1	0
7/26/2009	0	10	0	3	0	0	0	0	0	0
7/27/2009	0	14	0	8	0	1	1	0	2	1
7/28/2009	0	17	0	10	0	2	0	3	0	0
7/29/2009	0	4	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
7/30/2009	0	2	0	0	0	2	0	0	1	0
7/31/2009	0	4	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
TOTAL	0	120	0	73	0	24	5	9	29	3

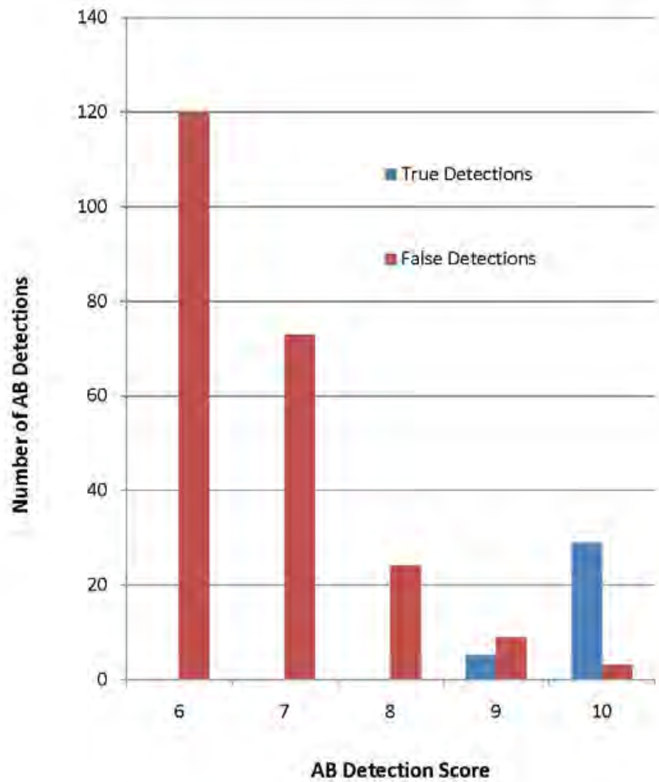


Figure 7. Number of true and false detections found by the AB detection software during the period of 20 – 31 July 2009, sorted by detection score. Labels on red columns indicate the actual number of false detections found with each corresponding score.

Conclusions

The AB system successfully detected the presence of North Pacific right whales during the study period, and it withstood the specific environmental factors present in the Bering Sea for the duration of the deployment, successfully transmitting upcall clips during the 12 days that the near-real-time system was operating. The system can be said to have successfully demonstrated "proof of concept" and to have been shown to be a viable use of the automatic detection buoy technology for this application, even though the failure of the AB electronics prevented a complete evaluation of the performance of the system throughout the entire deployment period.

As mentioned, the hydrophones of the AB and MARU systems in this case were deployed approximately 300 meters apart at different depths, and the two systems also use different filter/analog circuitry and cabling. Interesting discrepancies between the number of upcalls found through automatic detection, the AB on-board continuous recording to CompactFlash, and the MARU recording were found. This information will be incorporated into future analyses focused on exploring the reasons for these differences. We also intend to further analyze this Bering Sea data in conjunction with data collected by other pairs of AB/MARU units (whose hydrophones are deployed near each other) to help us to further understand this discrepancy as well as differences in the characteristics of the calls, evident in Figure 7, stored using each of the three data collection methods.

References

Gillespie, D. 2004. Detection and classification of right whale calls using an "edge" detector operating on a smoothed spectrogram. Canadian Acoustics 32: 39–47.

McDonald, M. and Moore, S. 2002. Calls recorded from North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the eastern Bering Sea. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 4:261-266.

Spaulding, E., Robbins, M., Calupca, T., Clark, C.W., Tremblay, C., Waack, A., Warde, A., Kemp, J., Newhall, K. 2010. An autonomous, near-real-time buoy system for automatic detection of North Atlantic right whale calls. Proceedings of Meetings on Acoustics 6: 010001.

Acknowledgements

Bioacoustics Research Program, Cornell Lab of Ornithology

Christopher W. Clark, Principal Investigator and Director, Bioacoustics Research Program

Deployment Coordinator: Christopher Tremblay

Engineering Team: Sam Fladung, Eric Spaulding, Matt Robbins, Amanda Kempf, Thomas Calupca

Research Analysis Team: Ann Warde, Clara McCarthy, Christi Diamond, Bobbi Estabrook, Beth Howard, Janelle Morano, Charles Muirhead, Anita Murray, Danielle Nelson, Christopher Pelkie, Michael Pitzrick, Ashik Rahaman, Bethany Roberts, Jamey Tielens

Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution Mooring Operations Group:
John Kemp, Kris Newhall, James Dunn, Jeff Pietro, Jim Ryder, Will Ostrom

Bob Pickart, Senior Scientist, Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution

Dave Forcucci, USCGC HEALY, Science Liaison

Captain Frederick J. Sommer and crew of the USCGC Healy

Captain Michael J. Hoshlyk and crew of the NOAA Ship Oscar Dyson

APPENDIX C:
Fin whale preliminary analysis

Analysis has been completed so far on all eight recovered EAR moorings and the four 2009 PMEL AURAL moorings. The remaining ten Haruphone/AURAL recorders are in the analysis queue and should be completed in the next couple of months. An analysis bandwidth of 0-100 Hz was used and the recordings were monitored for the presence of any fin whale call type (broadband, 20 Hz pulse, song, etc.).

Both 2008 EAR recorders analyzed showed a near constant presence of fin whale calling from August until the recorders stopped working in February (EA01, Figure C1a) and April (EA02, Figure C1b), with only a few weeks of call presence dropping to 50-70% of total time intervals. Figure 2, which superimposes these seasonal calling plots onto a map of their mooring locations in the Bering Sea, shows that the NAB lease area is a prime area for fin whales.

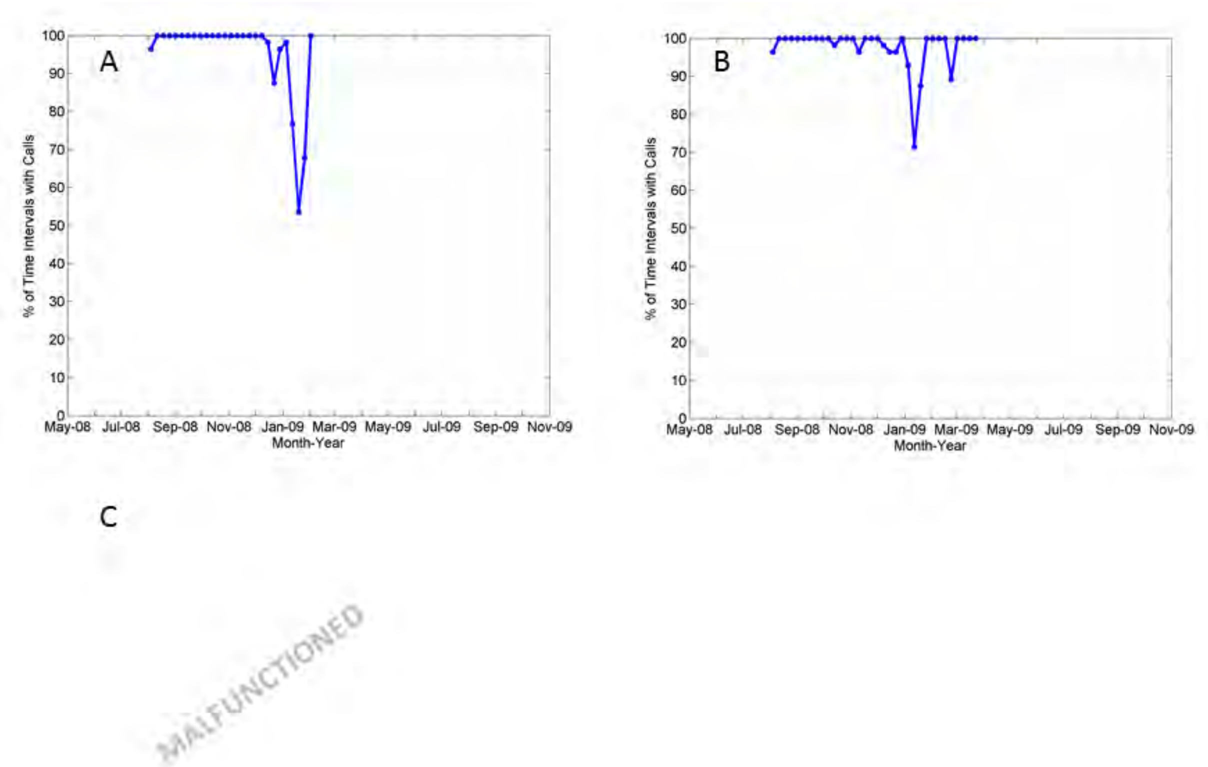


Figure C1: Fin whale seasonal call distribution on EAR moorings 2008-2009: A) EA01 B) EA02 C) EA03 (Malfunctioned)

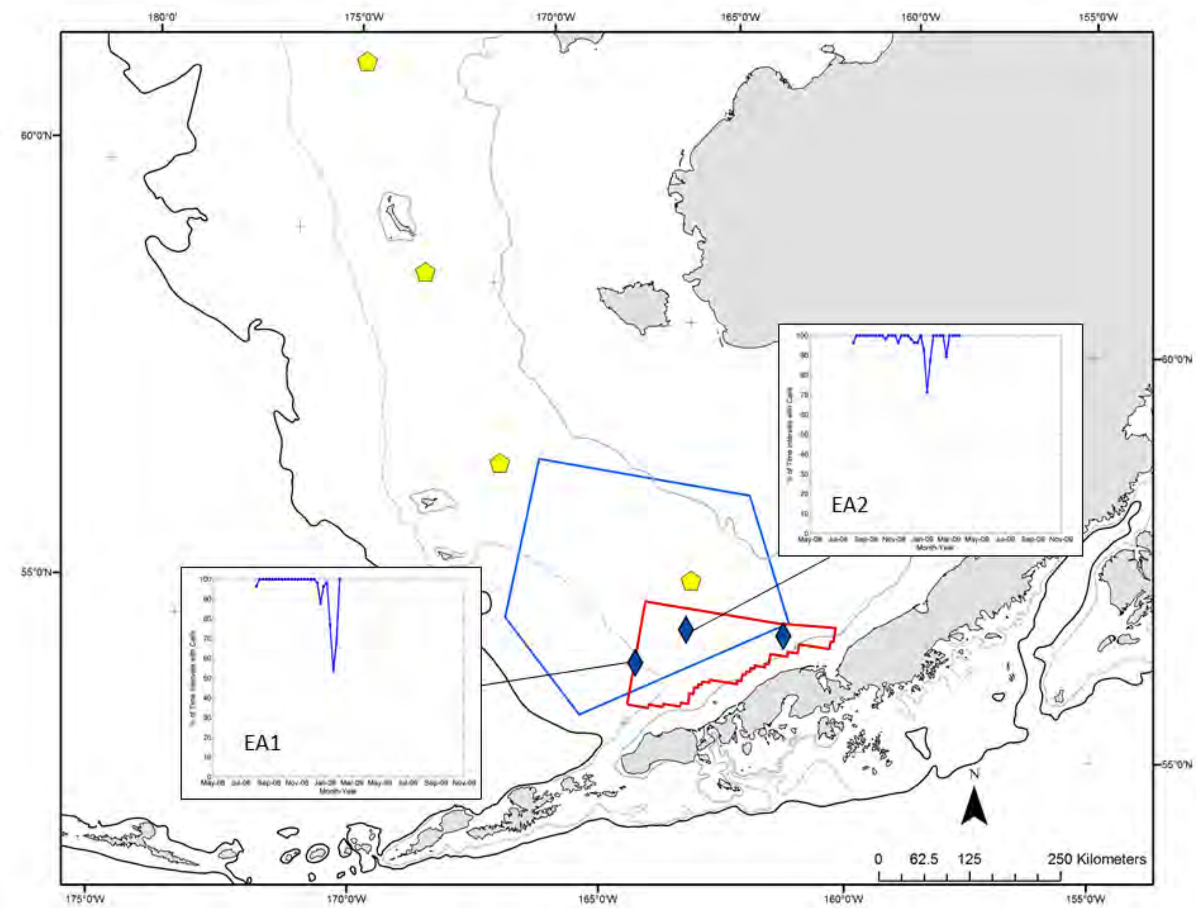


Figure C2: Fin whale calling results from 2008-2009 EAR recorders superimposed on map of mooring locations. See Figure C1 for larger versions of the data plots. Blue pentagon = RWCH, red polygon = NAB lease area, yellow pentagons = PMEL moorings, blue diamonds = EAR moorings.

The complete data set for 2009 was processed, including 3 EARs and all 4 PMEL AURAL moorings. The July-Mar constant fin calling seen on the NAB lease area EARs in 2008 is also found on the M2 mooring data (Figure C3d). The M8 (Figure C3a) and M4 (Figure C3c) results show a shorter period of constant calling (Oct-Jan and Aug-Jan, respectively), while the amount of calling found on the M5 mooring (Figure C3b) is quite low in comparison to the rest. This trend for less calling occurring on M5 was also seen with the gunshot/upsweep call analysis above, and warrants further investigation of possible oceanographic properties affecting the productivity of this area.

Figure C4 shows analysis results for the 2009 EAR moorings. Fin whales were present in both Umnak (EA01, Figure C4c) and Unimak (EA02, Figure C4b) passes, with a greater percentage of calling found in Unimak. The narrower range and lower calling levels of the NAB lease area mooring from 2009 (EA03, Figure C4a) as compared to the results from this same location in 2008 (EA01, Figure C1a) show that fin whale movements throughout the Bering Sea can vary substantially between years.

The spatial distribution map of seasonal calling plots (Figure C5), show that the area in and around the RWCH, including Unimak Pass, is a prime area for fin whales. It is interesting that the most northern mooring site, M8, has such a high peak of fin calling in the winter, and could possibly be a wintering ground for more northern fins from the Chukchi Sea.

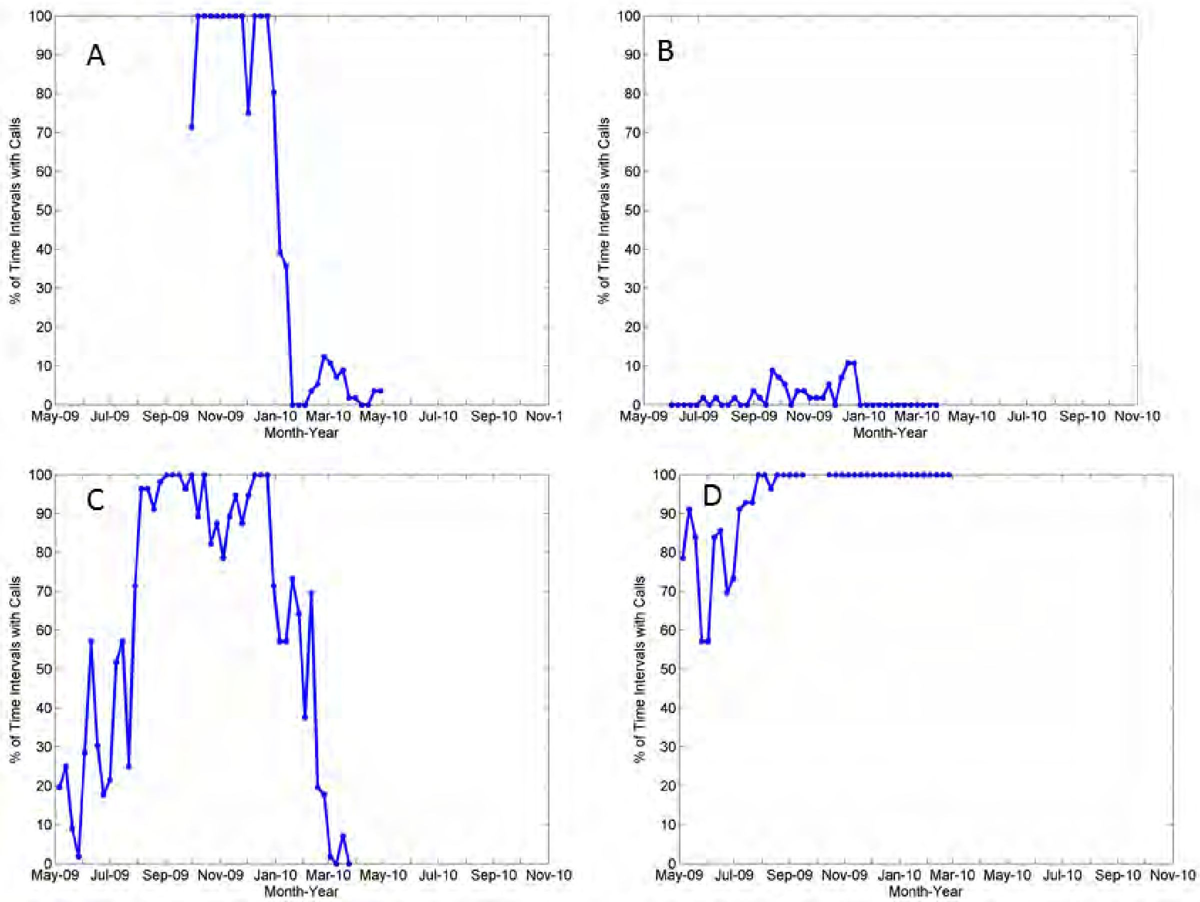


Figure C3: Fin whale seasonal call distribution on PMEL moorings 2009-2010: A) M8 B) M5 C) M4 D) M2

Three EAR mooring recorders were analyzed for 2010 (Figure C6). The near-constant calling levels are again present, but for a much narrower time period (Oct-Dec and Sep-Dec for EA02 (Figure C6b) and EA3 (Figure C6c) respectively). Unfortunately pass information could not be obtained for 2010 due to a faulty hydrophone in the Unimak Pass mooring recorder.

Figure C7 shows the spatial distribution of fin whale calling throughout the Bering Sea. It appears from these results that the 50m isobath is a good location for fin whales. It will be interesting to see the results for the 2010 M5 mooring to see if it is again a site with low fin calling rates.

In summary, with about half of all long-term recorders analyzed it is clear that fin whales spend a great deal of time calling in the Bering Sea, especially in and around the RWCH, along the 50m isobaths, and through Unimak Pass. Finally, although there are these key areas with higher concentrations of calling, comparison of the duration and timing of fin whale calling peaks among years suggests that fin whale movements within the Bering Sea can be highly variable.

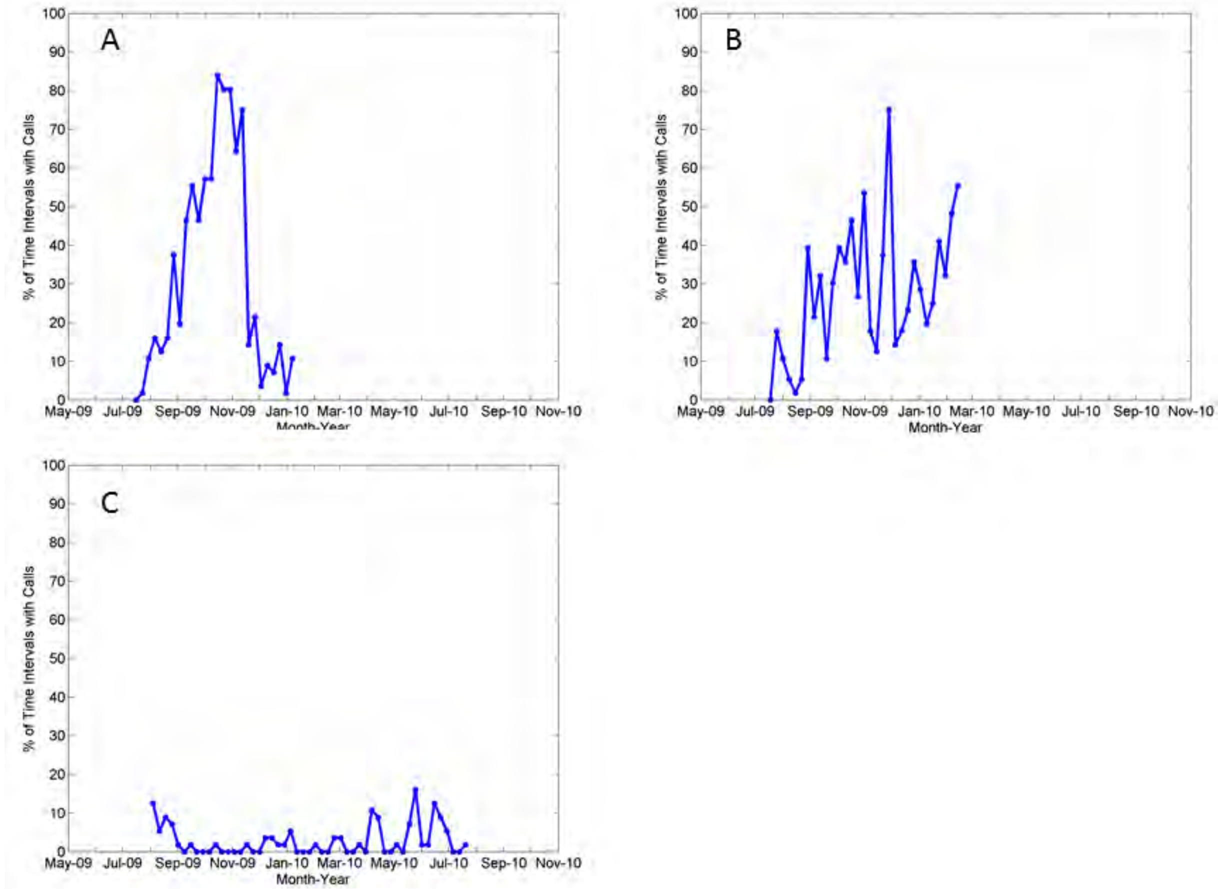


Figure C4: Fin whale seasonal call distribution on EAR moorings 2009-2010: A) EA03 B) EA02 Unimak Pass C) EA01 Umnak Pass

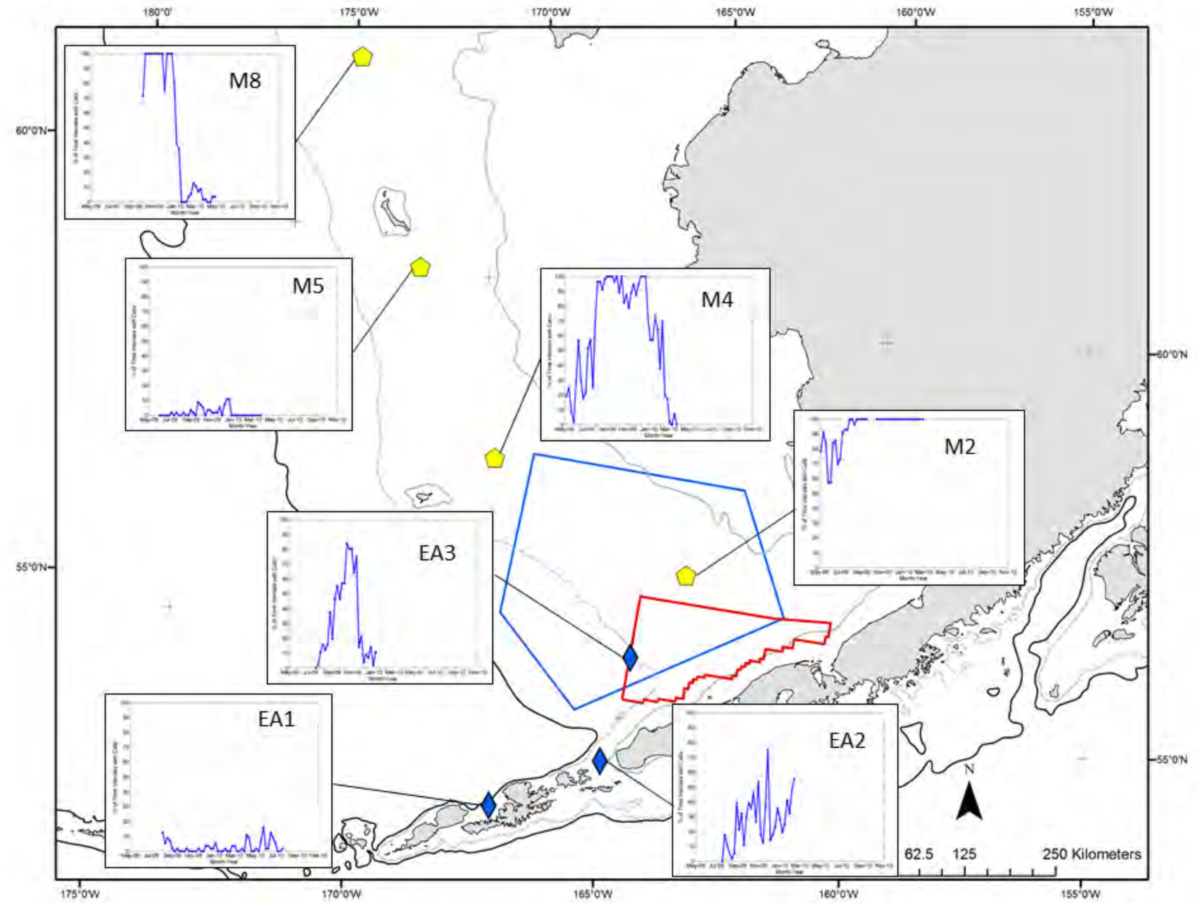


Figure C5: Fin whale calling results from 2009-2010 EAR and AURAL recorders superimposed on map of mooring locations. See Figures C3 and C4 for larger versions of the AURAL and EAR data plots, respectively. Blue pentagon = RWCH, red polygon = NAB lease area, yellow pentagons = PMEL moorings, blue diamonds = EAR moorings.

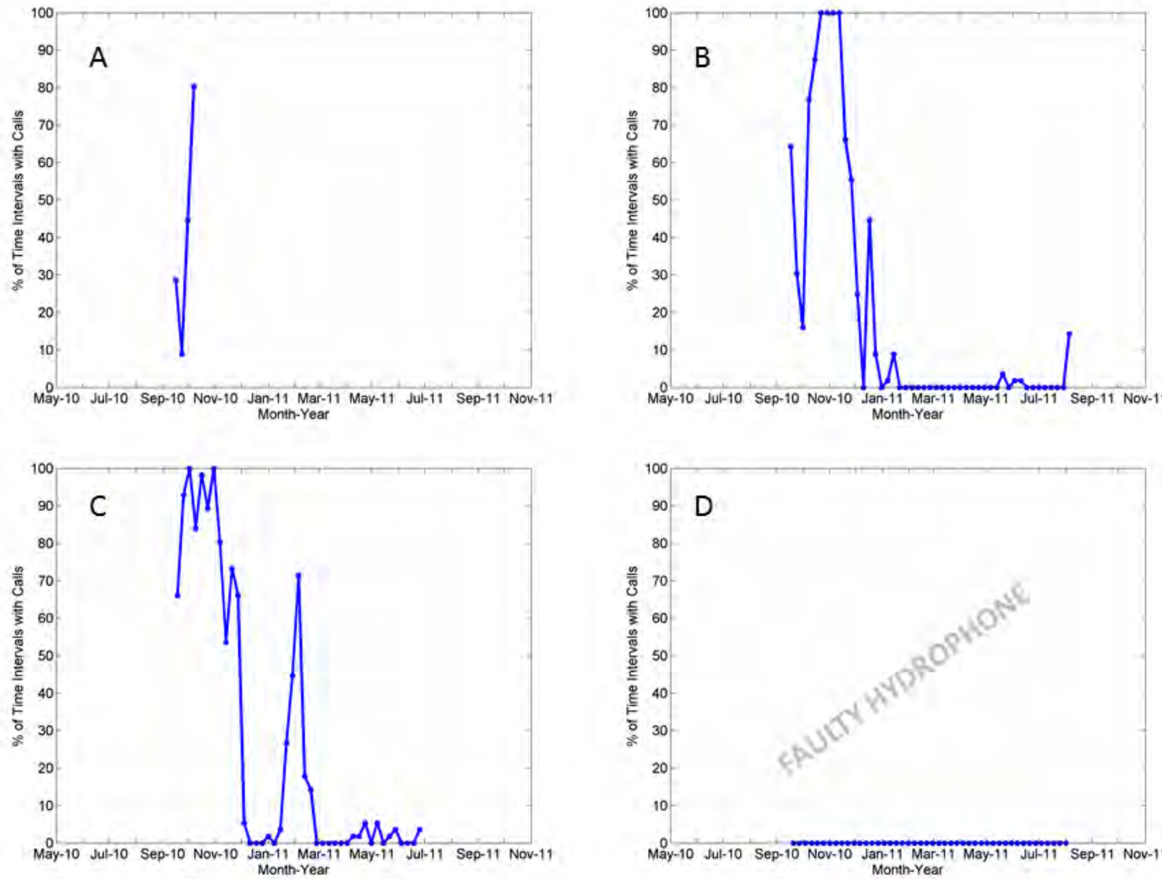


Figure C6: Fin whale seasonal call distribution on EAR moorings 2010-2011: A) EA01 B) EA02 C) EA03 D) EA04

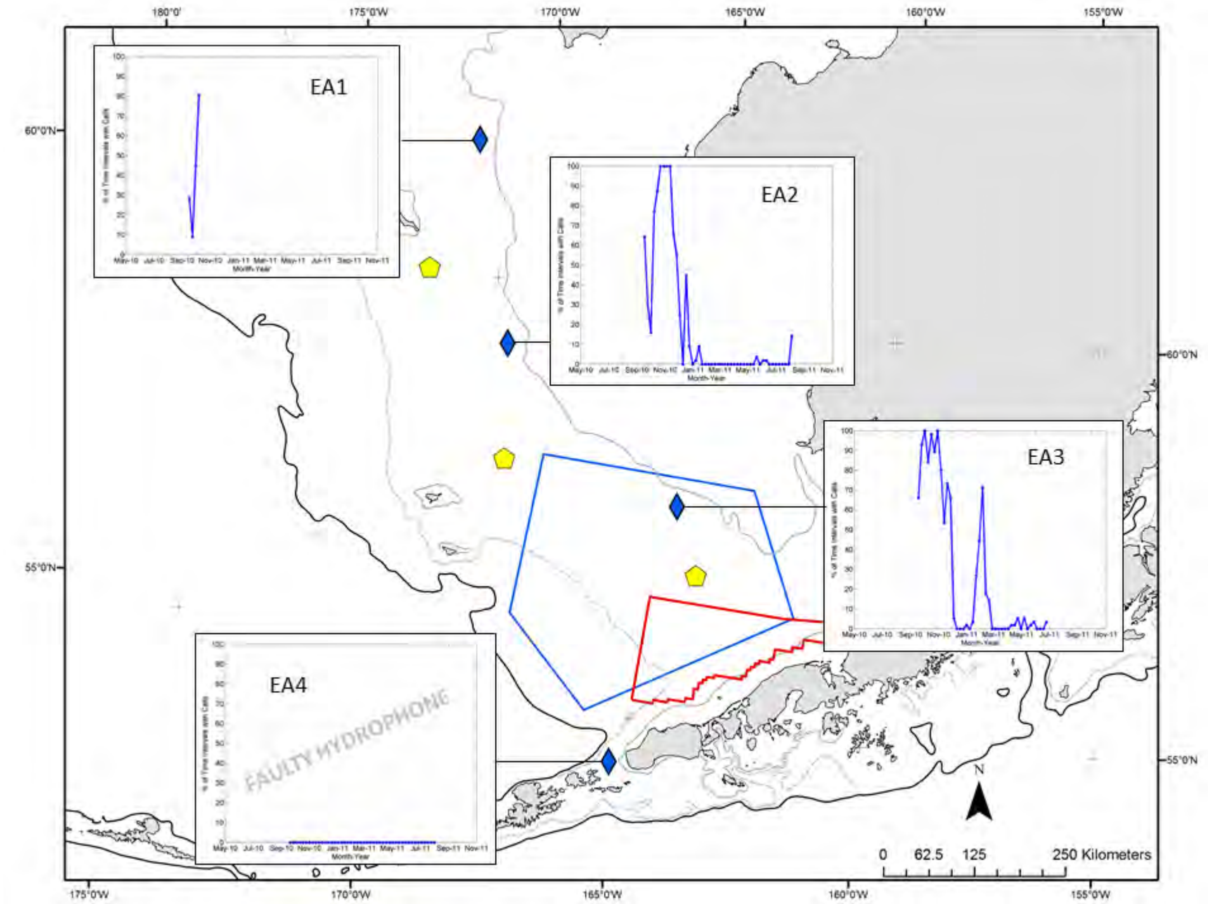


Figure C7: Fin whale calling results from 2010-2011 EAR recorders superimposed on map of mooring locations. See Figure C6 for larger versions of the EAR data plots. Blue pentagon = RWCH, red polygon = NAB lease area, yellow pentagons = PMEL moorings, blue diamonds = EAR moorings. EAR moorings EA1, EA2, and EA3 are along the 50m isobath.

Appendix D:
Foraging Ecology and Fine Scale Acoustic Studies Final Report

DISTRIBUTION, OCCURRENCE, AND PREY SPECIES
Mark Baumgartner, Nadine Lysiak, Carter Esch, Catherine Berchok, and Alex Zerbini

Cruises to study the relationship between North Pacific right whale occurrence and oceanographic conditions and prey distribution/abundance took place in the southeast Bering Sea during early August 2008 aboard the F/V *Ocean Olympic* and during late July and early August 2009 aboard the F/V *Aquila* (Figure 1). Remarkably, right whales were located shortly after arriving in the study area each year. Net samples were collected to characterize the zooplankton community in proximity to right whales and to calibrate instrument-derived estimates of *Calanus marshallae* abundance. Drifting stations were designed to characterize the vertical migration behavior of *C. marshallae* and to investigate patterns in right whale calling behavior over short temporal scales. Cross-isobath surveys were conducted to examine associations between right whale distribution and both prey distribution and oceanographic conditions. Finally, short-term tagging was used to characterize diving and foraging behavior of individual whales and to allow environmental sampling in as close proximity to whales as possible.

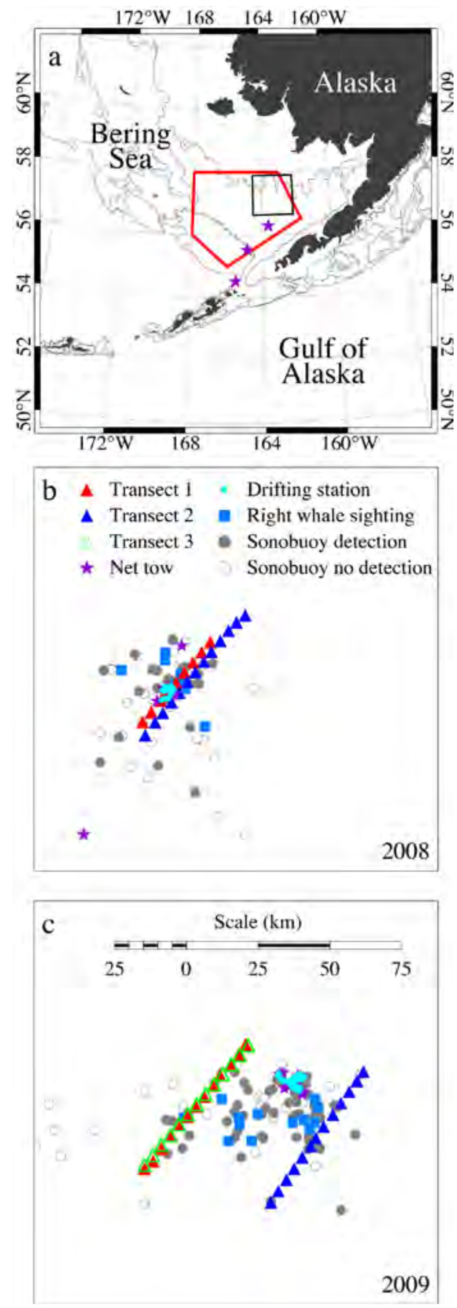


Figure 1. (a) SE Bering sea including critical habitat (red), study area (box), and locations of net tows outside study area. Sampling locations in (a) 2008 and (b) 2009.

<u>Profiling instrument package</u>
Environmental sampling was conducted with a profiling instrument package consisting of a conductivity-temperature-depth instrument (CTD; Seabird Electronics, SBE19plus), chlorophyll fluorometer (Wetlabs, Wetstar WS3S), optical plankton counter (OPC; Focal Technologies, OPC-1T; Herman 1988, 1992), video plankton recorder (VPR; Seascan, DAVPR; Davis et al. 1992, 1996), altimeter (Benthos, PSA-916), and a bottom contact switch (WHOI custom built). These instruments provided vertical profiles of temperature (CTD), salinity (CTD), chlorophyll fluorescence (fluorometer), particle size and abundance (OPC), light attenuance (OPC), and zooplankton abundance and community composition (VPR). Independent estimates of *C. marshallae* abundance were obtained from the OPC and VPR after an empirical calibration procedure using collocated zooplankton net samples (see below). The OPC counts and estimates the size of all particles that pass through its 2×25 cm

rectangular tunnel. Since we anticipated that no other zooplankton would be as abundant and of a similar size as *C. marshallae* in our study area, the abundance of particles in a particular size range should be strongly related to the abundance of *C. marshallae* (after Heath et al. 1999, Baumgartner 2003). Hence, after an appropriate calibration to determine the optimum particle size range, the abundance of *C. marshallae* could be accurately predicted using OPC particle abundance.

Whereas the OPC can provide taxonomic discrimination only by inference based on particle size, the VPR collects images of a relatively small volume of water at high sample rates (23-30 images per second) that can be used to unequivocally identify zooplankton. During 2008 and 2009, the VPR camera imaged a volume of approximately 12 ml (17×13×54 mm) and 2.2 ml (10×7×31 mm), respectively, producing 10-bit 1392×1024-pixel digital images. Regions of interest, defined as areas in the images with high brightness and contrast, were automatically extracted using AutoDeck software (Seascan) and visually inspected to identify and classify zooplankton. Prosome length was measured for all copepods imaged by the VPR using custom software written in IDL, a scientific programming environment (ITT Visual Information Solutions). Each copepod's orientation angle relative to the depth of field was estimated so that the prosome length could be transformed from the image's coordinate system to one in which the copepod is laterally exposed (i.e., laying flat on its side). The abundance of *C. marshallae* was calculated as the number of copepods identified in the VPR images during the downcast that had prosome lengths of 1.5-3.5 mm divided by the product of the total number of images captured during the downcast and the image volume. The VPR catastrophically failed during the 2009 cruise on July 26, so no VPR data were available after that date (i.e., for the 2009 drifting station, tagging, transect 3, or net-VPR comparisons; Table 1).

Table 1. Dates, times, duration, and number of casts conducted for each study activity. All times are local.

Activity	Start date/time	End date/time	Duration (hours)	Number of casts
2008				
Transect 1	08/06/08 13:24	08/06/08 17:42	4.3	9
Drifting station	08/06/08 21:25	08/07/08 09:58	12.6	26
Transect 2	08/12/08 10:35	08/12/08 15:05	4.5	13
2009				
Transect 1	07/23/09 10:59	07/23/09 16:41	5.7	13
Transect 2	07/24/09 20:29	07/25/09 02:18	5.8	13
Drifting station	07/27/09 15:06	07/28/09 14:32	23.4	49
Tagged right whale	07/31/09 12:09	07/31/09 12:31	0.4	3
Transect 3	08/01/09 18:37	08/01/09 23:34	5.0	13

Sonobuoys

We deployed two types of sonobuoys to conduct passive acoustic monitoring in real time: USS 53E and Sparton 77C. These sonobuoys transmitted audio to the ship via a VHF radio link, where it was digitized, recorded to hard disk, and monitored in real time. The radio reception range varied from 10-15 miles, and the sonobuoys were programmed to transmit for up to 8 hours. An analyst reviewed all sonobuoy recordings for right whale calls, including gunshots and frequency-modulated sweeps. For the analyses below, sonobuoy deployments were categorized as those during which one or more right whale calls were detected, and those during which no right whale calls were detected.

Zooplankton sampling

Zooplankton samples were collected with a 75-cm diameter single ring and a 60-cm diameter double ring outfitted with 150 μm mesh nets and a cod end. Two types of tows were conducted: double oblique tows with the double ring net that spanned the entire water column and vertical hauls with the single ring net that spanned only the upper 10-15 m. For oblique tows in 2008 and both oblique tows and vertical hauls in 2009, a flowmeter (General Oceanics, 2030R) was suspended in the center of the net mouth to facilitate estimation of the volume filtered by the net. For vertical hauls in 2008, no flowmeter was used and filtered volume was estimated as the product of the net mouth area and the sampled depth stratum. A real-time telemetering instrument measuring temperature and depth (Seabird Electronics, SBE39) was affixed to the sea cable 1 m above the net for all oblique hauls so that the net could be fished to within 5 m of the sea floor. Jellyfish were carefully rinsed and removed from the zooplankton samples prior to preservation in a buffered 5% formalin and seawater solution. Aliquots of the samples were obtained using the Huntsman Marine Laboratory beaker technique (Van Guelpen et al. 1982) and all organisms were identified to the lowest taxonomic level possible. All copepodids of *Calanus* were identified to developmental stage. Copepod biomass was approximated for *Pseudocalanus* spp. and *C. marshallae* by assuming all copepodids were in stage C5, and individual dry weights were as follows: 8.5 μg for *Pseudocalanus* spp. (Vidal and Smith 1986, Liu and Hopcroft 2008) and 327 μg for *C. marshallae* (Vidal and Smith 1986).

OPC and VPR calibration

The optimum OPC particle size range for predicting the abundance of late-stage *C. marshallae* was estimated using collocated OPC casts and net tows collected in 2008 and 2009 after Heath et al. (1999) and Baumgartner (2003). OPC-derived particle abundances were derived over numerous size ranges by systematically varying both the minimum particle size (0.25-5.0 mm in 0.05 mm steps) and the span (0.10-3.0 mm in 0.05 mm steps) of the size range. Using only data from 2008 (the calibration dataset), the logarithm of these particle abundances was linearly regressed against the corresponding log-transformed net abundances for each particle size range. The resulting regression equations were used to predict log-transformed *C. marshallae* abundance for the net tows conducted in 2009 (the validation dataset), and the root mean square error (RMSE) of these predictions was used to measure the prediction accuracy of the regression equation. The optimum size range was selected as that which simultaneously minimized the RMSE for the 2009 validation dataset and maximized the coefficient of determination (r^2) for the 2008 calibration dataset. A final calibration regression equation was determined using log-transformed net abundances of *C. marshallae* and log-transformed OPC particle counts in the optimum size range. At stations where both the VPR and a net tow were conducted, the VPR-derived abundance of *C. marshallae* was also compared to the corresponding net-derived abundance using linear regression. Because a 1:1 relationship was not found, all VPR-derived *C. marshallae* abundances were adjusted using this linear regression equation. As a final check, OPC- and VPR-derived *C. marshallae* abundances were compared for all casts (including those without collocated net tows).

Drifting stations

Once during each cruise we established a station in an area where right whales had been encountered within the past 24 hours to monitor zooplankton vertical distribution over time. Right whales were acoustically monitored using sonobuoys and an array of 4 drifting buoys that each carried a hydrophone (High Tech, Inc., HTI-96-MIN), passive acoustic recorder (Dell PocketPC running Loggerhead LARS-HF software), radio modem (Freewave, FGR-series 900-MHz), and a global positioning system (GPS; Garmin, GPS16 HVS) receiver (Baumgartner et al. 2008a). Every 2 seconds, the buoys transmitted their GPS-derived location to a computer on the ship where the buoy and ship locations were graphically displayed. The buoys were deployed 3.7 km to the north, south, east and west of the initial station and were allowed to freely drift. Every half hour over the course of the next 12.6 (2008) or 23.4 (2009) hours, a new station would be established in the center of the drifting buoy array, and a cast would be conducted at that station with the profiling instrument package. At roughly 3- (2008) or 6-hour (2009) intervals, a zooplankton sample was collected in the surface mixed layer (0-10 m in 2008, 0-15 m in 2009) with a vertical haul. At the beginning and end of the drifting station, this vertical haul would be immediately followed by a double oblique net tow spanning the entire water column.

Cross-isobath transects

Because of the low right whale population size, systematic habitat sampling consisting of simultaneous visual and oceanographic surveys conducted on pre-determined random transects was considered extremely inefficient (i.e., very few, if any, right whales would be encountered with such a sampling design). Moreover, the logistical constraints of several competing research activities relegated the oceanographic surveys to times with very poor sighting conditions, which precluded visual sighting effort. (e.g., fair weather days were reserved for tagging operations). To overcome these limitations, we conducted surveys only after we had developed a sense for the general distribution of whales in the study area so that we could choose locations for the surveys based on where we did and did not expect to encounter whales. This adaptive design was intended to facilitate comparisons of prey abundance and oceanographic conditions between areas where whales were present and areas where whales were absent. For some surveys, the center of the survey transect was located in an area where right whales were recently sighted, and extended 20-30 km to the northeast and southwest of this central location. The total length of each transect was 40-60 km. A single cast with the vertical profiling instrument package was conducted at stations spaced 4.6 km apart along the transect. During 2009, sonobuoys were also deployed regularly at stations along the transects to detect the presence of right whales; only one sonobuoy was deployed during the cross-isobath surveys in 2008.

Logistic regression was used to examine the relationship between the relative probability of right whale detection during a sonobuoy deployment and environmental conditions observed with the vertical profiling instrument package. The regression model was as follows:

$$\log[\pi/(1-\pi)] = \beta_0 + \beta_1 V$$

where π is the probability and $\pi/(1-\pi)$ are the odds of detecting a right whale call during a sonobuoy recording and V is an environmental variable. The water column was highly stratified and downward refracting, suggesting that acoustic propagation distances were relatively short.

From maximum detection distances of localized calls from the drifting buoys and preliminary propagation modeling, we estimate the detection distance of right whale calls was likely 12 km or less (data not presented here); therefore, a sonobuoy detection suggested only that a right whale was in the vicinity of a station, not actually at the station. To account for this spatial uncertainty, the value of each environmental variable associated with a sonobuoy deployment was calculated as an average of the values measured at the station where the sonobuoy was deployed and the two immediately adjacent stations on the transect.

Tagging

We attempted to attach archival tags to right whales for short periods of time (hours), track them closely, and sample prey distribution and oceanographic properties in proximity to the tagged whales using the vertical profiling instrument package. During 2008, we used a suction-cup attached tag consisting of a time-depth recorder (Wildlife Computers, MK9), pitch and roll instrument (Star-Oddi, DST pitch and roll), radio transmitter (Telonics, CHP-5P), and acoustic transmitter (Vemco, V22P) that was deployed using a 8 m telescoping aluminum pole. During 2009, we used a dermal attachment tag consisting of a time-depth recorder (Lotek, LAT1500), radio transmitter (Telonics, MOD-050), and acoustic transmitter (Vemco, V22P) that was deployed using a compressed air launcher (Heidi-Jørgensen et al. 2001). The tag was connected via a tether to the dermal attachment, a 6.5-cm long needle designed to anchor in the epidermis and blubber, and detachment was achieved with a corrosive foil release that allowed the tether to separate from the tag (Baumgartner and Hammar 2010). Both the suction cup and dermal attachment tags had sufficient floatation to allow them to be recovered at the surface after detachment from the whale. During 2008, we found right whales to be quite evasive and difficult to approach in a rigid hulled inflatable boat; hence, no whales were successfully tagged in 2008. The increased deployment range afforded by the dermal attachment tag allowed a single tag to be deployed in 2009.

Results

OPC and VPR calibration

The optimum OPC particle size range for predicting late-stage *C. marshallae* abundance was 1.95-2.45 mm: $r^2 = 0.551$ for the 2008 calibration dataset ($n = 12$, $p = 0.0057$), RMSE of log-transformed abundances = 0.945 for the 2009 validation dataset ($n = 7$). The final calibration equation predicting *C. marshallae* abundance (A_{OPC}) from OPC particle counts between 1.95 and 2.45 mm ($OPC_{1.95\text{-}2.45}$) was derived from all 2008 and 2009 stations ($n = 19$) and was as follows

$$\log_{10}(A_{OPC}) = [\log_{10}(OPC_{1.95\text{-}2.45}) - 0.4804] / 0.4404$$

($r^2 = 0.485$, $p = 0.0009$; Figure 2a). As with *C. finmarchicus* (Heath et al. 2009, Baumgartner 2003), OPC particle counts underestimated net-derived *C. marshallae* abundance at moderate to high abundances (Figure 2a). VPR-derived abundance of copepods between 1.5 and 3.5 mm length was strongly correlated with net-derived *C. marshallae* abundance ($r^2 = 0.705$, $p = 0.0006$); however the VPR overestimated *C. marshallae* abundance at low net abundances and underestimated *C. marshallae* abundance at high net abundances (Figure 2b). To account for this, the following regression equation was derived from the 2008 stations only ($n = 12$; recall that there were no collocated VPR casts and net tows in 2009) and used to predict *C. marshallae* abundance (A_{VPR}) from VPR counts of copepods of 1.5-3.5 mm length ($VPR_{1.5\text{-}3.5}$)

$$\log_{10}(A_{VPR}) = [\log_{10}(VPR_{1.5\text{-}3.5}) - 1.451] / 0.5189.$$

OPC-derived *C. marshallae* abundance was significantly correlated with VPR-derived abundance for all stations in 2008 and 2009 ($n = 62$, $r^2 = 0.607$, $p < 0.0001$; Figure 2c; stations with collocated net tows or with A_{VPR} or $A_{OPC} = 0$ were excluded). The median ratio of *C. marshallae* abundance estimates (A_{VPR} / A_{OPC}) was 0.990 (95% CI: 0.696-1.41), which was not significantly different from 1 (t-test of log-transformed differences: $t = -0.061$, $p = 0.9513$). On average, the OPC- and VPR-derived abundance estimates agreed to within a factor of 3.96 (root mean square of log-transformed differences = 0.597).

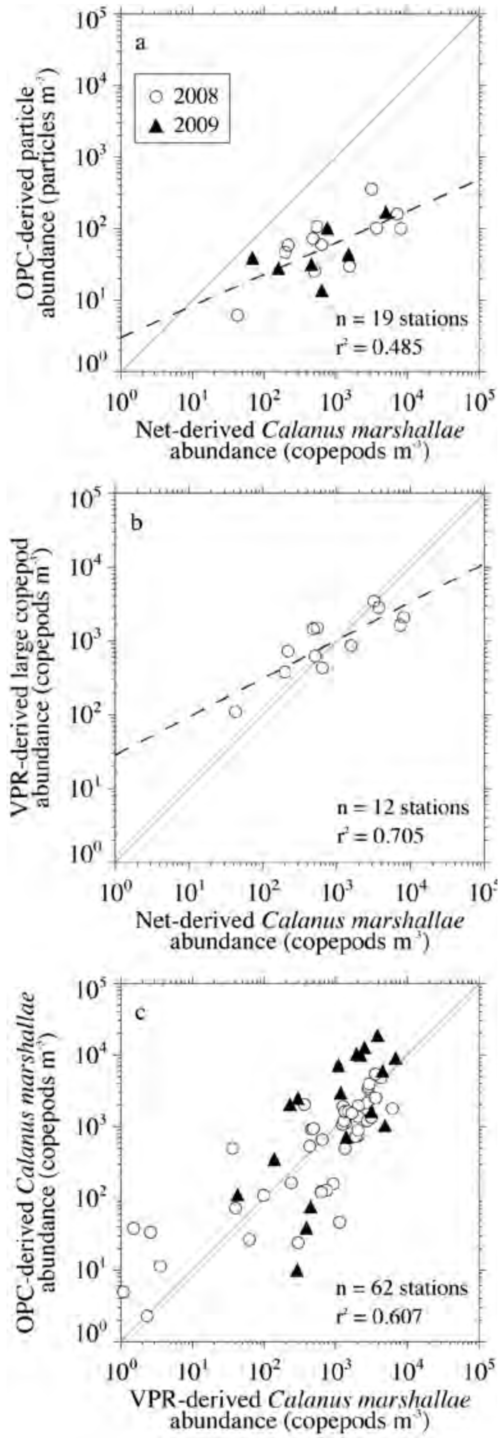


Figure 2. Comparisons of (a) OPC-derived and (b) VPR-derived *Calanus marshallae* with that observed from zooplankton net samples. (c) Collocated OPC- and VPR-derived *C. marshallae* abundance.

<u>Zooplankton sampling</u>

Pseudocalanus spp. was numerically dominant in the oblique tows conducted within several kilometers of right whales. On average, *Pseudocalanus* spp. was 2.4 times as abundant as *C. marshallae* ($n = 7$ tows, average *C. marshallae* abundance = 751 copepods m^{-3}, average *Pseudocalanus* spp. abundance = 1404 copepods m^{-3}, average of $\log_{10}$-transformed abundance ratios = 0.376, SD = 0.294, t-test of ratio = 1: $t = 3.39$, $p = 0.0147$). However, since *C. marshallae* is a much larger copepod than *Pseudocalanus* spp., *C. marshallae* by far dominated the zooplankton biomass; *C. marshallae* biomass in proximity to right whales was, on average, 16.2 times that of *Pseudocalanus* spp. ($n = 7$ tows, average *C. marshallae* biomass = 245.5 mg m^{-3}, average *Pseudocalanus* spp. biomass = 11.9 mg m^{-3}, average of $\log_{10}$-transformed biomass ratios = 1.21, SD = 0.294, t-test of ratio = 1: $t = 10.9$, $p < 0.0001$). *C. marshallae* was only found in developmental stages C4-C6 in tows conducted near right whales, and of these stages, C5 was overwhelmingly predominant (average percent contribution of C5 to all *C. marshallae* stages near right whales was 94.8%, SD = 6.88%, $n = 7$). The few tows collected on the shelf with right whales absent suggested that the shelf-wide population of *C. marshallae* was almost exclusively in stage C5 during the time of our study (average percent contribution of C5 to all *C. marshallae* stages collected with right whales absent was 95.9%, SD = 4.85%, n = 3). Other copepods were present in the zooplankton net samples collected near right whales, but they either had very low abundance (e.g., *Neocalanus* spp.) or were too small or infrequently encountered to be an important food resource for right whales (e.g., *Acartia longiremis*, *Oithona similis*). Chaetognaths and bivalve larvae were relatively common, but abundances of these taxa were low when compared to copepods. Finally, the large jellyfish *Chrysaora melanaster* was extremely abundant in the region in both 2008 and 2009; several would often be caught in each zooplankton tow, and our vertical profiling instrument package would almost always return on deck with numerous jellyfish tentacles attached to it.

<u>Drifting stations</u>

During the 2008 drifting station study, the abundances of *C. marshallae* and *Pseudocalanus* spp. in the upper 10 m of the water column were not significantly different from one another (on

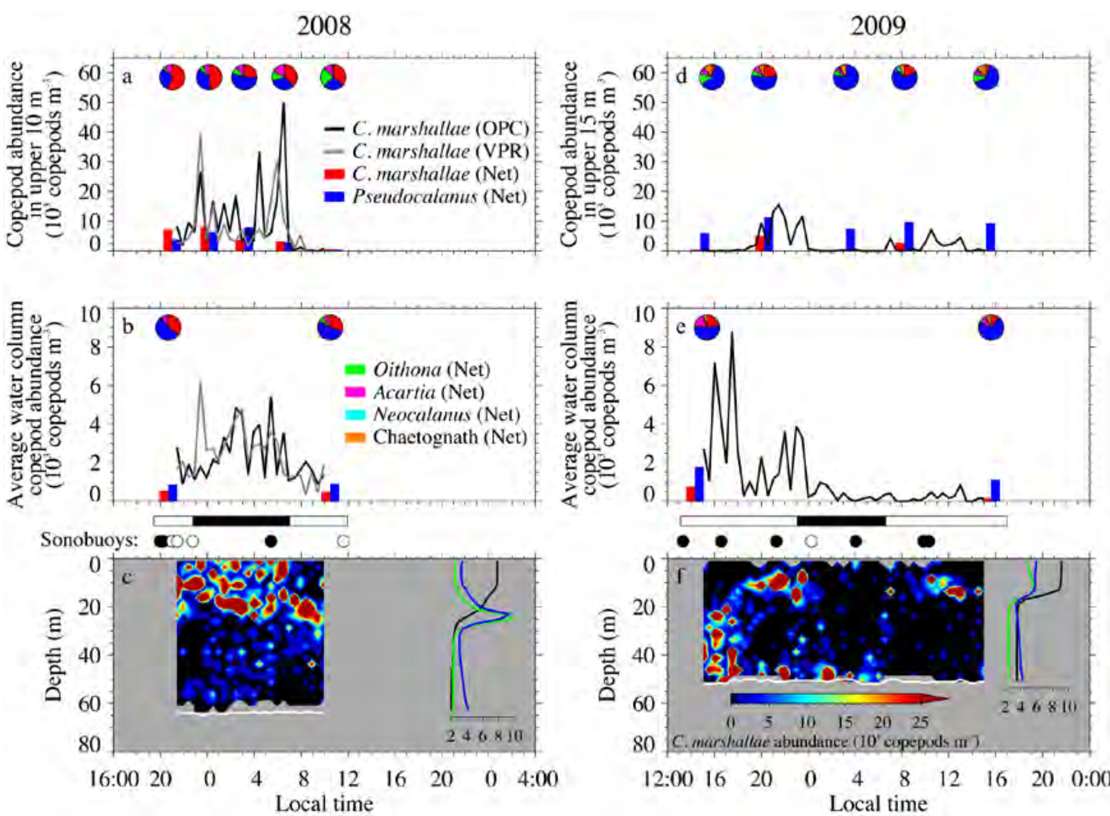


Figure 3. Copepod abundance and distribution observed during the drifting stations in 2008 and 2009. (a) Average OPC- (black line), VPR- (gray line), and net-derived (red bars) *C. marshallae* abundance and net-derived *Pseudocalanus* spp. abundance (blue bars) over the upper 10 m during August 6-7, 2008. Pie charts are shown at the time of each net haul to illustrate the zooplankton community composition. (b) Average water column abundance of *C. marshallae* and *Pseudocalanus* spp. (c) OPC-derived vertical distribution of *C. marshallae* (sea floor indicated by the white line). Inset shows the average vertical distribution of temperature (black line in units of ºC; scale below lines) and chlorophyll fluorescence (green line in relative units) over the course of each station. Day (white) and night (black) periods indicated by the bar above (c). Circles above (c) indicate sonobuoy deployments when right whales were detected (filled) and not detected (open). (d) Average copepod abundance over the upper 15 m, (e) average water column abundance, and (f) vertical distribution of *C. marshallae* during July 27-28, 2009 (all symbols and annotation identical to that in a-c).

average, the ratio of *Pseudocalanus* spp. to *C. marshallae* was 0.93; average $\log_{10}$-transformed abundance ratio = -0.0332, SD = 0.224, n = 5, t-test: t = -0.332, p = 0.7566; note low power of this test); however the biomass of *C. marshallae* was, on average, 41.5 times that of *Pseudocalanus* spp. (average $\log_{10}$-transformed biomass ratio = 1.62, SD = 0.224, n = 5, t-test: t = 16.1, $p < 0.0001$). Both the OPC and the VPR indicated high variability in *C. marshallae* abundance in the upper 10 m over the course of the station (Figure 3a), with some peaks in abundance exceeding 30,000 copepods m^{-3}. Although the net-derived average water column abundance of *C. marshallae* was moderate at the beginning (547 copepods m^{-3}) and end (482 copepods m^{-3}) of the station, the OPC and VPR observations suggested that the average water column abundance rose to over 4000 copepods m^{-3} around the mid-point of the station (Figure 3b). The OPC-derived distribution of *C. marshallae* (Figure 3c) indicated that the vast majority of *C. marshallae* occurred in the thermocline and surface mixed layer of the upper 20-25 m of the water column, (this pattern is identical to that observed in the VPR-derived vertical distribution; data not shown). Interestingly, *C. marshallae* occurred in the surface mixed layer despite the presence of a persistent layer of phytoplankton at the base of the thermocline (indicated by a peak in fluorescence in Figure 3c). Acoustic detections from both the sonobuoys (Figure 3c) and the drifting buoys (data not shown) indicated that right whales were present during the 2008 drifting station.

In contrast to 2008, the abundance of *Pseudocalanus* spp. in the upper 15 m of the water column during the 2009 drifting station was significantly higher than that of *C. marshallae* (on average, the ratio of *Pseudocalanus* spp. to *C. marshallae* was 11.0; average $\log_{10}$-transformed abundance ratio = 1.04, SD = 0.654, n = 5, t-test: t = 3.56, p = 0.0236), and *Pseudocalanus* spp. biomass was not significantly different from that of *C. marshallae* (average $\log_{10}$-transformed biomass ratio = 0.544, SD = 0.654, n = 5, t-test: t = 1.86, p = 0.1367). While *Pseudocalanus* spp. net abundance was slightly higher in 2009 than during 2008, both the net samples and the OPC indicated that *C. marshallae* abundance in the upper water column was much lower during the 2009 drifting station than during the 2008 drifting station (Figure 3d). Despite these changes in the upper water column, the OPC-derived average water column abundance of *C. marshallae* actually peaked at over 6000 copepods m^{-3} (higher than in 2008) near the beginning of the station (Figure 3e). These changes between years was largely caused by a difference in the vertical distribution of *C. marshallae* (Figure 3f); the OPC observations indicated that *C. marshallae* occurred throughout the water column during the 2009 drifting station, whereas *C. marshallae* was largely confined to the upper water column during the 2008 drifting station. During 2009, *C. marshallae* was not only found in the surface mixed layer where phytoplankton abundance was high (as indicated by high fluorescence), but also in the thermocline and the bottom layer (including some very near bottom patches) where phytoplankton abundance was very low. As in 2008, acoustic detections from both the sonobuoys (Figure 3f) and the drifting buoys (data not shown) indicated that right whales were present during the 2009 drifting station.

<u>Cross-isobath transects</u>

Two cross-isobath transects were conducted 6 days apart in nearly the same location during 2008 (Figure 1b). An additional three cross-isobath transects were conducted during 2009: transects 1 and 3 occurred 9 days apart in exactly the same location as the two transects conducted in 2008, and transect 2 was conducted 50 km to the east (Figure 1c). As expected in the middle shelf domain during the summer, the water column was stratified into two layers, a warm fresh layer at

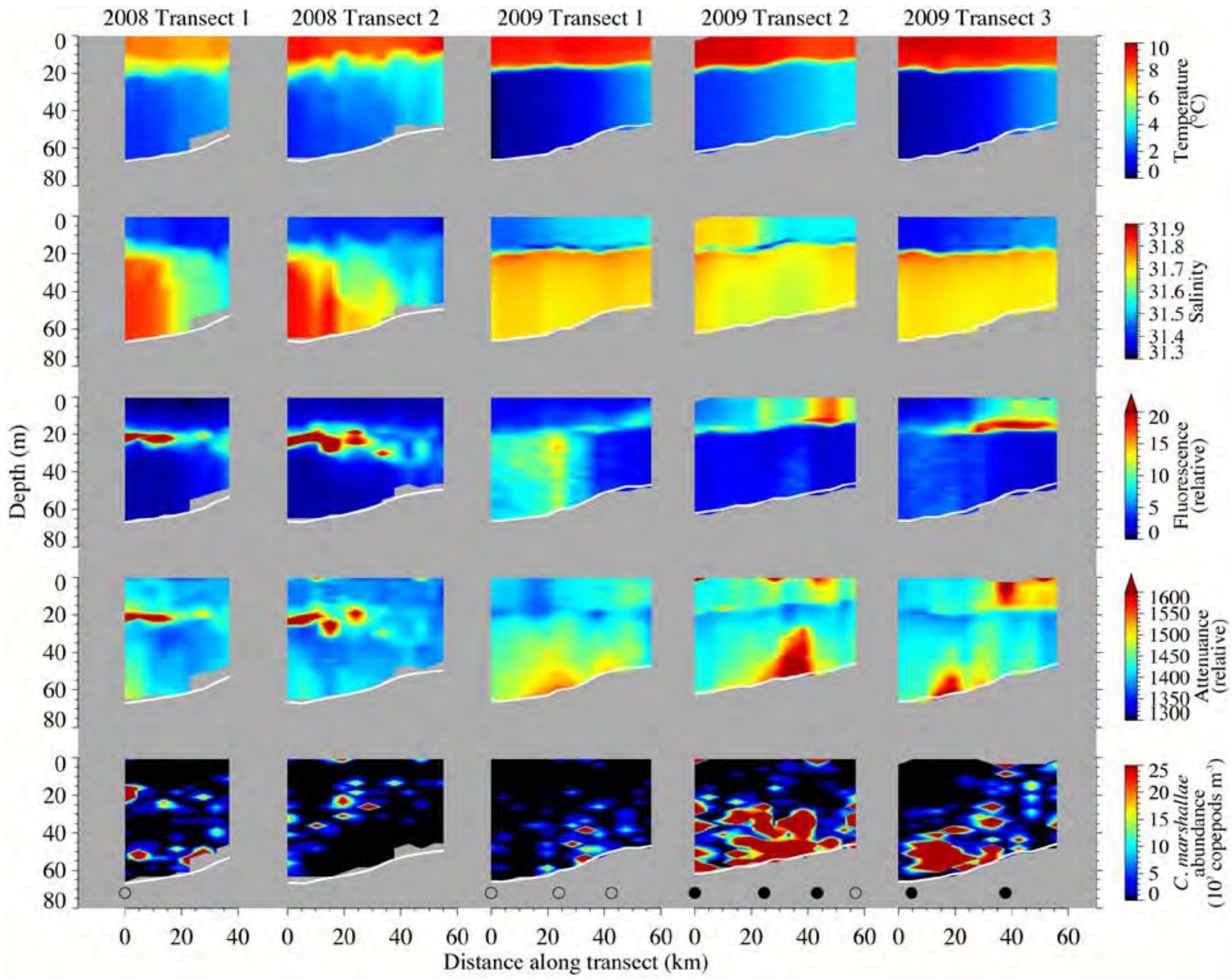


Figure 4. Cross sections of temperature, salinity, chlorophyll fluorescence, and OPC-derived *Calanus marshallae* abundance collected during cross-isobath transects. Circles just above x-axis indicate sonobuoy deployments when right whales were detected (filled) and not detected (open).

the surface and a cold salty layer at depth, and these two layers were separated by a sharp pycnocline (Figure 4). During 2008, a subsurface front was observed in the middle of transects 1 and 2 as a high cross-isobath gradient in salinity (Figure 4). This front was not present during 2009, when bottom layer salinities were much less variable across the study area. Patterns in chlorophyll fluorescence suggested that phytoplankton abundance was generally highest in the pycnocline, but also that the distribution of phytoplankton varied significantly in both time and space. These patterns in hydrography and fluorescence appeared to have little influence on the distribution and abundance of *C. marshallae*. There was no evidence to suggest that the presence of a subsurface front in 2008 caused an increase in *C. marshallae* abundance (Figure 4). Instead, the highest *C. marshallae* abundances were observed during transects 2 and 3 in 2009, when we observed very little cross-isobath variability in hydrographic properties. *C. marshallae* abundance and distribution also appeared to be unaffected by the distribution and abundance of phytoplankton. Despite observing consistently high fluorescence measurements in the pycnocline, the median log-transformed *C. marshallae* abundances in the surface and bottom

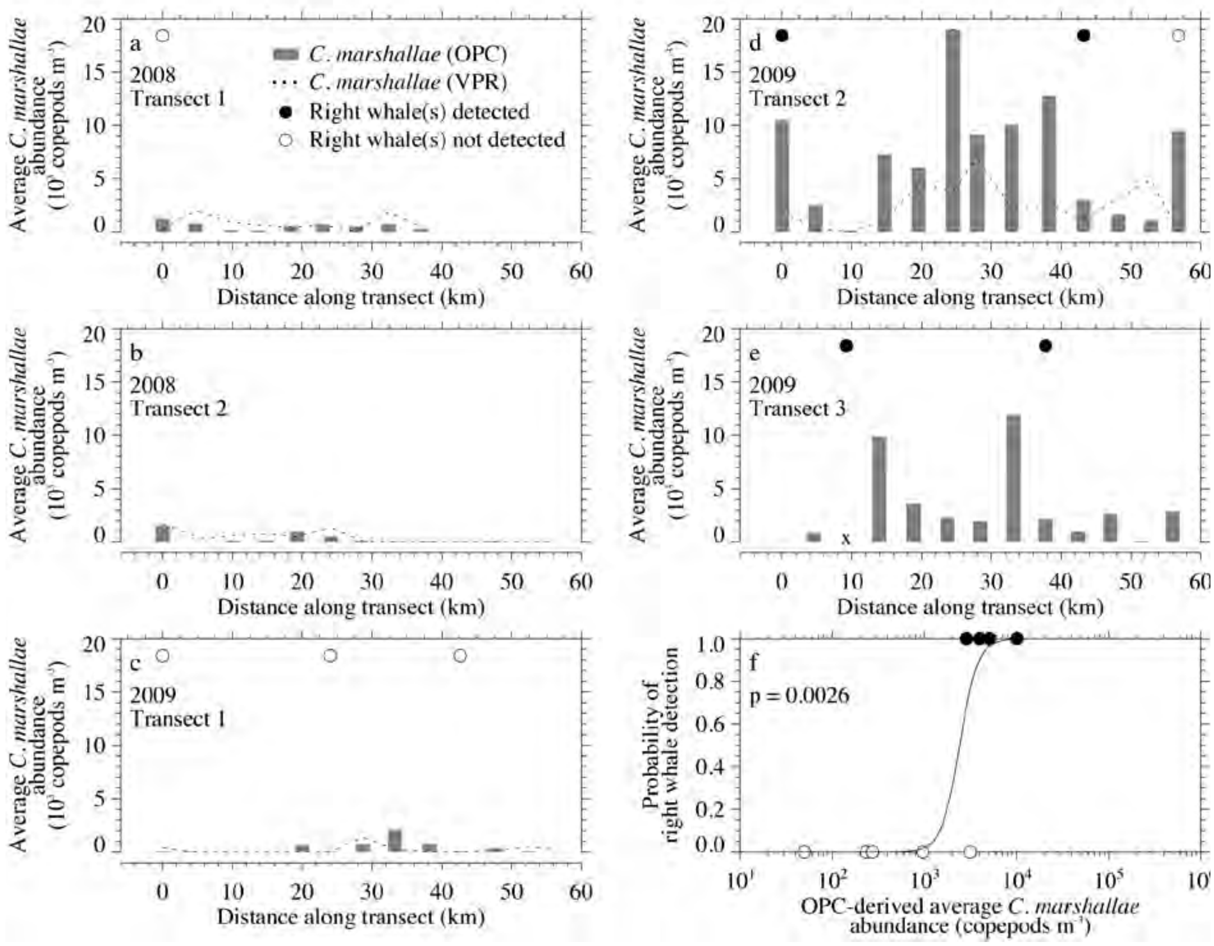


Figure 5. (a-e) OPC- (gray bars) and VPR-derived (dotted line) average water column abundance of *Calanus marshallae* at each station during cross-isobath transects during 2008 and 2009. Circles indicate sonobuoy deployments where right whales were acoustically detected (filled) or not detected (open). (f) Logistic regression of right whale detections versus OPC-derived average water column abundance of *C. marshallae*.

layers were never both significantly lower than that observed in the pycnocline (one-sided paired t test for each transect, $p > 0.20$ for each).

Poor visibility owing to fog, heavy seas, or nighttime made sighting effort impossible during the cross-isobath transects, but right whale presence was acoustically monitored with sonobuoys. Only a single sonouboy was deployed during 2008, but sonobuoys were deployed along each of the transects conducted during 2009 (Figure 4). Right whales were not detected during the single 2008 sonobuoy deployment or along transect 1 in 2009 when *C. marshallae* abundance was comparatively low (Figure 5a-c). In contrast, right whales were often detected along transects 2 and 3 in 2009 when *C. marshallae* abundance was quite high (Figure 5d,e). The probability of detecting a right whale on a sonobuoy recording was strongly related to the average water column abundance of *C. marshallae* (logistic regression, $p = 0.0026$), and the detection probability increased steeply after the abundance of *C. marshallae* reached 1000-3000 copepods m^{-3} (Figure 5f).

Of all the environmental variables examined, *C. marshallae* abundance had, by far, the strongest influence on the probability of detecting a right whale during a sonobuoy recording (Table 2). There was no evidence of a relationship between detection probability and any of the variables derived from temperature, salinity, or fluorescence (Table 2). Although the logistic regression model results for both surface layer temperature (p = 0.0508) and bottom layer salinity (p = 0.0617) were suggestive of a relationship, these nearly significant results were influenced strongly by the single sonobuoy observation collected during 2008. When this case was omitted (i.e., only 2009 data were used), the p-values for these models became insignificant (p = 0.1251 for surface layer temperature and p = 0.1579 for bottom layer salinity), but the results for the models with *C. marshallae* abundance remained unchanged.

Table 2. Results of logistic regression models of the form $logit(\pi) = \beta_0 + \beta_1 V$ where π is the relative probability of detecting a right whale during a sonobuoy deployment, V is an independent environmental variable, and β_0 and β_1 are the model coefficients. The drop in deviance statistic and its associated p-value is shown. Depth strata are as follows: surface (0-10 m), pycnocline (10-30 m), and bottom (30 m to the sea floor). Abundances of *Calanus marshallae* are estimated from optical plankton counter (OPC) observations.

Environmental variable	Drop in deviance	p
Surface layer temperature	3.81	0.0508
Bottom layer temperature	0.13	0.7213
Surface layer salinity	0.76	0.3837
Bottom layer salinity	3.49	0.0617
Surface layer fluorescence	2.05	0.1518
Pycnocline fluorescence	0.17	0.6834
Bottom layer fluorescence	1.39	0.2385
Average water column fluorescence	0.15	0.6947
Pycnocline temperature gradient	0.24	0.6214
Pycnocline salinity gradient	1.43	0.2311
Pycnocline density gradient	0.04	0.8330
C. marshallae average water column abundance	9.10**	0.0026
C. marshallae surface abundance	4.65*	0.0311
C. marshallae pycnocline abundance	0.20	0.6534
C. marshallae bottom abundance	7.64**	0.0057

Transects 1 and 3 in 2009 were conducted in the exact same location 9 days apart. Despite few differences in the cross-isoabath distribution of temperature and salinity, there were remarkable differences in *C. marshallae* abundance. These changes over such a short period of time are suggestive of along-isobath advection of copepods within a water mass. Based on the similarities between *C. marshallae* distribution and abundance along transects 2 and 3 (Figure 4), it is tempting to suggest that the copepods observed on transect 2 were advected 50 km to the west over the 8 intervening days to be observed again at transect 3. However, temperatures and salinities near the sea floor along transect 2 were warmer (~1°C) and fresher (~0.03) than those observed at transect 3, indicating transect 2 was not likely the source of copepods for transect 3 if

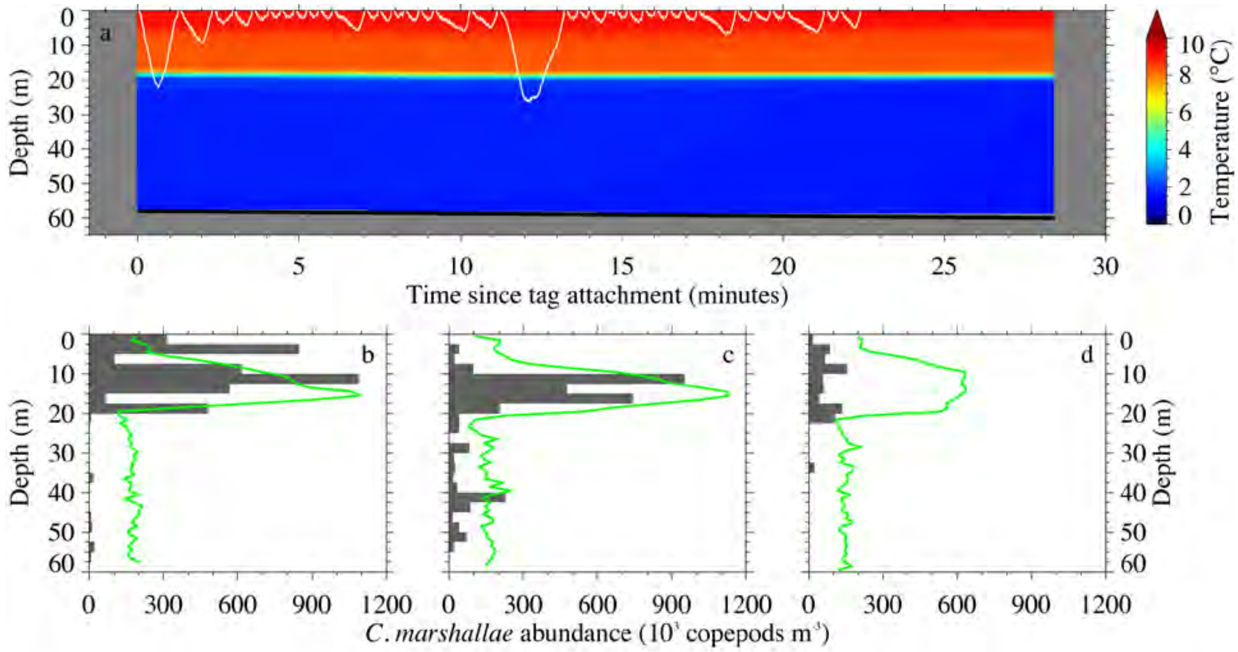


Figure 6. (a) Diving behavior of single tagged right whale (white line) and vertical distribution of temperature (color) measured at three locations along tagged whale's track. Thick black line indicates sea floor. (b-d) Vertical distribution of OPC-derived *C. marshallae* abundance (gray bars) and relative chlorophyll fluorescence (green line).

the copepods remained continuously in the bottom layer (i.e., if the water mass at transect 2 was advected to transect 3, we would expect the two transects to be reasonably similar in temperature and salinity properties).

<u>Tagging</u>

A single right whale was tagged on July 31, 2009. The tag remained attached for only 22 minutes during which the whale traveled to the south at an average speed of 9.9 km hr^{-1} (5.4 knots). A premature rupture of the corrosive release foil caused tag detachment. Because of its moderate swim speed, short dive times, and numerous respirations, it is unlikely that the whale fed during the short period it was tagged. The whale remained in the surface layer except for two short dives to just below the thermocline (Figure 6a). Three casts were conducted with the profiling instrument package along the whale's track. OPC-derived *C. marshallae* abundance was extremely high in proximity to the tagged whale (Figure 6b-d): average water column abundances were 57,220, 72,410, 11,250 copepods m^{-3} for each of the three casts, and maximum abundances estimated over 2.5 m depth strata were 1,090,000, 950,700, 153,700 copepods m^{-3} (note that these abundances are extrapolations from the net-OPC calibration equation shown in Figure 2a). Abundance maxima for *C. marshallae* occurred in the surface layer and were coincident with the sub-surface chlorophyll fluorescence maxima (Figure 6b-d).

CALL PRODUCTION OVER SHORT TIME SCALES
Carter Esch, Mark Baumgartner, Catherine Berchok, and Alex Zerbini

Data collection

In the summers of 2008 and 2009, a multidisciplinary research effort was conducted to investigate the distribution, movement and ecology of right whales in the SEBS (Clapham et al. 2009). To evaluate right whale calling behavior, we deployed a 4-unit free-floating geo-referenced passive acoustic listening array ("drifting station") in NPRW critical habitat (Figure 1) from 1800 (local) August 6 – 1000 August 7, 2008 (~16 hours), and 1200 July 26 – 1500 July 28, 2009 (~51 hours). Drifting stations were established in locations where NPRWs had been sighted within the past 24 hours (or less). Each recording unit consisted of a Real-time Acoustic Tracking System (RATS; Baumgartner et al. 2008a) buoy equipped with a Dell Pocket PC (Dell Computer Corporation, Round Rock, TX) running customized digital acoustic recording software (Loggerhead Instruments, Sarasota, FL) that sampled a HTI-96-MIN (High Tech, INC., Gulfport, MS) hydrophone (sensitivity -186.3 dBV/µPa, frequency response 2Hz-30kHz) at 8192 Hz. Briefly, RATS buoys include an instrument well encased in Surlyn foam for flotation, a mast equipped with a radio antenna and a global positioning system (GPS) receiver, and a hydrophone suspended below the buoy well. GPS data are transmitted from each buoy to the ship in real time to track buoys, facilitate retrieval, and to aid in localization of whale calls during post-processing. In 2008, hydrophones were placed 3.6m below the buoy well, but significant noise was recorded from surface wave action. In 2009, we used extended hydrophone cables (30m) to position the hydrophone in the middle of the water column (mean water depth = 60m) to minimize this surface noise in the recordings. Drifting stations were carried out during inclement weather conditions (e.g., fog), precluding concurrent visual observations or real-time assessment of right whale occurrence.

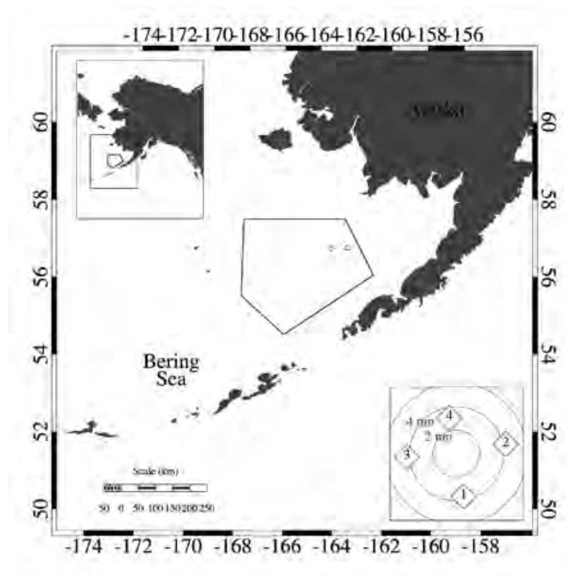


Figure 1. Locations of the two drifting stations in the southeastern Bering Sea study area. Inset at bottom right depicts configuration of RATS buoys around the anchor station in 2008. North Pacific right whale critical habitat is designated by the pentagon.

Manual review of acoustic recordings

NPRWs were assumed to produce calls similar to its two congeners, North Atlantic (NARW, *E. glacialis*) and Southern (SRW, *E. australis*) right whales. Therefore, call categories in this study (downsweep, gunshot, moan, upcall) generally follow Parks et al. 2005 (NARW), Clark 1982 (SRW), and McDonald and Moore (2002) and Berchok et al. 2009 (NPRW). A single analyst (HCE) manually reviewed recordings from one buoy for each of the two drifting stations. In 2008, right whales were the only baleen whale species observed in the days prior to and in the vicinity of the drifting station, whereas in 2009, other species (including fin, *Balaenoptera physalus*, and humpback, *Megaptera novaeangliae*, whales) were observed near the drifting

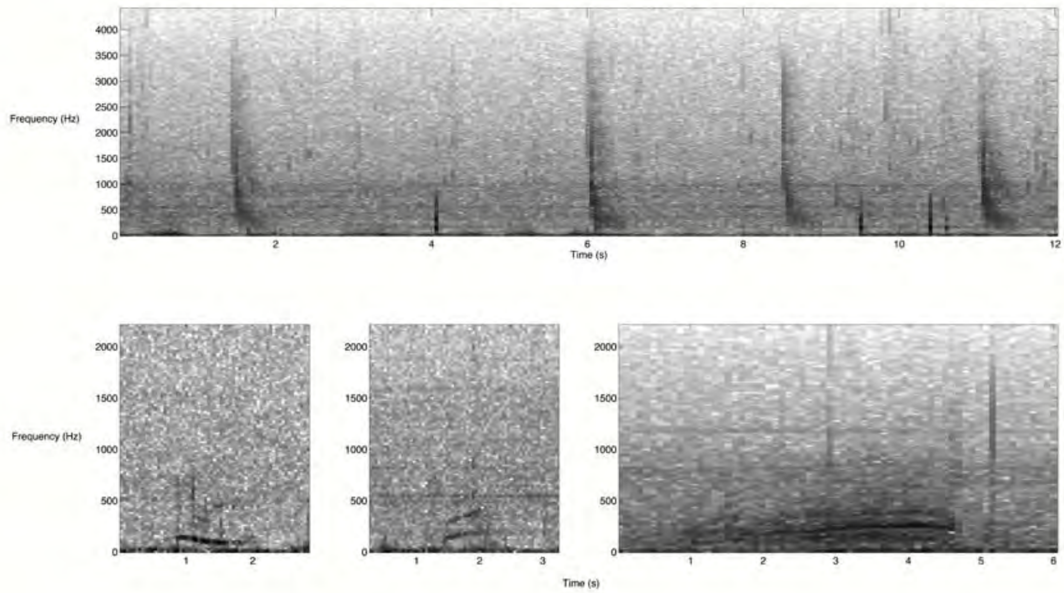


Figure 2. Spectrograms representing the four call categories used in this study: a) gunshot, b) downsweep, c) upcall, and d) moan. (Hanning window, FFT=512, overlap=50%).

station. We constructed call categories for 2008 based on the literature (mentioned above), and classified calls for 2009 based on the same call categories established in 2008 (to avoid any confusion between NPRW and humpback calls in 2009). All calls were logged and classified into four categories (gunshot, moan, upcall, downsweep, Figure 2) using XBAT (eXtensible BioAcoustic Tool, http://xbat.org). These call logs were used to assess temporal patterns in calling behavior.

Localization

Positions of vocalizing whales were estimated using the approach described in Baumgartner et al. (2008a,b). Immediately before and after RATS deployments, we produced a series of impulsive sounds (i.e., banged a pipe with a wrench) simultaneously to all four recorders while on the ship's deck to facilitate time synchronization of the recordings during post-processing. Differences in the arrival times of individual calls at each of the four recording units were estimated using spectrogram cross correlation; a manually logged call in the spectrogram for one buoy was cross-correlated with the spectrograms for the other three buoys. Caller positions could only be estimated if an individual call was received on at least three recorders. If the same call was present in another buoy recording, the cross correlation function produced a peak corresponding to the delay in time at which the call arrived at the two hydrophones. Manual review of these detection peaks was used to validate correct matches, and finalize position estimates. Validation included assessing 1) the order in which a call was received among buoys and the associated received levels (i.e., received levels should typically be highest on the channel at which a call arrived first), and/or 2) the received level of a localized call and the estimated distance between a localized call and each buoy (i.e., call amplitude should typically be higher for calls from closer locations). Manual review of detection peaks to eliminate spurious results was also aided by the context or order of the calls in each recording (e.g., detected call is the first in a series of three, detected call is preceded by another specific call in each of the buoy recordings).

Peaks in the cross correlation function did not always indicate correct matches. Gunshots were challenging to localize using the approach described above because gunshots were often concurrently produced by multiple animals, in long series, and/or in rapid succession. Cross-correlation of spectrograms with these gunshot displays produced many detection peaks, making it nearly impossible to decipher the peaks truly associated with the manually detected call (i.e., peaks designating the same call arriving at different buoys). We therefore applied an alternative approach to localization in these cases, focusing on gunshot bouts rather than single gunshots. Using spectrogram cross-correlation (similar to the localization technique described above), we compared time lags between the receipt of each logged gunshot on the single channel that was manually reviewed and each of the other channels. This approach differs from the technique described above mainly in the way these detection peaks were visualized (Figure 3). We plotted the cross-correlation function between each manually logged gunshot on channel 1 and every other channel (1-2, 1-3, 1-4). Cross-correlations among buoys receiving multiple calls from the same location will show a series of consecutive, coherent detection peaks with similar time lags. We expected the time lags between two buoys of a gunshot bout produced by a single animal to vary slowly over time, so that a coherent line of detection peaks (over a relatively short time scale) is apparent in the cross-correlation plots if a caller produces multiple successive calls. We then examined these coherent detection peaks one by one, localizing the position of the caller when the gunshot was received on three or more channels.

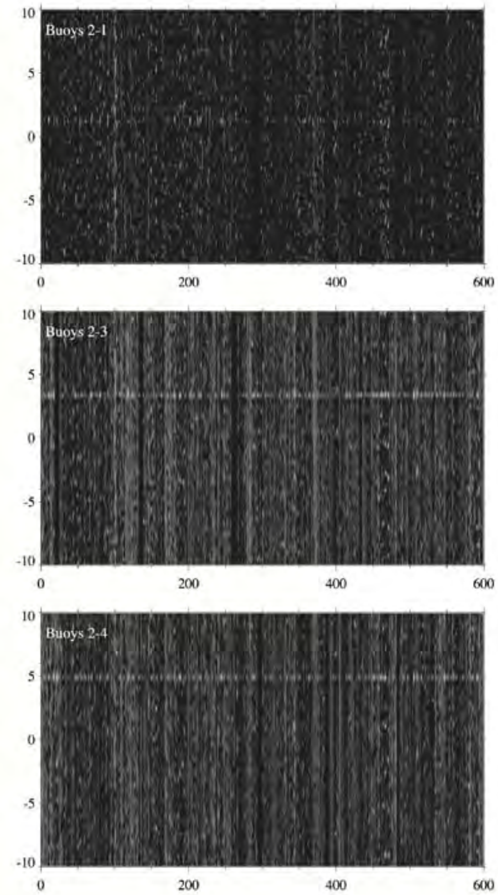


Figure 3. Detection events coming from a consistent location (for pairs of buoy recorders) create a coherent line of detection peaks (white horizontal line in each panel).

Localized calls were classified as single calls or members of a bout. In the current study, bouts were limited to a single call type, and were defined as periods of repetitive calling localized to a consistent location. This included calls that were localized to 1) the same location as the previous call in succession, or 2) a location near the previous localized call consistent with travel by the calling individual at a maximum of 1.0 m/s (~2 knots). This swimming speed criterion is based on 1) the assumption that NPRWs are primarily foraging (versus travelling, during which swim speeds are likely higher) in the SEBS during the late summer/early fall (Shelden et al. 2005), and 2) swim speeds calculated for foraging NARWs (Baumgartner and Mate 2003). Individual call rates were calculated for bouts, based on the assumption that calls included in a bout (defined previously) were produced by a single caller.

Resolution estimation

We estimated the array resolution using a plane wave approximation. For each RATS buoy, we calculated the position of two parallel lines (approximating plane wave propagation) the buoy at range r (designated iteratively by each grid cell) and spaced +/- delta r from range r (ex. Figure 4). Delta r was defined as the following:

$$\Delta r = c*\Delta t,$$

where Δt = 1/bandwidth, c = 1470 m/s, and bandwidth = 4000Hz. We then estimated the area of the polygon formed by the intersection of pairs of lines for all possible combinations of pairs of RATS buoys. This process was repeated for each grid cell and for all possible pairs of buoys, creating a map of the resolution surface area for each location relative to the array grid (Figure 5).

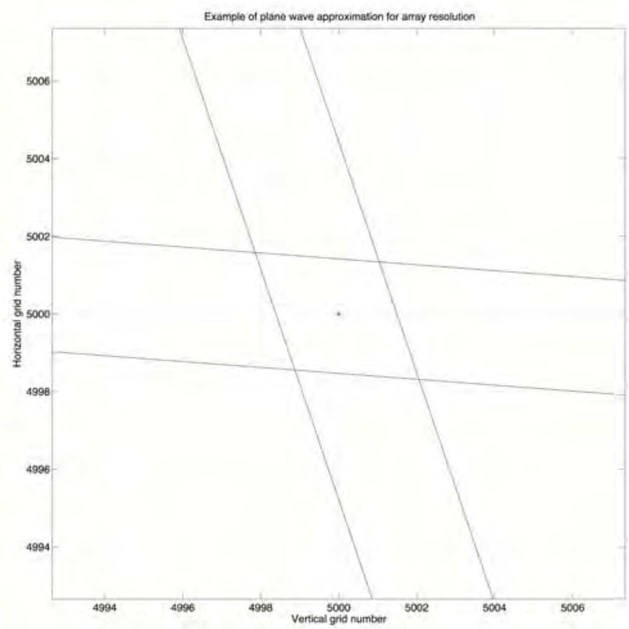


Figure 4. Example of two pairs of plane wave approximations (one pair per recording buoy, spaced +/- delta r from a putative localized call position, where deltar = $\Delta r = c*\Delta t$, and Δt = 1/bandwidth, c = 1470 m/s, and bandwidth = 4000Hz). The polygon formed by the intersection of these pairs of lines is one resolution estimate for this location on the resolution grid.

Moan source level estimation

We provide the first source level estimates for NPRW moans (n=10). NPRW upcall and gunshot source level estimates were previously reported by Munger et al. (2011) and Esch et al. (in prep), respectively. Moan source levels (rms and p-p) were estimated by adding the calibrated received level (RL) for each call to the absolute value of the one-way transmission loss (TL) at the range of the localized call. TL was estimated using RAM (range-dependent acoustic model), a parabolic equation model developed by Michael Collins at the Naval Research Laboratory in Washington, D.C. (Collins 1993). Although a single center frequency is usually a primary input into this propagation model, moans are amplitude and frequency modulated signals and are not completely represented by a single center frequency. We chose to run the model for 26 frequencies (50-300Hz, at 10Hz increments) and calculated SL estimates for each run ($SL_f = RL + TL_f$, where f = 50, 60,..., 300). Final source level estimates were frequency averaged.

Additional model input parameters included: sound speed profile (Figure 6), sound speed in sediment = 1675 m/s, sediment density = 1500 kg/m3, and water depth = 60m. Sound speed in sediment and sediment density values followed Munger et al. (2011) and Wiggins et al. (2004), and are assumed to not vary significantly within the study area. Bathymetry was also assumed to be uniform throughout the 6km radius study area (defined by the greatest range to a localized moan). RAM also requires a source depth, which was unknown. Rather than assume a calling depth, we invoked the theory of reciprocity (Kinsler et al. 1999) and used receiver depth (3.6m);

in other words, for transmission loss calculations the hydrophone was assumed to be the source and the depth increments for which transmission loss was estimated were assumed to be putative receiver depths.

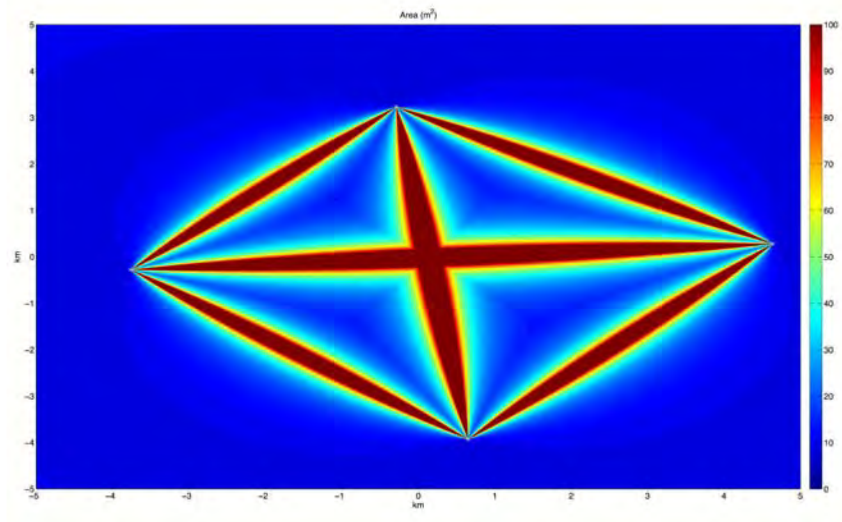


Figure 5. Resolution map (colorbar in m2) for the recording array, derived using plane wave approximation.

SL estimates were generated using TL values from each of the 26 model runs (from 50-300 Hz at 10 Hz intervals), and averaged across frequencies for each call. At each call range, RAM provided TL estimates from the surface to the seafloor at .05 m increments. We divided the water column into three layers based on the SSP: upper (0-10m), pycnocline (10-35m), and bottom (35-60m), and used TL values in each layer to calculate the distribution of frequency-averaged SL estimates given a moan was produced in any of the three candidate layers. Within each depth layer and for each model run, we added the call RL to each candidate TL value and took the mean and SD. This approach provided a distribution of frequency-averaged SL estimates for calls given the caller was in the surface layer, the pycnocline, or the bottom layer.

<u>Minimum abundance estimation</u>

Short-term minimum abundance estimates were generated using independent localized caller positions within consecutive time periods (T = 10 min.). The time window was selected to provide an appropriate temporal framework for swim speed; we assumed the longer the time period, the lower the average speed. By selecting a relatively short time window, we can evaluate the influence of swim speed on abundance estimates using this technique. Similar to bouts, locations estimated for calls coming from different whales were defined by the temporal and spatial distributions of localized calls within time window T and separated by distance X (for X = 500m, 750m, 1000m); locations were considered independent if distance X could not be closed swimming at speed S (m/s) within time window T. We varied both

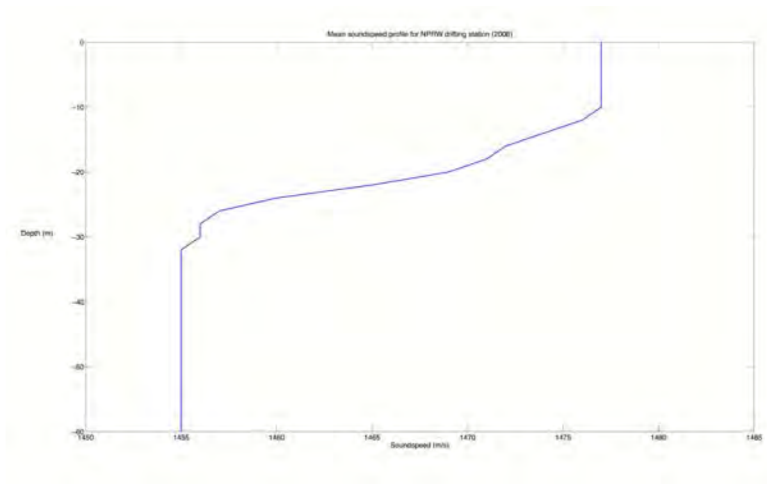


Figure 6. Mean sound speed profile for the 2008 drifting station.

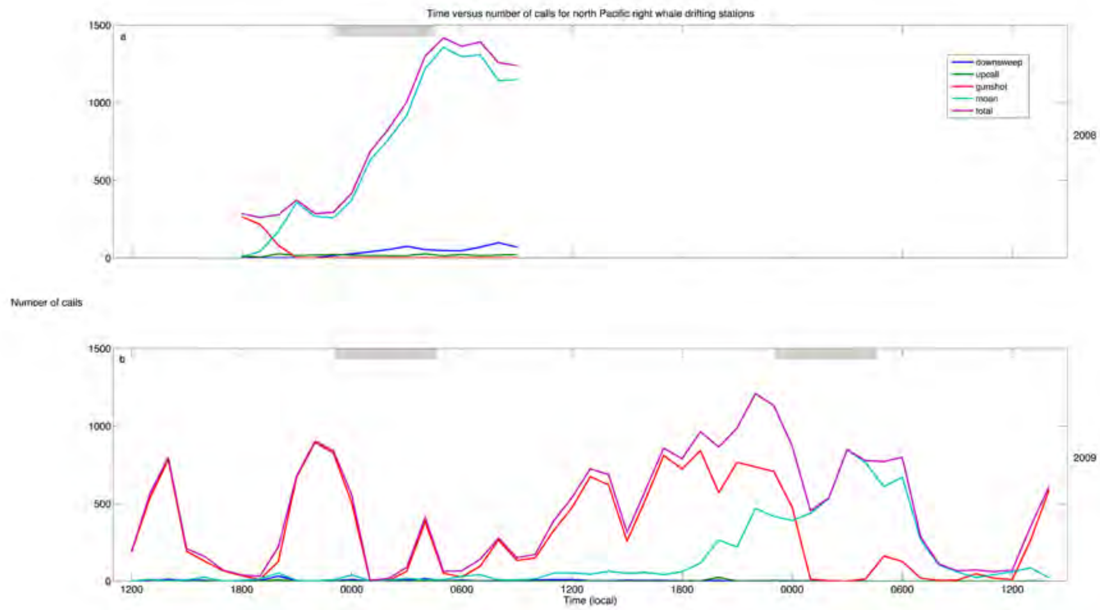


Figure 7. NPRW call rates (calls/hour) by call type for two drifting stations (1800 August 6 – 1000 August 7 2008, 16 hours; 1200 July 26 – 1500 July 28 2009, 51 hours). Sunset to sunrise is shaded in gray.

the minimum required X and S (1.03, 3.09, 5.14, or 7.72 m/s) to assess the influence of each on minimum abundance estimates.

Results

Overall call rates

Sixteen and 51 continuous hours of acoustic recordings from 2008 and 2009 respectively were reviewed for NPRW calls, yielding 12,478 (11,104 moans, 500 gunshots, 600 downsweeps, and 274 upcalls) and 23,508 (7,170 moans, 16,046 gunshots, 208 downsweeps, and 84 upcalls) right whale calls (Figure 7). In 2008, call rates increased over time for the 16-hour station; call rates in 2009 were highly variable throughout the recording period (Figure 7). Overall call rates in both years were largely driven by moan and gunshot production.

Individual call rates

Individual call rates (calls/min) and Inter-Call Intervals (ICIs) were only calculated for bouts of localized calls (n=8, Table 1). Relatively few calls could be localized, suggesting that most calling occurred outside of the drifting array. In 2008, 30 (of 11,104) moans, 22 (of 500) gunshots, 0 (of 600) downsweeps, and 3 (of 274) upcalls were localized. In 2009, 4 (of 7,170) moans, 220 (of 16,046) gunshots, 44 (of 208) downsweeps, and 10 (of 84) upcalls were localized. A single gunshot bout was localized in 2008 in an area southeast of the array (Figure 8a). In 2009, we localized 4 gunshot bouts, 2 downsweep bouts, and 1 upcall bout (Figure 8b). Individual call rates varied among bouts, from 0.25/min – 2.0/min. Gunshots were produced at a mean rate of 0.66/min (SD=0.39), and 4 of the 5 gunshot bouts were over an hour long. The mean downsweep call rate was 0.29/min (SD=0.05). The highest call rate was 2.0 upcalls/min.

Table 1. Summary of bouts and associated call rates and inter-call intervals identified in 2008 and 2009; multiple concurrent bouts (*) occurred in 2009.

Localized position ID	Call type	# of calls	Time frame (hours:min:sec, local)	Bout length (hours:min)	Call rate (calls/min)	Mean ICI (SD) (sec)
1-08	GS	21	19:28:57-20:30:20	1:01	0.34	157 (222)
1-09	GS	64	12:30:09-14:14:18	1:43	0.62	99 (240)
2-09	Downsweep	4	15:49:27-16:05:36	0:16	0.25	323 (249)
*3-09	GS	117	12:55:28-14:23:44	1:28	1.33	45 (57)
*4-09	GS	31	13:08:33-14:24:58	1:16	0.41	153 (187)
*5-09	Downsweep	4	13:28:45-13:41:07	0:12	0.33	247 (150)
6-09	Upcall	6	14:24:01-14:27:13	0:03	2.0	44 (11)
*7-09	GS	3	13:52:45-13:58:42	0:05	0.6	179 (252)

<u>Patterns in calling by call type: Moans</u>

Moans were the predominant call detected in the overall acoustic record (18,274 of 35,986 calls, or 50.7%). There appeared to be a general change in proportion of calls from gunshot to moan production in both years. Moans were very difficult to localize; a single moan was rarely received on more than one recording buoy. In 2008, 30 moans (out of 11,104, or 0.2%) were localized within or near the recording array (versus 22 of 500 gunshots, or 4%). In 2009, only 4 moans (out of 7,170, or 0.05%) could be localized (versus 194 of 16,046 gunshots, or 1.2%).

Moan SL estimates (range = 162-178 dB pp re 1 µPa, mean = 166.3 dB pp re 1 µPa; range = 146-163 rms re 1 µPa, mean = 152.5 dB rms re 1 uPa, Table 2) were consistent among depth layers and lower than published values for NPRW upcall SLs (range = 183-206 dB pp re 1 µPa, mean = 192.1 or 197.6 dB pp re 1 µPa; range = 170-182 dB rms re 1 µPa, mean = 177.8 or 175.6 dB rms re 1 µPa, Munger et al. 2011) and gunshot SLs (range = 168-198 dB pp re 1 µPa, mean = 184.2 dB pp re 1 µPa; range = 149-180 dB rms re 1 µPa, mean = 165.6 dB rms re 1 µPa, Esch et al. in prep), and comparable to upcall source level estimates for NARWs (range = 164-168 dB pp re 1 µPa, mean = 166 dB pp re 1 µPa; range = 147-154 dB rms re 1 µPa, mean = 150 dB rms re 1 µPa, Parks and Tyack 2005). Source levels were only estimated for the loudest moans (i.e., those received on three or more recorders), a small fraction of the total number of moans detected during manual review. It is possible that these moan source level estimates are biased high (overestimating average source levels) given the consistently low received level of moans (compared to other call types) observed during manual review of calls received on individual buoys, and the fact that moans were rarely received on multiple recording buoys despite the prevalence of this call type in the dataset. We also suggest that the NPRW upcall SL estimates published by Munger et al. (2011) may also be biased high; the use of geometrical spreading to assess TL at the ranges to upcalls utilized in their study likely underestimates TL, providing overestimates of SL. If that is the case, NPRW upcall SLs may be more similar to those provided by Parks and Tyack (2005).

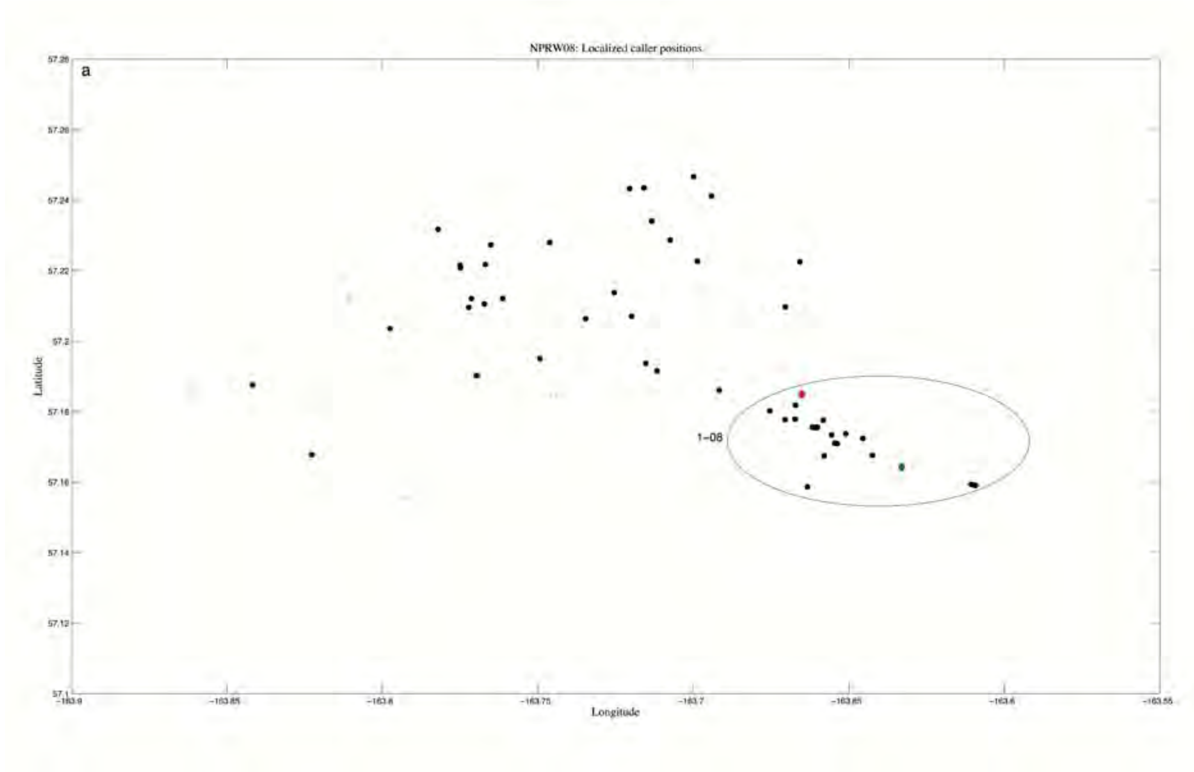


Figure 8. (a,b). Localized bouts produced by individual North Pacific right whales, including first (green) and last (red) calls in each bout. Initial (green) and final (red) buoy positions are also shown. See Table 1 for bout details.

Table 2. Moan source level estimates are presented (pp and rms dB re 1µPa) for each of three depth layers (upper, pycnocline, and bottom).

Upper (0-10m) pp|rms	**Pycno** (10-35m) pp|rms	**Lower** (35-60m) pp|rms	Mean SL pp|rms	SD SL pp|rms
168.9|162.4	167.4|162.7	167.7|163.0	168.0|162.7	0.79|0.31
168.7|156.6	167.7|155.6	167.9|155.8	168.1|156.0	0.51|0.51
165.5|149.2	164.6|148.3	164.8|148.5	165.0|148.7	0.47|0.47
163.3|151.9	162.0|150.6	162.1|150.7	162.5|151.1	0.72|0.72
166.5|152.5	165.4|151.4	165.9|151.9	165.9|151.9	0.55|0.55
179.1|157.3	176.8|155.0	176.9|155.1	177.6|155.8	1.29|1.29
162.6|150.4	161.9|149.7	162.1|149.9	162.2|150.0	0.38|0.38
166.4|152.2	165.3|151.1	165.9|151.7	165.9|151.7	0.53|0.53
162.5|146.6	161.7|145.8	161.9|146.0	162.1|146.2	0.40|0.40
166.4|151.6	164.4|149.6	165.0|150.2	165.3|150.5	1.07|1.07
Mean			**166.3|152.5**	
SD			**4.6|4.7**	

<u>Patterns in calling by call type: Gunshots</u>

Gunshots were the second most frequently recorded call type (16,546 of 35,986, or 45.9%), and 5 of 8 call bouts were composed of gunshots. We examined all bouts in detail, but focused primarily on the three gunshot displays containing the most calls in 2009 (bouts 1-09, 3-09, and

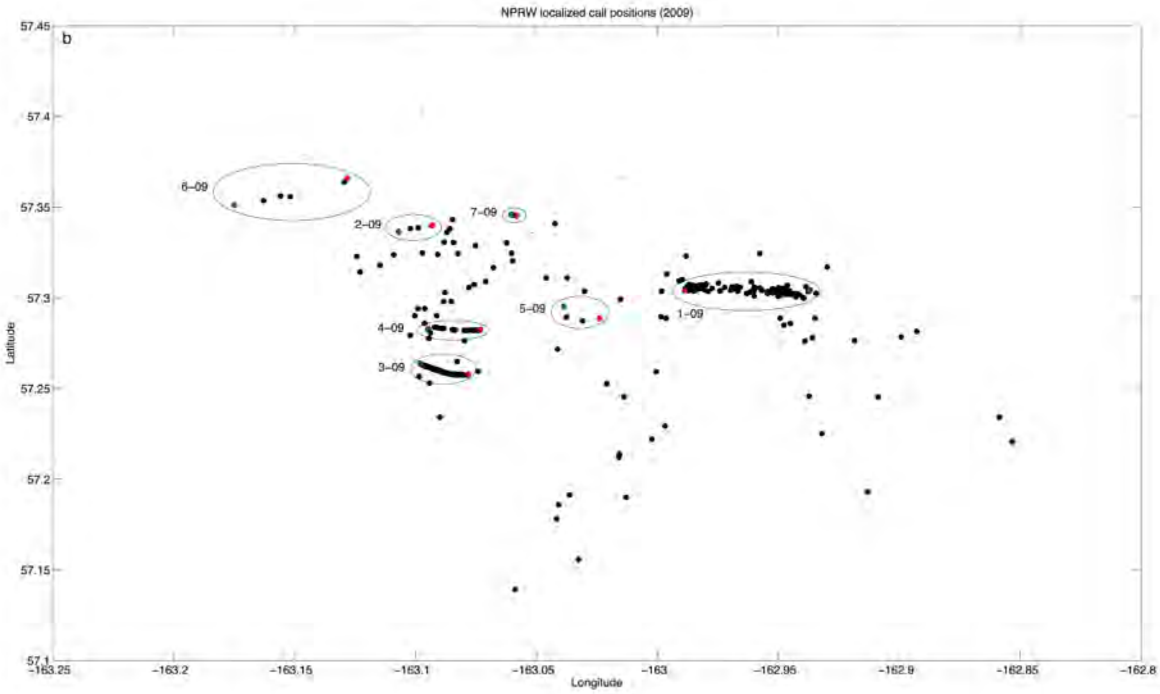


Figure 9. Example of three repetitions of a distinct pattern of gunshots observed in bout-1-09 (a/b mark the start/end of each repetition, respectively). The pattern includes a doublet of high amplitude gunshots, followed by a lower amplitude gunshot. This combination is repeated 3 - 15 times, and is followed by a variable number of amplitude-modulated gunshots.

4-09). The localized calls for bout 1-09 fell within a distinct pattern of gunshots that was repeated 19 times throughout the duration of the bout (see Figure 9 for an example of three iterations of this pattern). The pattern consisted of a series of precisely timed gunshots, including a doublet of high amplitude gunshots, followed by a lower amplitude single gunshot; this combination was repeated 3 – 15 times (depending on the pattern iteration), and was always followed by a variable number of amplitude-modulated gunshots after the final gunshot doublet.

Not every call in the pattern could be localized, but the localized call positions in bout 1-09 were within the recording array (providing high quality position information) suggesting that all of the ordered gunshot types included in this pattern could have been produced by a single source (see Figure 8b for location estimates, and Figure 5 for array resolution) or by two closely associated sources that maintained consistent geometry throughout every iteration of the pattern. While it is possible that differences in call amplitudes imply that calls are coming from different sources, Parks et al. (2005) showed that individual right whales produce sequential gunshots that can vary in intensity (with no change in the whale's location or orientation to the hydrophone), lending further support to the possibility that the pattern of amplitude modulated gunshots described here could be produced by a single source. However, the resolution of the localized position estimates for the calls included in bout 1-09 was as course as 100m^2 (depending on the location of the call in the call track), preventing us from ruling out the possibility that two or more relatively closely spaced whales were producing gunshots to create the observed pattern.

Bout 1-09 (containing the described pattern) occurred near the beginning of the drifting station. We examined the entire acoustic record for 2009 to see if this same pattern was repeated beyond the period of bout 1-09, or if any other patterns were present. The pattern described above occurred 91 times throughout the first 38 hours of the acoustic record in 2009. If we assume all calls in the pattern were produced by a single source, we would expect ICIs to be the same on multiple channels and low variability in time-difference-of-arrivals (TDOAs) across channels for each call in a given pattern iteration. To investigate this possibility, we compared the ICIs for the pattern across multiple channels for a subset of iterations (n=44, see Figure 9 for example). We also calculated TDOAs between pairs of channels for gunshots in the subset of pattern iterations (n=44, Figure 10). Indeed, in the 44 repetitions of the pattern for which we calculated ICIs and TDOAs, standard deviations were very low (mean ICI SD=0.009 sec; mean TDOA SD=0.03 sec), supporting the assumption of a single caller.

Bouts 3-09 and 4-09 were extensive concurrent gunshot bouts localized to two different series of positions. The localized caller positions were initially separated by 1.72 km; this distance was increased to 2.74 km by the end of the bouts. The callers travelled in parallel to the E-SE approximately 1.5 km (3-09, 1.41 km in 88min; 4-09, 1.74 km in 76min, Figure 8b). In 33 of 37 alternations in calling between bouts 3-09 to 4-09 there was enough time for the receiver to receive the call produced by the caller and then respond. However, the timing between calls was not consistent (mean=22.9 sec, SD=25.4 sec), and there were four instances of overlapping calls (calls received at the same time) localized to separate bouts, suggesting that not all gunshots were being produced as call exchanges.

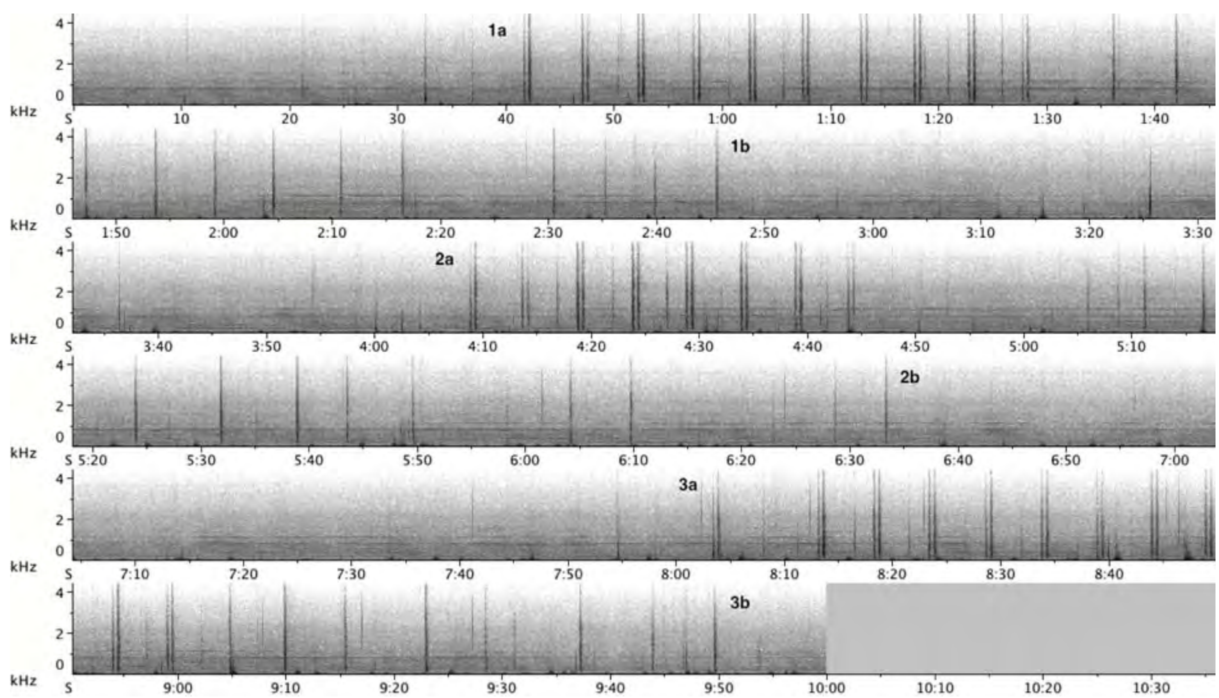


Figure 10. Example of a gunshot pattern received on multiple channels, time-difference-of-arrival (TDOA) measured between two channels for an individual gunshot, and inter-call intervals (ICIs) measured between calls and compared across channels. All of the gunshots in this pattern iteration had similar TDOAs and consistent ICIs, indicating that all calls came from a single source.

Patterns in calling by call type: Downsweeps and Upcalls

Downsweeps (808 of 35,986, or 2.2%) and upcalls (358 of 35,986, or 0.99%) were produced at low rates in both years. Downsweep bouts (n=2) consisted of relatively few calls, and did not last long (see Table 1). The single upcall bout localized in 2009 included 6 calls produced in 3 minutes.

Minimum abundance estimates

Abundance estimates were higher in time windows with more calls. The highest minimum abundance estimate for a given 10 minute time window was six whales (S=1.03 m/s or 3.09 m/s, X = 500m). This estimate resulted from the least conservative criteria (i.e., slowest maximum swimming speeds required to close the distance between localized call positions and shortest required distance between call positions to be considered independent). Minimum abundance estimates using more strict minimum distance criteria (X = 750 m or 1 km) both converged on a minimum abundance estimate of 4, regardless of maximum swim speed (S = 1.03, 3.09, 5.14, or 7.72 m/s; Figure 11 shows only abundance estimates for X = 1km and S = 1.03m/s, the most conservative minimum distance and swim speed criteria). This minimum abundance estimate of 4-6 NPRWs in the vicinity of the drifting array over the course of the drifting station agreed with the prior identification of 4 concurrent bouts (3-09, 4-09, 5-09, and 7-09, Table 1). Other calls

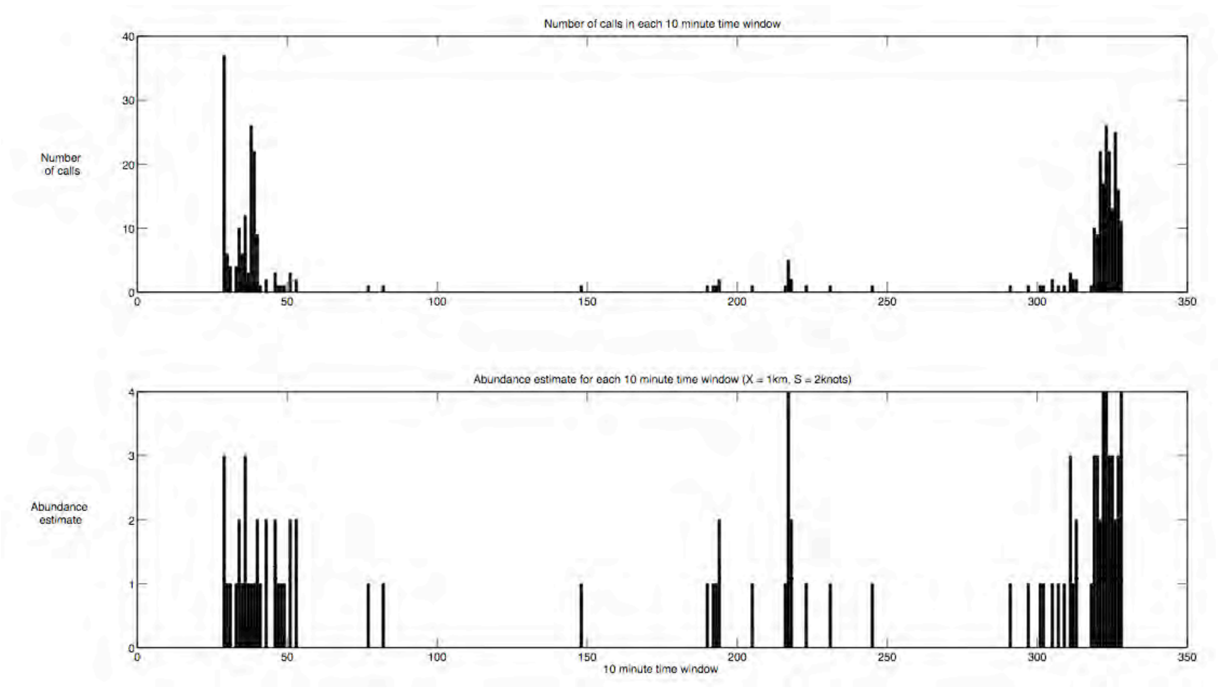


Figure 11. NPRW a) call number and b) abundance estimates based on independent localized call positions. Call locations were considered independent if the distance between localized call positions (X) could not be closed in time window T (T = 10 min) swimming at speed S (1.03, 3.09, 5.14, or 7.72 m/s). This plot shows abundance estimates for only the most conservative minimum distance required between call positions to be considered independent (X = 1km) and slowest swim speed (S = 1.03 m/s). Swim speed did not influence the highest minimum abundance estimate for X = 1km.

were detected during the time period over which the concurrent bouts occurred, but were not included in any of the four bouts; this implies that at least five whales were present and producing calls during the drifting station. The highest empirical minimum abundance estimates are greater than the abundance estimate using visual sighting methods in the 48 hours prior to and following the drifting station (n=2, Clapham et al. 2009).

MODELING ACOUSTIC PROPAGATION AND PROBABILITY OF DETECTION

Carter Esch, Mark Baumgartner, Arthur Newhall, Ying-Tsong Lin, James Lynch

Data collection

In the summer of 2009, a multidisciplinary research effort was conducted to investigate the distribution, movement and ecology of right whales in the SEBS (Clapham et al. 2009). To evaluate right whale calling behavior, we deployed a 4 unit free-floating geo-referenced passive acoustic listening array ("drifting station") in NPRW critical habitat from 1200 July 26 – 1500 July 28, 2009 (~51 hours). The drifting station was established in a location where NPRWs had been sighted within the past 24 hours. Each recording unit consisted of a Real-time Acoustic Tracking System (RATS; Baumgartner et al. 2008a) buoy equipped with a Dell Pocket PC (Dell Computer Corporation, Round Rock, TX) running customized digital acoustic recording software (Loggerhead Instruments, Sarasota, FL) that sampled a HTI-96-MIN (High Tech, INC., Gulfport, MS) hydrophone at 8192 Hz (sensitivity -186.3 dBV/µPa, frequency response 2Hz-30kHz). Briefly, RATS buoys consist of an instrument well encased in Surlyn foam for flotation, a mast equipped with a radio antenna and a global positioning system (GPS) receiver, and a hydrophone suspended below the buoy well. GPS data were transmitted to the ship in real time to track buoys, facilitate retrieval, and to aid in localization of whale calls during post-processing. Hydrophones were suspended at 30 m to minimize surface noise in the recordings.

After deploying the 2 nautical miles radius array, we positioned the research vessel in the center and collected profiles of temperature and salinity every half hour using a conductivity-temperature-depth instrument (SBE19plus, Seabird). Neither the ship nor the recording units were fixed in position. The array was allowed to drift, although all units remained in the approximate original diamond configuration; prior to each half-hourly water column profile, the ship was repositioned in the center of the array. There was little variation in temperature and salinity over the duration of the drifting station (Figure 1), so a mean sound speed profile was used in the acoustic propagation modeling.

Call classification

A single analyst (HCE) reviewed recordings from one of the four RATS buoys using XBAT (eXtensible BioAcoustic Tool, http://xbat.org), noting each manually detected call. It is assumed that no calls were missed. The gunshot (Figure 2) was the second most common call in the acoustic dataset (after moans), and is the focus of the work presented here.

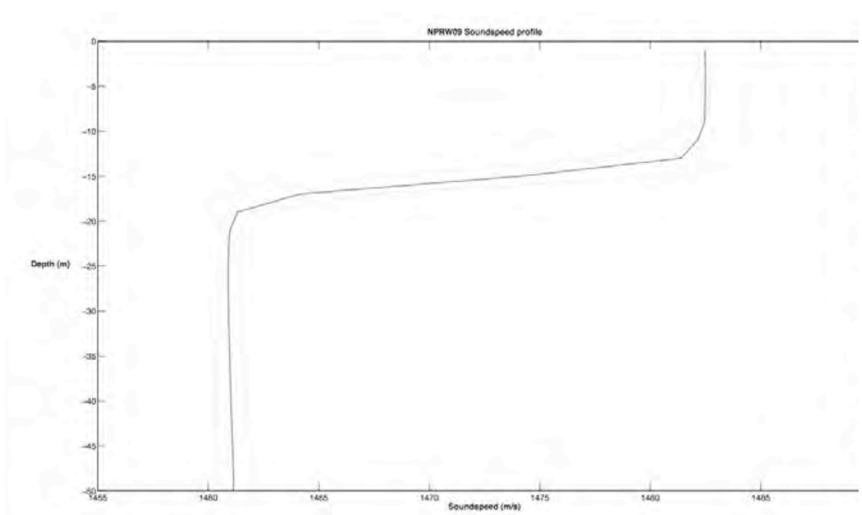


Figure 1. Mean sound speed profile (and SD) for the 2009 drifting station.

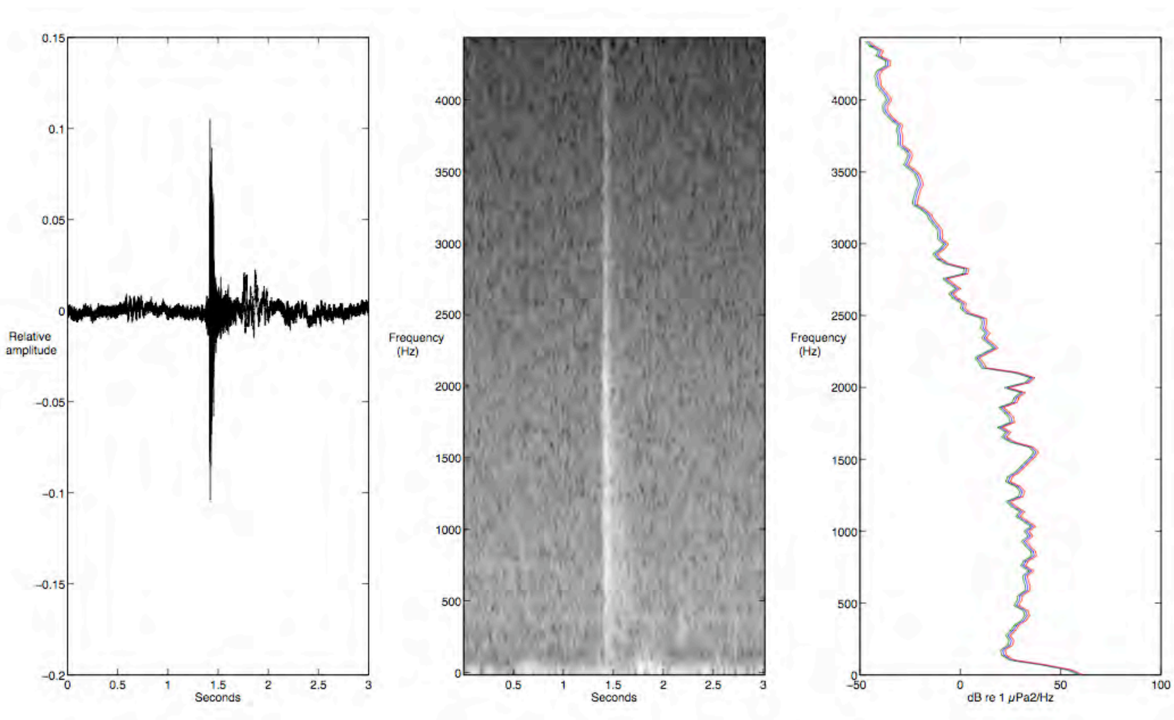


Figure 2. Plots of a waveform, spectrogram, and power spectral density for a North Pacific right whale gunshot.

Call localization

Positions of vocalizing whales were estimated using the approach described in Baumgartner et al. (2008a,b). Immediately before and after RATS deployments, we produced a series of impulsive sounds (i.e., banging a pipe with a wrench) simultaneously to all four recorders while on the ship's deck to facilitate time synchronization of the recordings during post-processing. Differences in the arrival times of individual calls at each of the four recording units were estimated using spectrogram cross correlation; a manually logged call in the spectrogram for one buoy was cross-correlated with the spectrograms for the other three buoys. Caller positions could only be estimated if an individual call was received on at least three recorders. If the same call was present in another buoy recording, the cross correlation function produced a peak. Manual review of these detection peaks was used to validate correct matches, and finalize position estimates.

Transmission loss predictions

We applied the range-dependent acoustic model (RAM), a parabolic equation model developed by Michael Collins at the Naval Research Laboratory in Washington, DC (Collins 1993), to predict transmission loss as a function of range and depth between caller and receiver (RATS buoy) for each localized call, and used these transmission loss estimates to assess propagation environmental variability and to estimate SL. The model range was limited to a 12-km radius, the maximum distance at which a localized gunshot was detected by the analyst. Center frequency is a primary input in this propagation model; however, gunshots are a broadband signal, so gunshot TL is not adequately represented by modeling acoustic propagation for a center frequency alone. As an alternative, we ran the model for 41 frequencies (50-4050Hz, at 100Hz increments; range resolution = 0.375m, depth resolution 0.05m), calculated TL for each (described below) and averaged TL across frequencies. Additional input parameters included sound speed profile (Figure 1), sound speed in sediment (1675 m/s), sediment density (1500 kg/m3), and water depth (50m; the water depth at the drifting station). Sound speed in sediment and sediment density values followed Munger et al. (2011) and Wiggins et al. (2004), and are assumed to not vary significantly within the study area. Based on our observations of minimal changes in slope in the region during cross-isobath sampling transects, bathymetry was assumed to be uniform throughout the 12-km radius study area. RAM also requires a source depth, which was unknown. For each of the 41 RAM runs, the source was specified at 30 m (the hydrophone depth); however, using the theory of reciprocity (Kinsler et al. 1990), the resulting TL estimates were interpreted as if the receiver was at 30 m and the source was at any depth between the surface and bottom in 0.05 m increments. The distribution of TL values at each range was determined and incorporated into the probability of detection model and TL values at each depth increment at the range of a localized call were subtracted from the RL of localized call to estimate SL (both described below). Finally, to assess the influence of the assumptions of isovelocity, cylindrical spreading, and source depth on TL estimates, we present TL estimates averaged across all 41 modeled frequencies for the surface and bottom layers of a stratified system and homogenous water column, and using cylindrical spreading to estimate TL.

The contribution of the fluctuations in the acoustic propagation environment to the probability of detecting a gunshot can be characterized using TL variability (Abbot and Dyer 2002). To assess TL variability in each model run, the TL curve for a single depth (5, 15, or 30m) for a single RAM run was smoothed using a fixed aperture (i.e., window size) running average (Figure 3). The aperture size was determined based on the distance between deep nulls in the TL curve (Figure 3), representing areas of destructive wave interference in the propagation at a given frequency. This smoothed curve was subtracted from the original TL curve and the resulting residual was smoothed using a variable window size based on the following relationship: $\Delta\omega/\omega = \Delta r/r$, where $\Delta\omega$ = bandwidth of signal, ω = center frequency, Δr = variable aperture window size, and r = range (Harrison and Harrison 1995). Solving for Δr for each known range value using $\Delta\omega$ = 4000Hz and ω = 50-4050Hz (in 100Hz increments, depending on the model run) provided the running average window size for each range. This approach was used to account for the fact that we were modeling transmission of a broadband signal, but assessing TL at a single frequency in each model run (following Harrison and Harrison 1995). TL standard deviation (SD) was estimated for 41 frequencies at each of 3 putative source depths (5, 15, and 30 m); we took the SD of the entire resulting curve (over all ranges) for each model run (n=123), and compared TL SD to SL SD for the corresponding depth layer to determine which had more influence on variability in RL.

<u>Received levels</u>

Both peak-to-peak (p-p) and root-mean-square (rms) received level (RL) estimates were made using custom written scripts in Matlab 7.1 (Mathworks, Natick, MA, USA). First, each localized gunshot (n=194) was extracted from the acoustic data record in a 2-s time window. Calls were then band-pass filtered (50-4050Hz) prior to RL measurements. The received level at the hydrophone was calculated relative to a known recorder response to a 1 kHz sine wave calibration signal. To facilitate comparison with published values for North Atlantic right whale gunshots (Parks et al. 2005), rms sound pressure level (dB rms re 1 μPa) was calculated by taking the root square of the mean pressure squared in time window (T), where T is defined as

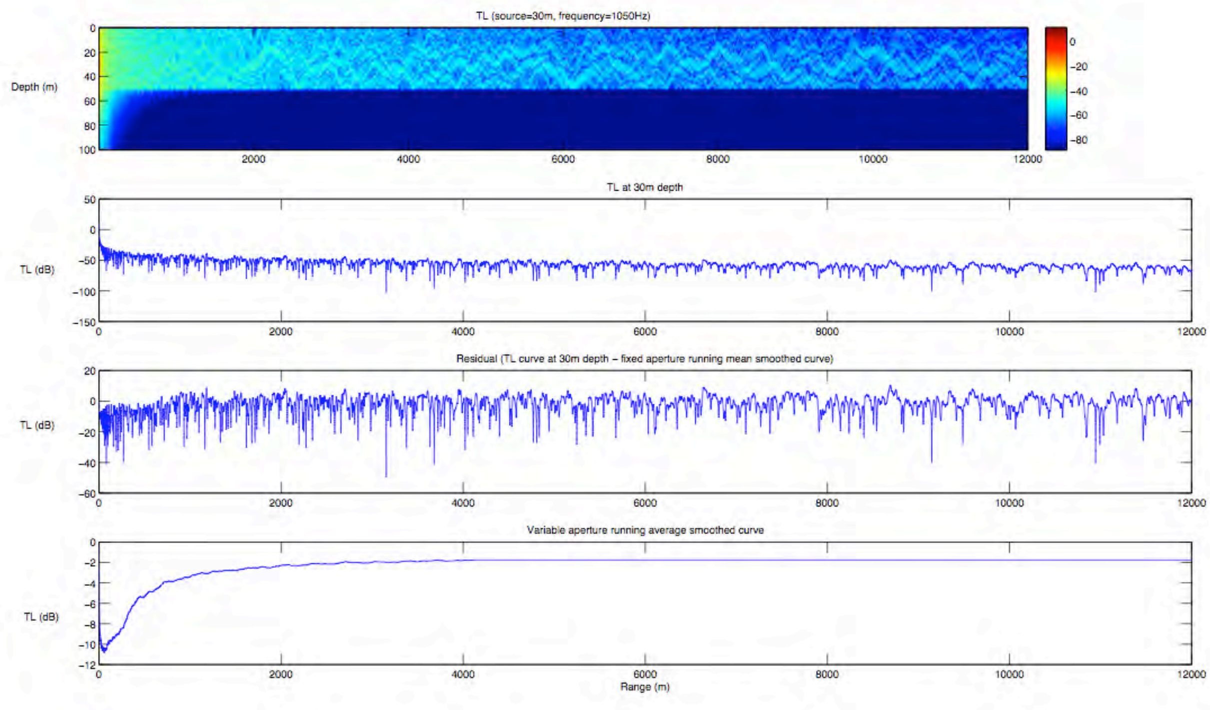


Figure 3. An example of transmission loss (TL) versus range (m) for a single RAM run (one of 41 total model runs) where the source depth=30m and the modeled frequency is 1050Hz. Source depth is a parameter required by RAM; however the depth at which calls are produced by north Pacific right whales is unknown. Using the theory of reciprocity (Kinsler et al. 1990), the resulting TL estimates were interpreted as if the receiver was at 30 m and the source was at any depth between the surface and bottom in 0.05 m increments. a) TL throughout water column (bottom depth=50m). b) TL vs. range at 30m depth only. c) Residual remaining at 30 m depth after subtracting a fixed aperture running mean smoothed curve of the TL curve in from the total TL curve in (b). d) Variable aperture running mean smoothed curve of TL from (c).

the duration of the sample fraction (including the signal of interest) containing 90% of the cumulative energy (following Madsen et al. 2004 and Parks et al. 2005).

Source levels

For each of the 41 RAM runs (at a single frequency each), we estimated source level (SL) by subtracting the TL estimated for each depth increment at the range of a localized call from the RL of the call localized to the range. SL estimates at each depth increment were then averaged across all 41 frequencies, and those frequency-averaged SL estimates were then averaged again for each of three depth layers: upper (0-10m), pycnocline (10-25m), and bottom (25-50m), and the mean and SD of the frequency-averaged SL estimates were calculated for each layer. This approach provided a distribution of SL estimates (and SD) for calls given the caller was in the surface layer, the pycnocline, or the bottom layer. SL (rms) estimates were normalized to a 1Hz bandwidth by subtracting $10*\log_{10}B$ (where B is bandwidth=4000Hz); we report both broadband and normalized results.

SNR

The relationship between SNR and distance from source to receiver directly influences the probability of detecting a call given that it is produced. SNR was calculated as the ratio of the signal RL to background noise (within the NPRW calling bandwidth, 50-4050Hz) for each localized call (n=194). Background noise was measured a few seconds before each gunshot.

We also assessed variability in SNR with range, which is influenced by changes in call amplitude and/or changes in background noise. Finally, SNR was also modeled by convolving distributions of measured values for SL (dB rms re 1 µPa) and ambient noise (AN, dB rms re 1 µPa).

Ambient noise

Ambient noise has the potential to mask calls produced by a whale, diminishing the probability of the call being detected by a receiver through reduction of the SNR. To characterize temporal patterns and the distribution of AN, we measured RL (dB rms re 1 µPa) at each recording buoy for a 2-s time window every 30 min. (excluding periods of instrument noise) throughout the drifting station duration, and averaged AN values across all 4 buoys.

Probability of detection

Probability of detection of NPRW gunshots was estimated by incorporating distributions for each parameter into the passive sonar equation (Urick 1983; Küsel et al. 2011)

$$SNR = SL + TL - NL,$$

where NL is ambient noise level. We observed bimodality in the distribution of TL values with range resulting from differences in the putative caller depth (see results). Based on this observation, probability of detection was modeled for a source in the surface and bottom layers only. SNR values were both range and depth dependent (due to TL). At a given range, the probability of detection was equal to the probability that the SNR of a gunshot was above the detection threshold (DT = 2dB, human analyst; DT = 10dB automated detector); DT for a human analyst was determined to be the SNR of the most faint gunshot detected visually and aurally by the analyst and DT for an automated detector followed Baumgartner and Mussoline (submitted). We present results for a human analyst versus automated detection to highlight differences in the derived probability of detection between two commonly used detection approaches.

Evaluation of assumptions

Two simplifications are often assumed when deriving a probability of detection (e.g., Marques et al. 2011, Munger et al. 2011): (1) the water column is homogenous (implying isovelocity), and (2) cylindrical spreading is adequate to calculate transmission loss. In addition, caller depth is usually assumed (e.g., 15m, Munger et al. 2011). To characterize the influence of the assumption of isovelocity and use of cylindrical spreading to simplify modeling TL, probability of detection was modeled for a source in the surface and bottom layers (1) for a stratified water column (as measured in this study), (2) for a homogenous, idealized water column, and (3) using cylindrical spreading. TL for cylindrical spreading was the same regardless of source depth and was calculated as $-10*\log_{10}(r)$, where r is range in meters.

Results

Transmission loss

In general, TL steadily tapered off with range, although differentially among conditions (Figure 4). For a source in the surface layer, TL was more extreme than for a source in the bottom layer (Figure 4). Differences between the stratified and isovelocity conditions were subtle; in general, for a given range and depth layer, TL values were slightly more extreme for the stratified system compared to the isovelocity condition (Figure 4). All standard deviation values for the 123 (41

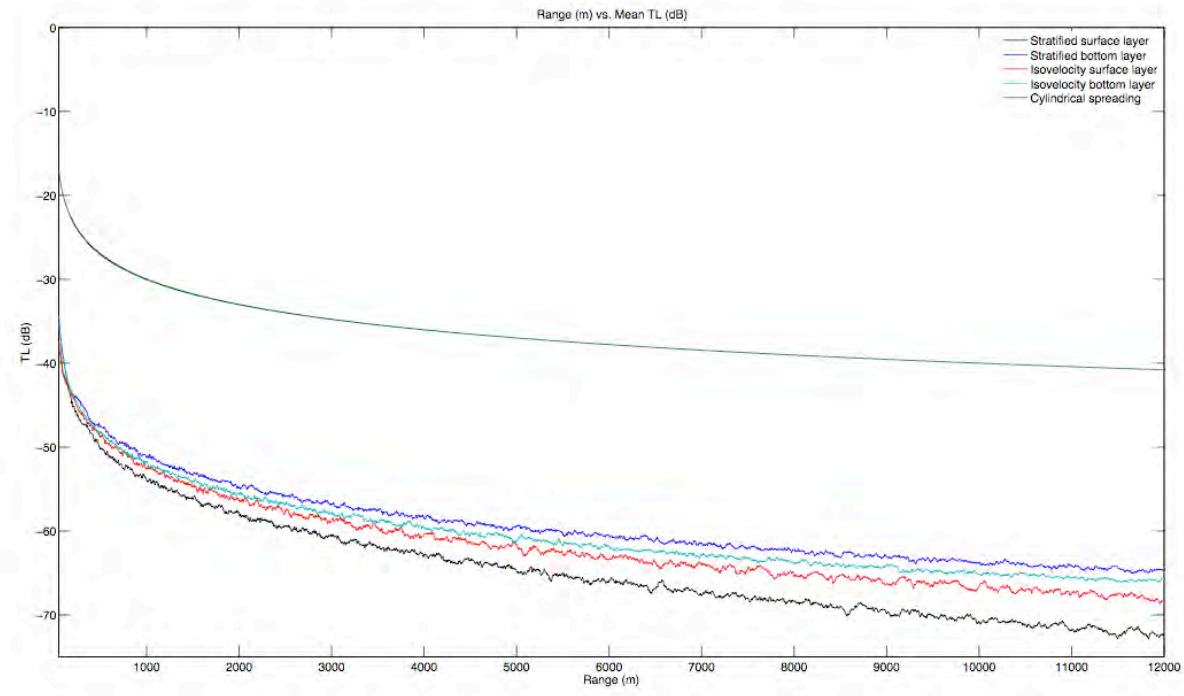


Figure 4. Mean transmission loss (averaged across all 41 modeled frequencies, 50-4050Hz in 100Hz increments) for three cases (stratified, isovelocity, and cylindrical spreading) for the surface and bottom layers.

frequencies at each of the three putative source depths) frequency-specific variable aperture running average smoothed curves were less than or equal to 1 dB. In other words, TL SD was less than or equal to 1dB for all frequencies and source depths (approximately 20% of SL SDs, detailed below).

Source level

Source level estimates varied within ranges to localized calls, and among depth layers (Figure 5; Table 1). On average, estimates (rms and p-p, Table 1) were highest if the call was produced in the surface layer; SL estimates were similar to one another if produced in the pycnocline and bottom layers. Source level estimates at a given distance from the source were highly variable (e.g., Figure 5, 0-10m; range = 23 dB pp re 1 µPa at 4.1km), suggesting that gunshots are produced at a range of amplitudes (either by a single or multiple whales). Source level variability was consistent across all depth layers (SL SD = 5.7 dB rms re 1 µPa; 5.3-5.4 dB p-p re 1 µPa). In all cases, SL SDs were more than five times TL SDs, implying that variation in SL is the primary source of variability in RL (i.e., the contribution of TL variability to variation in RL is quite small).

Ambient noise

AN decreased over the course of the drifting station, perhaps related to improving weather conditions (Figure 6). Mean AN values (across buoys) in the NPRW calling band for gunshots (50-4050Hz) ranged from 85-96 dB rms re 1 µPa (mean = 90.5, SD = 2.1) over the course of the drifting station, and showed no systematic periodicity (Figure 6).

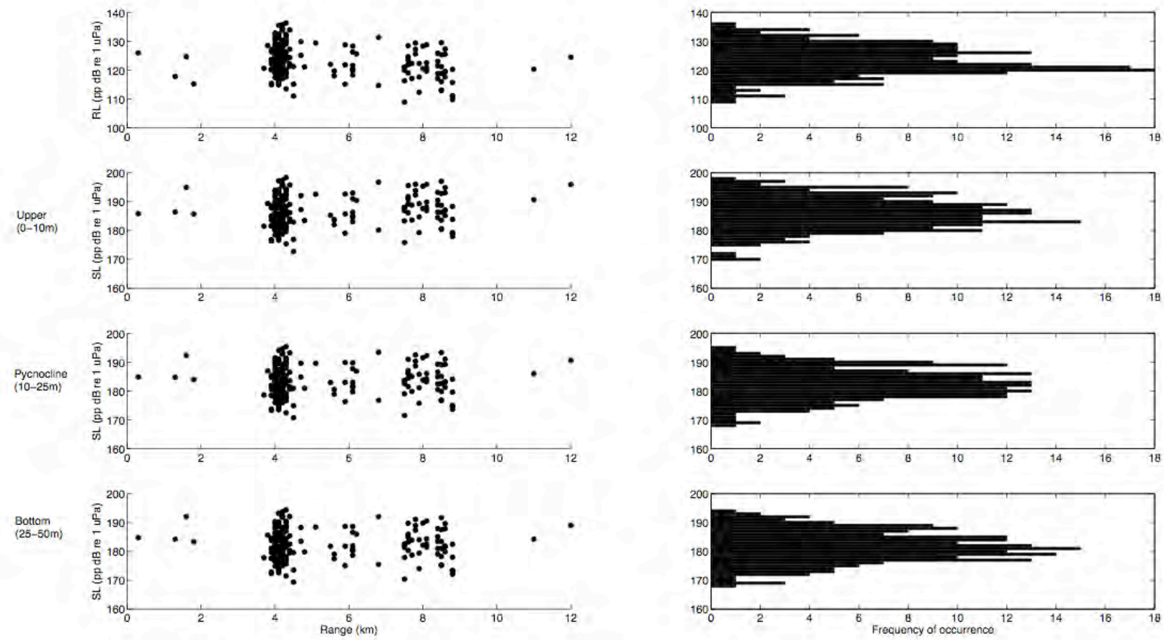


Figure 5. RL and SL (pp dB re 1 µPa) versus range (km) estimates for three depth layers (surface = 0-10m, pycnocline = 10-25m, bottom = 25-50m) for north Pacific right whale gunshots. The distributions of RL and SL values is shown in the panels on the right.

<u>SNR</u>

In general, measured SNR decreased with range (Figure 7). Similar to source level estimates, SNR values also varied within a given range. The variability was likely related primarily to changes in SL. Modeled SNR distributions were lower in value at each range for the surface layer versus bottom layer (Figure 8). SNR distributions were also lower in value for the surface layer of a stratified water column compared to the surface layer of a homogeneous system (Figure 8).

<u>Probability of detection</u>

Probability of detection decreased with range, as a function of range-dependent decreases in SNR (Figure 9). At a given range and regardless of DT, probability of detection was highest for the surface layer when cylindrical spreading was used to assess TL, higher for a source in the surface layer of a homogeneous water column than in that of a stratified system, and higher for the bottom layer in a stratified system than the bottom layer in a homogenous water column. Not surprisingly, probabilities of detection for sources in the surface and bottom layers of a homogenous water column were similar, regardless of DT. Systematic changes in TL with range and depth had the most substantial influence on changes in probability of detection, given that the SL and AN distributions used to model SNR were consistent across ranges. Overall, all probabilities of detection except those derived using cylindrical spreading were lower for a system using an automated detection threshold (DT=10dB); the differences in probabilities of detection between the two detection methods increased with range.

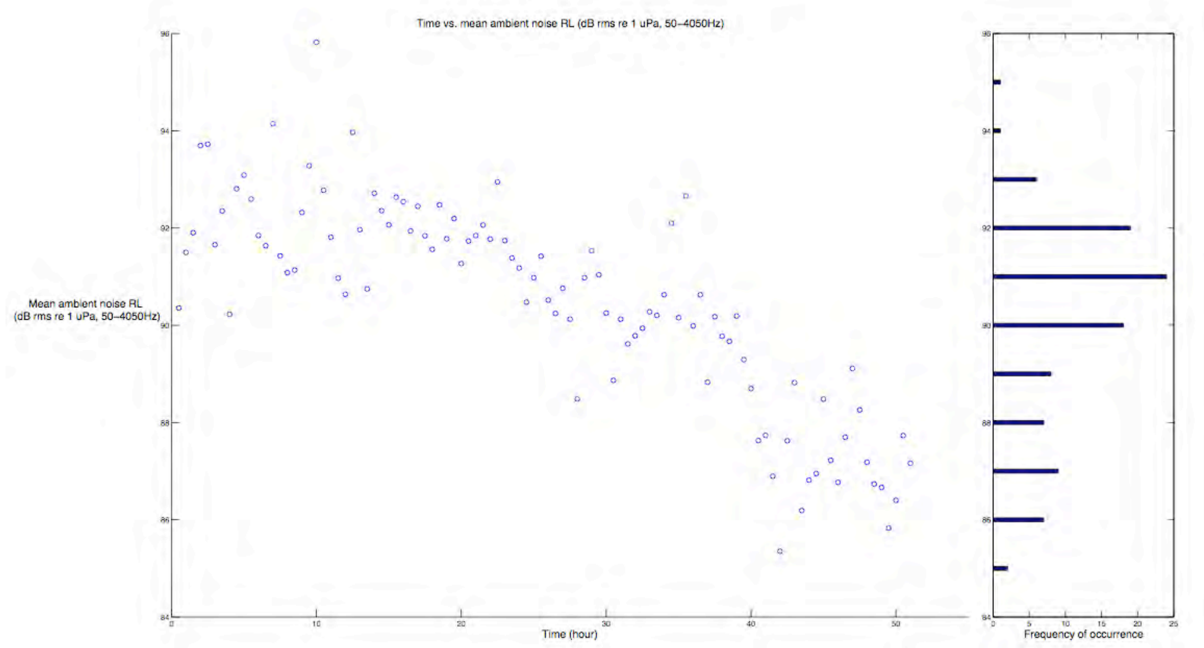


Figure 6. Ambient noise received level (RL) estimates vs. hour and the distribution of those values throughout the drifting station.

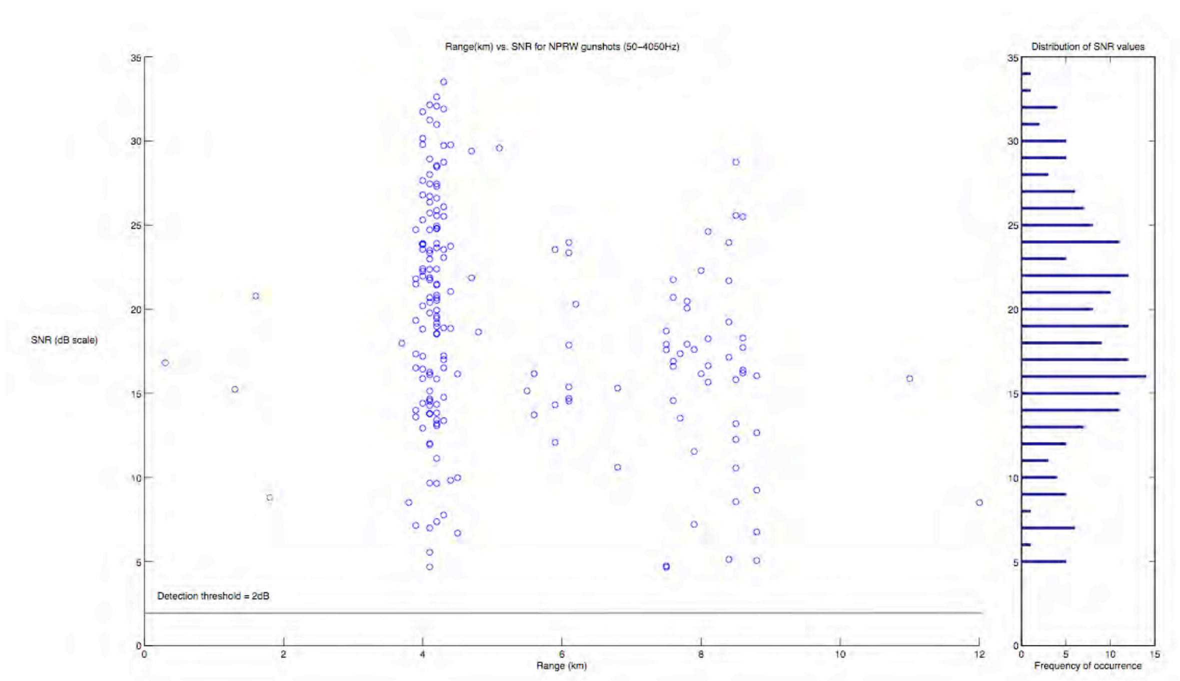


Figure 7. Measured signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) vs. range for North Pacific right whale gunshots, and the distribution of SNR values. The detection threshold is indicated by a black horizontal line at 2 dB.

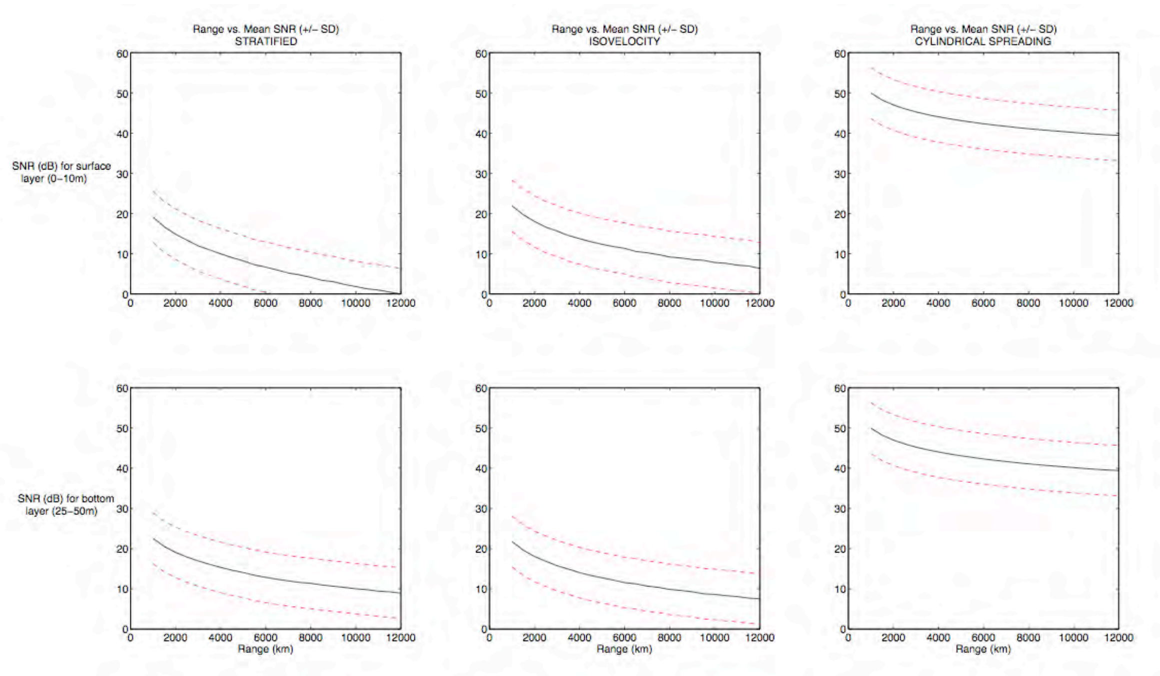


Figure 8. Modeled signal-to-Noise ratio (SNR) vs. range for North Pacific right whale gunshots, and the distribution of SNR values. The detection threshold is indicated by a black horizontal line at 2 dB.

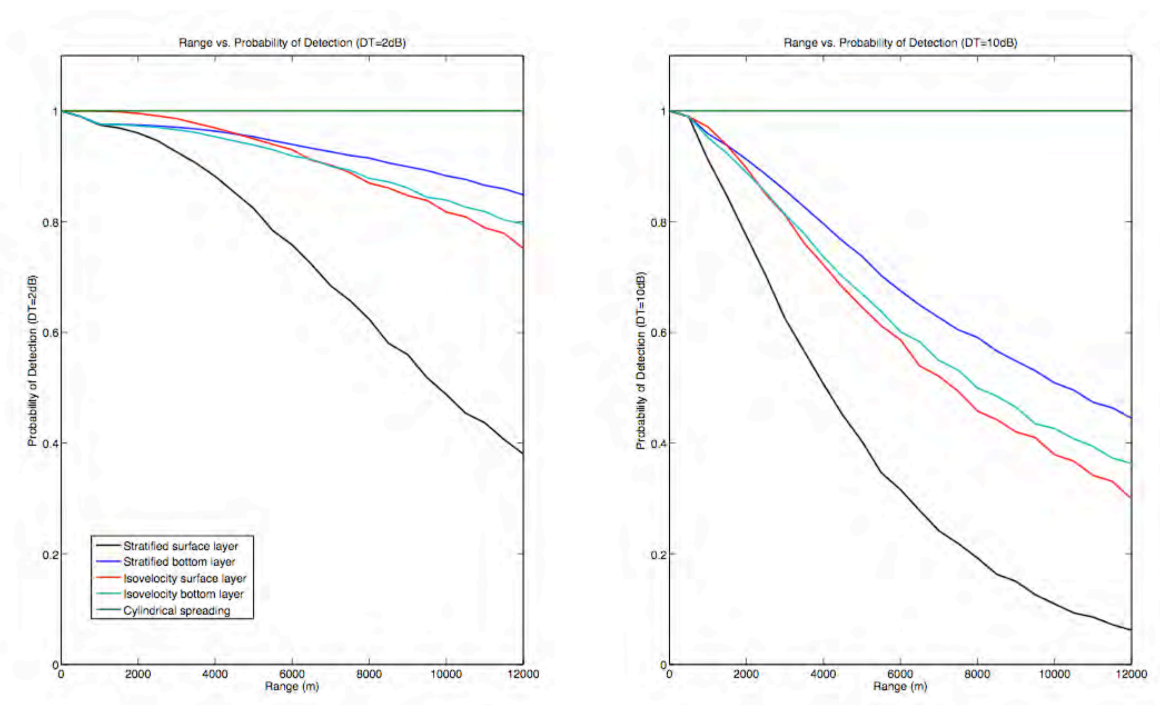


Figure 9. Probability of detection comparison for two typical detection thresholds (human analyst DT=2dB; automated detector DT=10dB) for the surface and bottom layers of stratified and homogenous systems, and the use of cylindrical spreading to simplify estimation of transmission loss.

REFERENCES

Abbot, P. and I. Dyer. 2002. "Sonar performance predictions incorporating environmental variability" in: Pace, N.E. and F.B. Jensen (eds.), Impact of Littoral Environmental Variability on Acoustic Predictions and Sonar Performance, (Kluwer Academic Publishers, Netherlands). p. 611-618.

Baumgartner, M.F. 2003. Comparisons of *Calanus finmarchicus* fifth copepodite abundance estimates from nets and an optical plankton counter. Journal of Plankton Research 25:855-868.

Baumgartner, M.F. and B.R. Mate. 2003. Summertime foraging ecology of North Atlantic right whales. Marine Ecology Progress Series 263:123-135.

Baumgartner, M.F., L. Freitag, J. Partan, K. Ball and K. Prada. 2008a. Tracking large marine predators in three dimensions: the Real-time Acoustic Tracking System. IEEE Journal of Oceanic Engineering 33:146-157.

Baumgartner, M.F., S.M. Van Parijs, F.W. Wenzel, C.J. Trembley, H.C. Esch, and A.M. Warde. 2008b. Low frequency vocalizations attributed to sei whales (*Balaenoptera borealis*). Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 124:1339-1449.

Baumgartner, M.F. and T. Hammar. 2010. Using a new short-term dermal attachment tag to study bowhead whale foraging ecology in the western Beaufort Sea. AGU/ASLO Ocean Sciences Meeting. Portland, Oregon. February 22-26, 2010.

Baumgartner, M.F., and S.E. Mussoline. An automated detector and classifier for the broadband gunshot call of the North Atlantic right whale (*Eubalaena glacialis*). Journal of the Acoustical Society of America. submitted.

Berchok, C.L., L.J. Morse, P.J. Clapham, H. Klinck, K. Klinck, D.K. Mellinger, and D.K. Ljungblad. 2009. Right whale gunshot calls in the southeastern Bering Sea. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 125:2616.

Clapham, P.J., Kennedy, A.S., Rone, B., Zerbini, A.N., Crance, J., Berchok, C., and Baumgartner, M.F. (2009). "North Pacific right whales in the southeastern Bering Sea; 2009 annual report," submitted to Minerals Management Service under Inter-Agency Agreement Number M07RG13267 (AKC 063).

Clark, C.W. 1982. The acoustic repertoire of the southern right whale, a quantitative analysis. Animal Behavior 30:1060-1071.

Collins, M.D. 1993. A split-step Pade solution for the parabolic equation method. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 93:1736-1742.

Cooney, R. T. and K. O. Koyle. 1982. Trophic implications of cross-shelf copepod distribution in the Southeastern Bering Sea. Marine Biology 70(2):187-196.

Davis, C.S., S.M. Gallager, M.S. Berman, L.R. Haury, and J.R. Strickler. 1992. The video plankton recorder (VPR): design and initial results. Arch. Hydrobiol. Beih. Ergebn. Limnol. 36:67-81.

Davis, C.S., S.M. Gallager, M. Marra and W.K. Stewart. 1996. Rapid visualization of plankton abundance and taxonomic composition using the video plankton recorder. Deep-Sea Research II 43:1947-1970.

Esch, H.C., J. Lynch, Y.T. Lin, A. Newhall, P.L. Tyack, and M.F. Baumgartner. Modeling the acoustic propagation and probability of detection of north Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) gunshots: implications for abundance estimation. in preparation.

Freitas, C., C. Lydersen, M.A. Fedak, and K.M. Kovacs. 2008. A simple new algorithm to filter marine mammal Argos locations. Marine Mammal Science 24:315-325.

Harrison, C.H. and J.A. Harrison. 1995. A simple relationship between frequency and range averages for broadband sonar. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 97:1314-1317.

Heath, M.R., J. Dunn, J.G. Fraser, S.J. Hay, and H. Madden. 1999. Field calibration of the optical plankton counter with respect to *Calanus finmarchicus*. Fisheries Oceanography 8(suppl. 1):13-24.

Heidi-Jørgensen, M.P., L. Kleivane, N. Øien, K. Laidre, and M.V. Jensen. 2001. A new technique for deploying satellite transmitters on baleen whales: tracking a blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*) in the North Atlantic. Marine Mammal Science 17:949-954.

Herman, A.W. 1988. Simultaneous measurement of zooplankton and light attenuance with a new optical plankton counter. Continental Shelf Research 8:205-221.

Herman, A.W. 1992. Design and calibration of a new optical plankton counter capable of sizing small zooplankton. Deep-Sea Research 39:395-415.

Kinsler, L.E., A.R. Frey, A.B. Coppens, and J.V. Sanders. 1999. Fundamentals of Acoustics, 4th ed. (John Wiley, New York). p. 172.

Küsel, E.T., D.K. Mellinger, L. Thomas, T.A. Marques, D. Moretti, and J. Ward. 2011. Cetacean population density estimation from single fixed sensors using passive acoustics. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 129:3601-3622.

Liu, H. and R.R. Hopcroft. 2008. Growth and development of *Pseudocalanus* spp. in the northern Gulf of Alaska. Journal of Plankton Research 30:923-935.

Madsen, P.T., I. Kerr, and R. Payne. 2004. Source parameter estimated of echolocation clicks from wild pygmy killer whales (*Feresa attenuata*). Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 116:1909-1912.

Marques, T.A., L. Munger, L. Thomas, S. Wiggins, and J.A. Hildebrand. 2011. Estimating North Pacific right whale (*Eubalaena japonica*) density using passive acoustic cue counting. Endangered Species Research 13:163-172.

McDonald, M.A., and S.E. Moore. 2002. Calls recorded from North Pacific right whales (*Eubalaena japonica*) in the eastern Bering Sea. Journal of Cetacean Research and Management 4:261-266.

Munger, L.M., S.M. Wiggins, and J.A. Hildebrand. 2011. North Pacific right whale up-call source levels and propagation distance on the southeastern Bering Sea shelf. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 129:4047-4054.

Parks, S.E., and P.L. Tyack. 2005. Sound production by North Atlantic right whales (*Eubalaena glacialis*) in surface active groups. Journal of the Acoustical Society of America 117:3297-3306.

Parks, S.E., P.K. Hamilton, S.D. Kraus, and P.L. Tyack. 2005. The gunshot sound produced by male North Atlantic right whales (*Eubalana glacialis*) and its potential function in reproductive advertisement. Marine Mammal Science 21:458-475.

Shelden, K.E., S.E. Moore, J.M. Waite, P.R. Wade, and D.J. Rugh. 2005. Historic and current habitat use by North Pacific right whales *Eubalaena japonica* in the Bering Sea and Gulf of Alaska. Mammal Review 35:129-155.

Stafford, K.M., S.E. Moore, P.J.Stabeno, D.V Holliday, J.M Napp, and D.K. Mellinger. 2010. Biophysical ocean observation in the southeastern Bering Sea. Geophysical Research Letters 37:1-4.

Urick, R. 1983. Principles of Underwater Sound (McGraw-Hill, New York), pp. 17-25, 102-111.

Van Guelpen, L., D.F. Markle and D.J. Duggan. 1982. An evaluation of accuracy, precision, and speed of several zooplankton subsampling techniques. Journal du Conseil international pour l'Éxploration de la Mer 40:226-236.

Vidal, J. and S.L. Smith. 1986. Biomass, growth, and development of populations of herbivorous zooplankton in the southeastern Bering Sea during spring. Deep Sea Research Part A. Oceanographic Research Papers 33:523-556.

Wiggins, S.M., M.A. McDonald, L.A., Munger, J.A. Hildebrand, and S.E. Moore. 2004. Waveguide propagation allows range estimates for North Pacific right whales in the Bering Sea. Canadian Acoustics